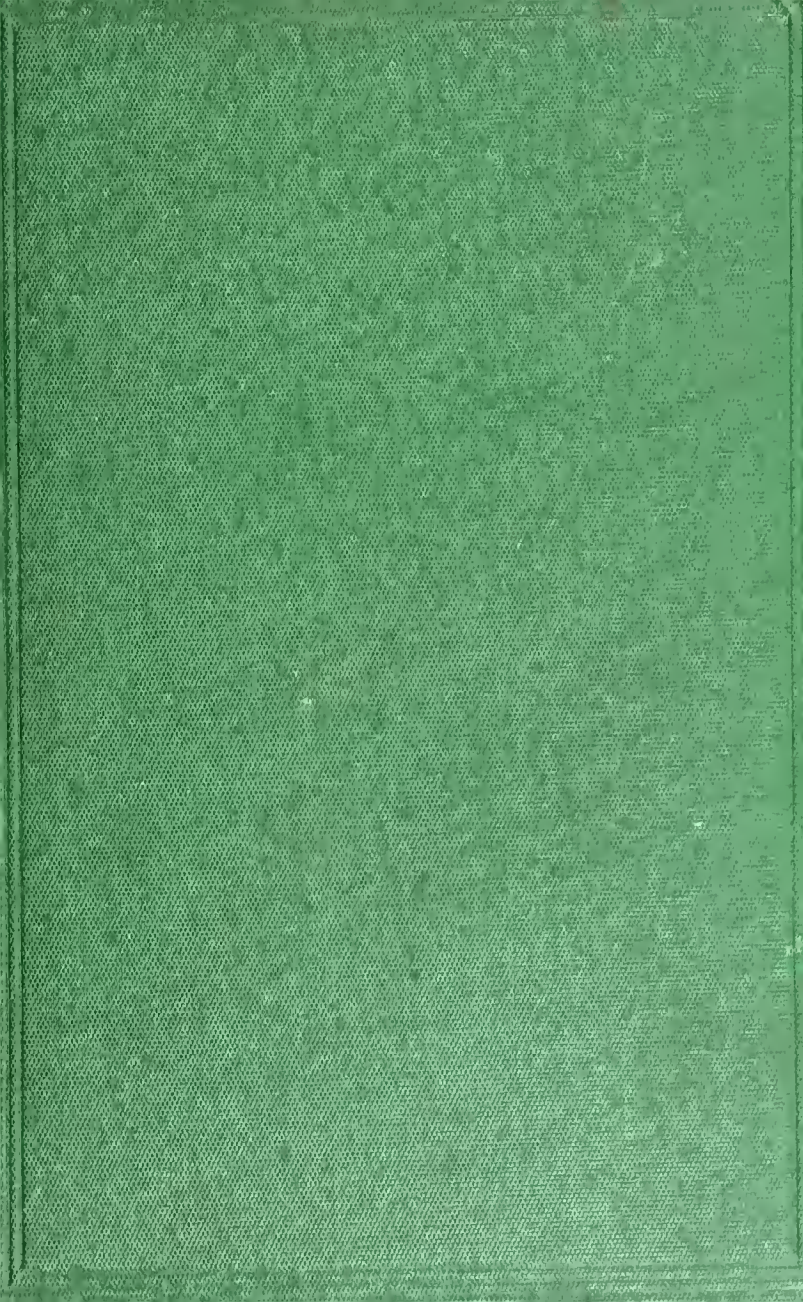




CORNELL
UNIVERSITY
LIBRARY



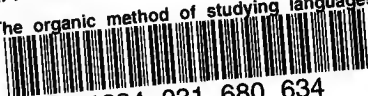
FROM

The Estate of H.F. Roberts

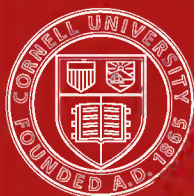
Robert

[illegible]

arV14904



3 1924 031 680 634
olin,anx



Cornell University
Library

The original of this book is in
the Cornell University Library.

There are no known copyright restrictions in
the United States on the use of the text.

THE ORGANIC METHOD
OF
STUDYING LANGUAGES

I.—*FRENCH*

Shortly will be Published:

French Exercises

ON

The Organic Method.

BY THE SAME AUTHOR.

THE ORGANIC METHOD OF STUDYING LANGUAGES

I.—FRENCH
CONTAINING A COMPLETE ACCIDENCE AND
ELEMENTARY SYNTAX COMBINED

BY
G. EUGÈNE-FASNACHT

SENIOR MASTER OF MODERN LANGUAGES, HARPUR TRUST MODERN SCHOOL, BEDFORD
AUTHOR OF THE STUDENT'S COMPARATIVE FRENCH GRAMMAR,
OF THE PROGRESSIVE FRENCH AND GERMAN COURSE, ETC.
EDITOR OF MACMILLAN'S SERIES OF FOREIGN CLASSICS

London
MACMILLAN AND CO.

1881

The right of adapting this Method to the Study of other Languages is Reserved

A13R
~~235~~

E 50

A713322

LONDON :

R. CLAY, SONS, AND TAYLOR,
BREAD STREET HILL.

PREFACE.

THIS method is based on the axiom that the theoretical study of a science can only be carried on satisfactorily if the student possesses a sufficient amount of knowledge gained by experience; and conversely, that knowledge gained by experience, in order to be complete and thorough, must be supplemented by a systematic analysis of the laws which underlie that science.¹

Taking this general principle for my starting-point, and applying it to the study of languages in particular, I have attempted to initiate the beginner into the study of languages (in the first instance the French language), by a method in which practice and theory are so intimately blended, as continually to react upon and supplement each other.

With this view I begin with *whole sentences*, instead of isolated words,² and taking the *Verb* for the warp of the texture, I gradually interweave the woof in the shape of Nouns, Pronouns, Adjectives, and other parts of speech, until finally the complete fabric emerges from the loom. Reserving any further ornamental embroidery for a more advanced stage, I have confined my task to the framing of a plain, homespun, wear-and-tear-proof fabric, of which not a single thread need subsequently be undone.

In a certain degree, I am fully aware, the working of this plan has been more or less successfully attempted before; with this fundamental difference, however, between the traditional type of Grammars and the Organic Method, that in the former the Syntax is either entirely severed from, or at best placed

¹ "What the pupil should be taught is to *methodise his knowledge*, to look at every separate part of it in its relations to the other parts and the whole, combining the partial glimpses which he has obtained into a general man, if I may so speak."—JOHN STUART MILL.

² "As we do not think in words but in sentences, and as language is the expression and embodiment of thought, it is clear that the *unit* of language must be the *sentence* and not the word. The words which compose a sentence are related to one another in the same way as the several elements of an idea or of an action as reproduced in thought, and can only be decomposed and separated by conscious analysis."—WAITZ, *Anthropology*.

in mere *mechanical juxtaposition* to the Accidence, whereas in the latter, Syntax and Accidence are mixed up in, as it were, *chemical combination*. With this view I have framed and arranged the sentences intended to illustrate the laws of the language in such definite order as to display the grammatical forms embodied in them in bold relief. Standing out, as they do, in clearly distinctive type, like mountains on the map of a country of which they form the backbone, they necessarily force themselves more vividly upon the pupil's attention than is the case with the traditional paradigms. This arrangement, appealing thus by the logic of visible facts to the eye, cannot fail to assist the mind in giving form and substance to the otherwise abstract idea. To which must be added the fact that this conspicuousness of the inflectional elements in the sentence, bringing them into their natural relationship with the context without which they cannot convey an idea, offers this decided advantage over the usual bare schemes of declension or conjugation, that it prevents any possible misconception of the symbol (for words and their inflections, as long as isolated, are but symbols); it thus saves the pupil the mortification of having subsequently to unlearn what has involved such a heavy expenditure of time, trouble, and patience to learn by sheer efforts of memory, unassisted by the reasoning faculties.*

But as the Organic Method, appealing as it does to the intelligent *seeing* of facts, requires to be *seen* in order to be understood, I will illustrate it by a few instances taken at random, and contrasting these at the same time with the now generally prevailing mode of treatment of the same subjects, I may safely leave it to the unbiassed judgment of those of my profession to decide between the respective merits or demerits of the two methods.

First of all, I must show how the Definite Article, as this determinative Adjective is commonly called, has fared in French Grammars framed upon the type of the old time-honoured Greek Grammars. In accordance with these, the Article has, of course, the first place assigned to it, just as if this part of speech, and not the Verb, were *the word par excellence*, without which no sentence can be formed; and something like the following, with but few variations of arrangement, is the scheme generally adopted to show its modifications, or "declension," as the classical phrase goes:—

* "Even in the best schools it appears as if it were difficult to ground boys well in grammar without an inordinate waste of time, or without dwarfing the pupil's faculties by an excessive prolongation of a *mechanical and monotonous word-drill*."

EDWIN A. ABBOTT, *Head Master of the City of London School*.

"Regarding language as an apparatus of symbols for the conveyance of thought, we may say that, as in a mechanical apparatus, the more simple, and the better arranged its parts, the greater will be the effect produced."—HERBERT SPENCER.

<i>Masc.</i>	<i>Singular.</i>	<i>Fem.</i>
(before a Noun beginning with a consonant or <i>h aspirate</i> (sic !))		

Nom.	le	la
Gen.	du (for de le)	de la
Dat.	au (for à le)	à la
Acc.	le	la

(before a Noun beginning with a vowel or *h mute*)

Nom.	l'
Gen.	de l'
Dat.	à l'
Acc.	l'

Plural for all.

Nom.	les
Gen.	des
Dat.	aux
Acc.	les

Then follow (about 150 or 200 pages further on, which in ordinary school routine cannot be reached until some two or three years after) the rules for the application of the above forms; to wit—that the Definite Article is used before Nouns taken in a general sense, also before abstract Nouns, before names of countries, etc.

Now, I would ask, what insight into the origin, nature, and functions of the Article can a pupil gain from a method in which this determinative adjunct, which has no meaning of its own, is thus arbitrarily severed from the word to which it cleaves, which it determines, and without which it has no possible *raison d'être*?¹ And why, I ask again, should not the Noun itself, thus determined by the Definite Article, be brought into significant relation with the other constituent elements of the sentence, so as clearly to show how this adjunct acts as a limiting prefix intended to mark off the exact boundaries assigned to the species denoted by the Noun?²

I need hardly say that in this book, consistently with the principles that underlie the whole method, not only is the Definite Article never separated

¹ "The first condition of language is that it should be *significant*, and words are only significant when they stand in relation to one another. The 'logos,' the true word, said Aristotle, was the cause of knowledge; the individual words of which it was composed were but *symbols* and *tokens* of the impressions of sense."—A. H. SAYCE.

² "All language must be *significant*; but until the whole sentence is uttered, until the whole thought that lies behind is expressed, this cannot be the case."—A. H. SAYCE.

from its natural and necessary association with the Noun, but also that the Noun, thus limited, is in its turn not allowed to stand isolated :—

MASCULINE.

Singular.

Su'ject. **Le** maître parle. *The master is speaking, etc.*

Dir. Object. J'entends **le** maître distinctement.

Possessive. Le livre **du** maître est intéressant.

Indir. Obj. L'élève répond **au** maître.

Plural.

Subject. **Les** maîtres parlent.

Dir. Object. J'entends **les** maîtres distinctement.

Possessive. Les livres **des** maîtres sont intéressants.

Indir. Obj. Les élèves répondent **aux** maîtres.

And so on. For a full treatment of the whole subject, see §§ 30—35.

So much for the *grammatical* modifications of the Article. But as this scheme, complete though it be in respect of its *forms*, is not sufficient to enable the pupil to know not only *how* to use but also *when* to use this Adjunct, and as by this method nothing is to be committed to memory which shall not at the same time be practically applied, thus calling the pupil's reasoning powers also into active play, I proceed at once to give further examples, but this time in the shape of sentences in which the Definite Article *is used* in French, though *not used* in English; as,

Le sel est le symbole **de** la sagesse.

Salt is the symbol of wisdom.

Le fer, l'or et **la** platine sont **des** métaux.

Iron, gold, and platinum, are metals.

L'homme est mortel. **Les** hommes sont mortels.

Man is mortal. Men are mortal.

La vie est courte.

Life is short.

L'oisiveté est la mère **du** vice.

Idleness is the mother of vice.

Now it is obvious that without the context it would be impossible for the pupil to see the distinction between Nouns taken, for instance, in a *general* or *abstract* sense, and those taken in an *individual* sense; but by means of multiplied and carefully selected instances in which the Noun is made more fully significant by the context, he is at once supplied with the necessary clue for realising by his own mental efforts how far the two languages agree or differ in the application of the determinative Adjective.

The same remarks hold good with regard to the mode of treatment of the other parts of speech, but particularly so in the case of the use of *Moods* and

Tenses; for if it is true that the relations of *manner* and *time* in which an action occurs cannot be ascertained otherwise than by reference to the whole sentence, then certainly nothing is to be got out of paradigms framed on the plan adopted in our Grammars:—

que je parle, *that I may speak.*
 que tu parles, *that thou mayest speak,* etc.
 qu'il parle,
 que nous parlions,
 que vous parliez,
 qu'ils parlent.

Nowhere perhaps has the isolating process of compiling grammatical schemes given rise to more confusing misconceptions in the pupil's mind, and contributed more to his utter helplessness in shaping the materials placed at his disposal. How to distinguish between the *Imperfect* and the *Preterite*, between the *Pluperfect* and *Past Anterior*, when to use the *Conditional* and when the *Subjunctive*, etc., are to him so many Chinese puzzles for the solution of which he has to wait until, years after, he reaches the more advanced classes in which Syntax is treated systematically. And what is worse still, he will then actually have to *unlearn* the few hazy notions he may have got into his head concerning the use of Moods and Tenses—no easy matter, considering the tenacity of first impressions. I speak from long experience when I say that in nine cases out of ten the pupil will emerge from this treadmill way of working with altogether erroneous conceptions; he will take it for granted that the Subjunctive is used after *que*, which, of course, is utterly misleading; or that, in translating from English into French, he cannot go far wrong in rendering *may* and *might* by the Subjunctive, hence—*you may come* = '*que vous veniez*'! and so on.

As for *should* and *would*, the student provided with his skeleton-key to Moods and Tenses, knows better than to suspect for one moment that these auxiliaries may have any possible connexion with the Subjunctive; for has he not been duly drilled in rehearsing—*Conditional*: *je parlerais*, I *should* speak? *Ergo*, for instance—It is not right that you *should suffer* = *Il n'est pas juste que vous souffririez!* And just as he has amused himself by singing in his nursery days—*a* stands for *ass*, *b* stands for *boat*, and so on, so now he is taught to say—*may* stands for *Subjunctive*, and *should* for *Conditional*!¹

¹ "It is not uncommon for boys, after committing the Verbs to memory, to allow the Subjunctive Mood to rust for some weeks or months before they make any use of it, and consequently to find that, when they need to use it, they no longer remember it; the consequence is that during all this while, they remain under the impression that '*amemus*' means *we may love*, and '*amaremus*' *we might love*—statements which are very partial, and almost erroneous, expressions of the real truth. It seems better to introduce the Subjunctive earlier in simple and intelligible rules and examples, so as to impress the pupil from the first with the principle of the Sequence of Tenses."—EDWIN A. ABBOTT, *Head Master of the City of London School*.

Such misconceptions are hardly possible with the Organic Method. Here the grammatical forms are from the outset brought into duly dependent relation to the principal concept; and it is by accumulated, and at the same time systematically arranged, sentences rather than by the few broad rules appended, that the important fact is brought home to the pupil that this Mood is the necessary sequence of the leading thought contained in the principal clause; he is thus led to *see*, both physically and mentally, that the Subjunctive grows immediately out of the conception to which it is subjoined:—

PRINCIPAL CLAUSE.	DEPENDENT CLAUSE.	
Mon père désire	que je par-le français	<i>My father desires</i>
Le maître souhaite	que tu par-les correctement	<i>that I speak</i>
Les élèves exigent	qu'il par-le distinctement	<i>French, etc.</i>
Ma mère trouve bon	que nous parl-ions anglais	
On approuve	que vous parl-iez politique	
Leur précepteur consent	qu'ils parl-ent avec lui.	

For a full treatment of the Subjunctive Mood, see §§ 87—96.

And so throughout the book. Studiously avoiding to force the facts of the language upon the student's memory in the shape of a series of cut and-dried rules, meagrely illustrated by a few stray sentences, I have preferred to thrust into the foreground a well-disciplined host of examples; by their very arrangement these may be trusted to direct the student's train of thought into the right channel for forming a clear conception of the abstract laws underlying the language. Need I add that rules thus evolved by his own exertions from his stock of practical knowledge, will serve the pupil in better stead than the arbitrary dictum of grammarians!

These instances will, I trust, suffice to show how the Organic Method bridges over the gap between the two diametrically opposed methods now in use—the purely *analytical*, and the so-called *natural* method. It takes an altogether different starting-point from the one adopted in the *analytical* method, which begins with the grammatical inflections of isolated words, and winds up with rules for putting these words together, thus teaching Grammar *before*, i.e. virtually *without*, the language itself: putting theory before practice, abstractions before concrete facts, and fractions before units—a course which seems as irrational as it would be to begin teaching a child arithmetic with algebraical symbols.

On the other hand, it differs no less strikingly from the would-be *natural* method, which, although based on a sound principle, is open to the serious objection that it supplies a plan admirably fitted for the inmates of the nursery,

who have not passed beyond the imitative stage of intellectual development, to the wants of pupils whose reasoning powers are fully awakened. Such a routine, stopping short as it does of systematizing the practically acquired stock of knowledge, fails to accustom the student to those habits of mental discipline and concentrated attention which it is one of the principal aims of all education to foster.

I need hardly add that the beginner who starts with significant sentences will be much better prepared to enter upon a comparatively early course of intelligent reading than he who has been merely drilled through a series of unconnected words. And if, on the other hand, the pupil is not in the very first lesson, as in the so-called natural method, treated to an amusing story, he will be more than compensated by a far greater advantage: when he does begin to read stories—which he can safely do at a comparatively early stage—he will be enabled to make out the meaning without the artificial and deceptive help of interlinear translations or other devices for learning without understanding.

As regards the routine to be followed in using the Organic Method, I deem it no mean point in its favour, that so far from requiring any minute directions for handling it, its very simplicity leaves the experienced teacher full scope for exercising his own judgment in adapting it to the special wants of his pupils; whilst the less experienced teacher and the student will find in the arrangement of the copious and carefully graduated material a safer guide to the mastery of all the details than any theoretical precepts could supply them.

*Adaptations of the Organic Method to the Study of other
Languages are in Preparation.*

CONTENTS.

THE VERB.

SECT		PAGE
	THE THREE REGULAR CONJUGATIONS.	
1	<i>Infinitive</i> Present and <i>Participle</i> Present	1
2	<i>Indicative Mood</i> :—	1
	Present	1
	Affirmative Form	1
	First Conjugation	1
3	Second Conjugation	2
4	Fourth Conjugation	2
5-6	Auxiliary Verbs avoir and être	3
	Simple Interrogative Form	4
7	(a) the Subject a Personal Pronoun	4
8	(b) the Subject a Noun	4
	Relative Interrogative Form	5
9	(a) the Subject a Personal Pronoun	5
10	(b) the Subject a Noun	5
11-12	Negative Form	5
13	Negative-Interrogative Form	6
14	<i>The Verb with a Personal Pronoun for its Object</i>	7
15-16	I. Affirmative (a) Direct Object, (b) Indirect Object	7
	II. Interrogative and Negative	8
17-18	(a) Simple Interrogation, (b) Relative Interrogative	8
19	III. Interrogative-Negative	8
20	IV. Imperative : Affirmative and Negative	9

THE NOUN AND ITS ADJUNCTS.

21	I.—THE NOUN QUALIFIED BY THE DETERMINATIVE ADJECTIVE	
	(Def. Art.) : le, la, les	10
	(a) as the <i>Subject</i> of a Verb	10
22	(b) as the <i>Object</i> of a Verb	11
23	(c) as the <i>Predicate-Compl.</i> of a Verb	11

SECT.		PAGE
24	(d) with the Preposition de	11
	(1) as Adjunct to another Noun (Genitive)	11
25	(2) as Complement to a Verb (Genitive or Ablative)	12
26	as after the Adjectives	12
27	(e) with the Preposition à	12
	(1) as Indirect Object of a Transitive Verb	12
28	(2) as Adverbial Complement of an Intransitive Verb.	13
29	(f) with other Prepositions	13
30	Recapitulation: Complete scheme of the inflections of le, la, les	14
	Use of <i>Determinative Adjective</i> (Def. Art.) in French as compared with English	14
31	(a) before a Noun taken in a limited (particular) sense.	14
32	(b) before a Noun taken in an unlimited (general) sense.	15
33	(c) before names of countries	15
34	(d) before a Noun in Apposition	15
35	(e) before a Noun used in Adjectival, Adverbial or Verbal phrases	15
	<i>Formation of the Plural of Nouns and Adjectives</i>	16
36	(a) General Rule: by adding s	16
37	(b) Special Rules: by (1) leaving the noun unchanged.	16
	(2) adding x	16
	(3) changing -al or -ail into aux	17
	II.—THE NOUN QUALIFIED BY THE INDEFINITE ARTICLE: un, une	17
38	(a) The Indefinite Article used in French as in English	17
39	(b) The Indefinite Article used in English but not in French.	18
	III.—THE NOUN QUALIFIED BY THE PARTITIVE ARTICLE: du, de la, de l', des	19
40	Nouns denoting the whole of a thing compared with Nouns denoting part of a thing	19
41	IV.—THE NOUN QUALIFIED BY AN ADVERB OR NOUN OF QUANTITY: assez, beaucoup , etc.	20
42	de used instead of du, de la, de l', des	20
	V.—THE NOUN QUALIFIED BY A POSSESSIVE ADJECTIVE: mon, ma, mes , etc.	21
43-44	(a) as the <i>Subject</i> , (b) as the <i>Object</i> , (c) with <i>Prepositions</i>	21
	VI.—THE NOUN QUALIFIED BY A DEMONSTRAT. ADJECTIVE: ce, cet, cette, ces	22
45-46	(a) ce, cet, cette, ces ; (b) ce...ci, ce...là , etc.	22

SECT.		PAGE
47	RECAPITULATION OF THE DIFFERENT WAYS IN WHICH A NOUN MAY BE QUALIFIED	23
	VII.—THE NOUN LIMITED BY AN ADJECTIVE OF QUALITY . .	23
48	(a) Feminine found by adding <i>e</i> , <i>agreement of Adjectives in Gender and Number</i>	23
49	(b) Adjectives unchanged in the Feminine, (c) <i>-a</i> changed into <i>-se</i>	23
50-51	(d) <i>-f</i> changed into <i>-ve</i> , (e) <i>-c</i> changed into <i>-que</i>	24
52	(f) <i>-on</i> , <i>-ien</i> , <i>-el</i> , <i>-eil</i> , <i>-as</i> into <i>-onne</i> , <i>-ienne</i> , <i>eile</i> , <i>-eille</i> , <i>-asse</i>	24
53	(g) <i>-er</i> , <i>-et</i> into <i>-ère</i> , <i>-ète</i>	24
54	Adjectives with <i>two</i> forms for the <i>Masculine</i>	24
55	Adjectives forming their Feminine <i>irregularly</i>	25
56	Adjectives ending in <i>-eur</i>	26
	VIII.—THE NOUN QUALIFIED BY ADJECTIVES IN THE COM- PARATIVE AND SUPERLATIVE	26
57-59	Comparison of (a) superiority, (b) equality, and (c) inferiority.	26
60	<i>Adjectives irregularly compared</i>	27
61	Observations: (1) <i>plus...ne</i> , (2) <i>ne...plus</i> , (3) <i>davantage</i> , (4) <i>plus...plus</i> , (5) <i>le moindre</i> , (6) <i>le plus...de</i>	27
	IX.—THE NOUN QUALIFIED BY AN ADJECTIVE OF QUANTITY (NUMERAL)	27
62-63	(a) Cardinal Numbers, (b) Ordinal Numbers	28
64-65	(c) French Cardinal N. for English Ordinal N., (d) Dimensions	29

THE VERB (*continued*).

66-70	Imperfect Indicative	30
	Imperfect used to denote (a) simultaneous action, (b) action in progress, (c) habitual or repeated action.	
	(d) Imperfect in dependent clauses	30
71-76	Preterite Indicative (Past Definite)	32
	Preterite used to denote actions absolutely past	32
77-81	Future Present (Obs. Future Present for English Present) . .	34
82-86	Conditional Mood :—	36
	(a) to denote an action depending on a condition, (b) as a Future Imperfect	36
	<i>Subjunctive Mood</i>	38

SECT.	PAGE
87-91 Present : used in Dependent clauses	
if the Verb in Principal Clause	38
(1) denotes a wish, command, etc., (2) is impersonal,	
(3) denotes affection, or (4) doubt.	
(5) The Subjunctive after Subordinate Conjunctions . . .	38
92-96 Preterite (Imperfect) : Sequence of Tenses	40
Conjunctions which require the Verb in the Subjunc-	
tive	41
97-101 Imperative Mood	42
102 Infinitive Mood :—	43
103-5 I.—Pure Infinitive (a) as Subject, (b) as Predicate, (c) Direct	
Object	43
106-8 II.—Infinitive with de , (a) as Attributive Adjunct, (b) as	
Adverbial Adjunct, (c) as Object.	44
109-10 III.—Infinitive with à (a) as Attributive Adjunct, (b) as	
Adverbial Adjunct	44
111 IV.—Infinitive with other Prepositions	45
112 Infinitive used instead of Indicative or Subjunctive . . .	45
113 4 Participle-Present used (a) Adjectively, (b) Verbally . . .	46
115 Verbal form in -ant either (a) a Verbal Adjunct, (b) Free ent	
Participle	46
116 Compound Tenses	47
117-22 Present Perfect (Past Indefinite)	47
123 Use of Present Perfect in French as compared with English. .	48
124-8 Agreement of Perfect Participle conjugated with avoir or	
être	48
129 List of Verbs Conjugated with être	49
130-2 Interrogative and Negative form of Present Perfect . . .	49
133-41 Past Perfect (Pluperfect and Past Anterior)	50
Plusqueparfait and Passé Antérieur compared	50
List of Conjunctions requiring the Passé Antérieur . . .	51
142-51 Future Perfect	52
152-62 Conditional Perfect	54
163-72 Present-Perfect Subjunctive : the Subject used after an Adjective	
in the Superlative	56
173-81 Past-Perfect Subjunctive	58
182-5 Perfect Infinitive	60
186-8 Perfect Participle	61
189-90 Synoptic Table of Auxiliary Verbs	62
191 Synoptic Table of Formation of Tenses	64
192-4 Synoptic Table of the Three Regular Conjugations	66

CONTENTS.

xvii

SECT.		PAGE
195-6	<i>Peculiarities of Verbs in -ler, -ter, -ener, -érer, -yer, -ger, -cer</i>	69
197-8	<i>Passive Voice</i>	70
199-203	<i>Reflexive Verbs</i>	72
204-5	Reciprocal Verbs, and Verbs reflexive in French but not in English	75
206-7	<i>Impersonal Verbs</i> : (a) denoting atmospherical phenomena, (b) occasionally Impersonal	76
208-II	<i>il y a</i> conjugated Affirmatively, Interrogatively, and Negatively	77
	<i>Irregular Verbs</i>	78
212	<i>Irregular Verbs</i> used to form Idiomatic Tenses	78
213-5	<i>aller</i> (a) Simple Tenses, (b) Compound Tenses, (c) Idiomatic Tenses	78
216-20	<i>s'en aller</i> (a) Simple Tenses, (b) Compound Tenses	79
221-2	<i>venir</i> , Idiomatic Tenses; <i>devoir</i>	82
223-5	<i>falloir</i> with (a) Noun-Complement, (b) Verb-Complement, (c) <i>que</i> and Subjunctive	83
226-7	<i>vouloir</i> (a) with Infinitive-Complement, (b) with Subjunctive-Complement	84
228-9	<i>pouvoir</i> (a) with Infinitive, (b) used Idiomatically	85
230-I	<i>savoir</i> and <i>croire</i>	85
232-5	<i>faire</i> (a) its different meanings, (b) forming Verbal Phrases, (c) used to form Impersonal Phrases, (d) with Infinitive Complement	86
236	<i>avoir</i> , Idiomatic uses	87
	<i>Synoptic Table of Irregular Verbs</i>	88
237-245	2nd Conj. (a) I Verbs, (b) U Verbs, (c) Defective Verbs	88
246-8	3rd Conj. (a) U Verbs, (b) contracted Verbs, (c) I Verbs	91
249-56	4th Conj. (a) U Verbs, (b) I Verbs, (c) Defective Verbs	94

PRONOUNS.

	I.— <i>Personal Pronouns</i>	100
257	<i>Conjunctive</i>	100
258-60	Uses of y , en , le	101
261-6	Relative Position of Object-Pronouns	102
267-73	<i>Disjunctive</i>	104
274 5	II.— <i>Possessive Pronouns</i>	104

SECT.		PAGE
276-80	III.— <i>Demonstrative</i> Pronouns and Adjectives	104
	(a) ce ; ce and il compared, (b) ceci and cela , (c) celui-ci , -là , etc., (d) celui , etc.	107
281-2	IV.— <i>Relative</i> Pronouns, referring (a) to <i>Persons</i> , (b) to <i>Things</i>	109
283-86	(c) lequel , laquelle , etc.; où ; dont	110
	(d) used <i>absolutely</i> or <i>with reference to Sentences</i>	111
287-8	V.— <i>Interrogative</i> Pronouns, used (a) <i>Substantively</i> (b) <i>Adjectively</i>	112
	VI.— <i>Indefinite</i> Pronouns and Adjectives	112
289-92	on ; chacun , chaque ; tout ; personne	113
293-9	rien ; quelque ; quel que ; quelqu'un	114
300-3	quelconque ; quiconque , etc.; autre ; l'un et l'autre , ni l'un ni l'autre , etc.	115
304-9	l'un ou l'autre ; l'un autre ; tel ; même ; maint.	116

ADVERBS.

310-4	Classified according to their meaning into Adverbs of (a) <i>Time</i> , (b) <i>Place</i> , (c) <i>Manner</i> or <i>Quality</i> , (d) <i>derived from Adjectives</i>	117
315	(<i>Irregular formation of Comparison of Adjectives and Adverbs</i>)	119
316	(e) <i>Affirmation</i> and <i>Negation</i>	120
317-8	Use of ne without pas or point	120
319	<i>Adjectives used Adverbially</i>	121
320-3	<i>Adverbial Phrases</i> : answering the questions (a) <i>when? how long? how far?</i> (b) <i>how much? what price?</i> (c) <i>how? in what manner?</i>	122

PREPOSITIONS.

324-6	de (a) depending on a <i>Noun</i> used (1) <i>Attributively</i> , (2) <i>in Apposition</i> , (3) <i>Possessively</i>	123
327-34	(b) depending on a <i>Verb</i> or <i>Adjective</i> : indicating— (1) <i>origin</i> , etc., (2) <i>separation</i> , (3) <i>emotions</i> , (4) <i>recognition</i> , (5) <i>manner</i> , <i>instrument</i> , (6) <i>providing</i> , (7) <i>perception</i> , (8) <i>respect</i>	123
335	(c) used in <i>Adverbial Phrases</i> independently of a <i>Verb</i> or <i>Adjective</i>	125

CONTENTS.

xix

SECT.

PAGE

336-8	à (a) depending on a <i>Noun</i> , attributively, to denote— (1) purpose, fitness, (2) characteristic feature, (3) possession	125
339-42	(b) depending on a <i>Verb</i> or <i>Adjective</i> , to denote— (1) Indirect Object, (2) Complement, (3) Indirect Object after Verb of taking, etc., (4) Possessor.	126
343-5	(c) used to form <i>Adverbial Phrases</i> answering the questions— (1) <i>how?</i> (2) <i>when?</i> (3) <i>where?</i>	127
346-8	dans and en compared with regard to (a) place, (b) time . .	128
349-50	dans and à compared	129
351-4	avant and devant; après and derrière compared . . .	129
355-60	entre and parmi; sur, au-dessus de and par dessus de, compared	129
361-6	sous, au-dessus and par-dessous; vers, envers and contre compared	130
367-8	près, proche (de) and auprès de compared	130
369-72	depuis and dès; par, à travers and au travers de compared	131
373-4	voici and voilà compared	131

CONJUNCTIONS.

375	I.—Co-ordinate	132
	II.—Subordinate : with the Verb—	
376-78	(a) in the Indicative or Conditional	132
379	(b) in the Subjunctive	133
380	(c) in the Indicative or Subjunctive	134
381	(d) in the Infinitive	134
382-7	que, its different uses compared— (1) as Conjunction or Relative Pronoun, (2-3) Adverb, (4) instead of combien , pourquoi , où , lorsque , depuis que , etc., (5-6) instead of other Conjunctions	135
388	que used redundantly	136

APPENDIX.

	Gender of Nouns ascertained—	
389-93	(a) by Meaning, (b) Derivation, (c) Termination	137
394	Nouns with two Genders according to their Meaning or Derivation	140

SECT.		PAGE
395	Nouns with different meanings in the Singular and Plural	142
396	Nouns only used in the Plural	143
397	Feminine of Adjectives	144
398	General Principle underlying the Use of Subjunctive	145
399	Verbs requiring a Preposition in English but not in French	146
400	Verbs requiring de in French but no Preposition in English.	146
401	Verbs requiring à in French but no Preposition in English	146
402	Verbs requiring à with the Infinitive	146
403	Verbs requiring de with the Infinitive	147
404-5	<i>Agreement of Participe Present</i> with its Object	148
406-10	Anomalous Cases	149
411	Formation of Adverbs	150

THE ORGANIC METHOD

OF

STUDYING LANGUAGES.

I.—FRENCH.

INTRODUCTORY LESSONS.

1 THE THREE REGULAR CONJUGATIONS.

INFINITIVE PRESENT.

1ST CONJUGATION.	Je désire parl-er .	<i>I desire to speak.</i>
2ND CONJUGATION.	Je désire fin-ir .	<i>I desire to finish.</i>
4TH CONJUGATION.	Je désire vend-re .	<i>I desire to sell.</i>

PARTICIPLE PRESENT.

1ST CONJ.	Un homme parl-ant bien.	<i>A man speaking well.</i>
2ND CONJ.	Un élève fin-iss-ant son ouvrage...	<i>A pupil finishing his work...</i>
4TH CONJ.	Une femme vend-ant du poisson...	<i>A woman selling fish...</i>

Obs.—As the so-called 3rd Conjugation (*i.e.* verbs ending in **-oir** in the Infinitive) consists of only a few verbs, and these all *irregular* in their inflections, they have been classed among the Irregular Verbs, see §§ 222–230.

2 INDICATIVE PRESENT.

FIRST CONJUGATION.

Person :

		<i>Singular.</i>
1st	Je parl-e français.	<i>I speak (I am speaking) French.</i>
2nd	Tu parl-es anglais.	<i>Thou speakest (thou art speaking) English.</i>
3rd	{ Il parl-e allemand.	<i>He speaks (he is speaking) German.</i>
	{ On parl-e grec.	<i>One speaks (one is speaking) Greek.</i>
	{ Elle parl-e italien.	<i>She speaks (she is speaking) Italian.</i>
	{ Jean parl-e espagnol.	<i>John speaks (John is speaking) Spanish.</i>

Plural.

1st	Nous parl-ons peu.	<i>We speak (we are speaking) little.</i>
2nd	Vous parl-ez haut.	<i>You speak (you are speaking) aloud.</i>
3rd	{ Ils parl-ent bien.	<i>They (masc.) speak (are speaking) well.</i>
	{ Elles parl-ent beaucoup.	<i>They (fem.) speak (are speaking) much.</i>
	{ Les gens parl-ent trop.	<i>People speak (are speaking) too much.</i>

ORGANIC METHOD.—FRENCH.

B

3

SECOND CONJUGATION.

Singular.

Je	fin-is mon travail.	<i>I finish (I am finishing) my work.</i>
Tu	fin-is ton devoir.	<i>Thou finishest (thou art finishing) thy lesson.</i>
{ Il (on)	fin-it son thème.	<i>He (one) finishes (he is finishing) his exercise.</i>
{ Elle	fin-it son ouvrage.	<i>She finishes (she is finishing) her needlework.</i>
{ Arthur	fin-it son dessin.	<i>Arthur finishes (is finishing) his drawing.</i>

Plural.

Nous	fin-iss-ons notre travail.	<i>We finish (we are finishing) our work.</i>
Vous	fin-iss-ez votre devoir.	<i>You finish (are finishing) your lesson.</i>
{ Ils	fin-iss-ent leur thème.	<i>They (m.) finish (are finishing) their exercise.</i>
{ Elles	fin-iss-ent leur ouvrage.	<i>They (f.) finish (are finishing) their needlework.</i>
{ Les gens	fin-iss-ent leur besogne.	<i>People finish (people are finishing) their job.</i>

4

FOURTH CONJUGATION

Singular.

Je	vend-s ma maison.	<i>I sell (I am selling) my house.</i>
Tu	vend-s ta propriété.	<i>Thou sellest (thou art selling) thy property.</i>
{ Il	vend sa terre.	<i>He sells (he is selling) his estate.</i>
{ On	vend son bien.	<i>One sells (one is selling) one's estate.</i>
{ Elle	vend sa marchandise.	<i>She sells (she is selling) her merchandise.</i>
{ Le boucher	vend sa viande.	<i>The butcher sells (is selling) his meat.</i>

Plural.

Nous	vend-ons notre campagne.	<i>We sell (we are selling) our country seat.</i>
Vous	vend-ez votre denrée.	<i>You sell (you are selling) your ware.</i>
{ Ils	vend-ent leur brasserie.	<i>Thy (m.) sell (they are selling) their brewery.</i>
{ Elles	vend-ent leur maison.	<i>They (f.) sell (they are selling) their house.</i>
{ Les fermiers	vend-ent leur paille.	<i>The farmers sell (are selling) their straw.</i>

5

THE AUXILIARY VERB '**avoir**,' to have.*Singular.*

J'	ai le canif (<i>masc.</i>)	<i>I have the penknife.</i>
Tu	as l'encrier (<i>masc.</i>)	<i>Thou hast the inkstand.</i>
{ Il (on)	a la plume (<i>fem.</i>)	<i>He (one) has the pen.</i>
{ Elle	a l'écritoire (<i>fem.</i>)	<i>She has the writing-stand.</i>
{ L'élève	a l'histoire (<i>fem.</i>)	<i>The pupil has the history.</i>

Plural.

Nous	avons les canifs.	<i>We have the penknives.</i>
Vous	avez les encriers.	<i>You have the inkstands.</i>
{ Ils	ont les plumes.	<i>They (masc.) have the pens.</i>
{ Elles	ont les écrivains.	<i>They (fem.) have the writing-stands.</i>
{ Les élèves	ont les histoires.	<i>The pupils have the histories.</i>

6

THE AUXILIARY VERB '**être**,' to be.*Singular.*

Je	suis malade.	<i>I am ill.</i>
Tu	es heureux.	<i>Thou art happy.</i>
{ Il (on)	est actif.	<i>He (one) is active.</i>
{ Elle	est active.	<i>She is active.</i>
{ L'élève	est intelligent.	<i>The pupil is intelligent.</i>

Plural.

Nous	sommes malades.	<i>We are ill.</i>
Vous	êtes heureux.	<i>You are happy.</i>
{ Ils	sont actifs.	<i>They are active.</i>
{ Elles	sont actives.	<i>They (fem.) are active.</i>
{ Les élèves	sont intelligents.	<i>The pupils are intelligent.</i>

INTERROGATIVE FORM.

A. Simple Interrogation, viz., WITHOUT INTERROGATIVE PRONOUN OR ADVERB:—

7 (a) The *Subject a Personal Pronoun*:—*Singular.*

Parlé-je¹ bien ? *Do I speak (am I speaking) well ?*

Parles-tu français ? *Dost thou speak (art thou speaking) French ?*

{ **Parle-t-il** [on] ainsi ? *Does he speak (is he speaking) thus ?*

{ **Parle-t-elle** trop ? *Does she speak (is she speaking) too much ?*

Plural.

Parlons-nous bien ? *Do we speak (are we speaking) well ? etc.*

Parlez-vous français ? *Do you speak French ?*

{ **Parlent-ils** ainsi ? *Do they speak thus ?*

{ **Parlent-elles** trop ? *Do they talk too much ?*

or—

Singular.

Est-ce que je parle bien ? *Do I speak (am I speaking) well ?*

Est-ce que tu parles français ? *Dost thou speak (art thou speaking) French ?*

{ **Est-ce qu'**il parle ainsi ? *Does he speak (is he speaking) thus ?*

{ **Est-ce qu'**elle parle trop ? *Does she speak (is she speaking) too much ?*

Plural.

Est-ce que nous parlons bien ? *Do we speak (are we speaking) well ? etc.*

Est-ce que vous parlez français ? *Do you speak French ?*

{ **Est-ce qu'**ils parlent ainsi ? *Do they speak thus ?*

{ **Est-ce qu'**elles parlent trop ? *Do they talk too much ?*

8 (b) The *Subject a Noun*:—

L'orateur **parle-t-il** bien ? } *Does the orator speak well ?*
or, **Est-ce que** l'orateur parle bien ? }

La bonne **parle-t-elle** français ? } *Does the servant speak French ?*
or, **Est-ce que** la bonne parle français ? }

Les orateurs **parlent-ils** bien ? } *Do the orators speak well ?*
or, **Est-ce que** les orateurs parlent bien ? }

Les bonnes **parlent-elles** français ? } *Do the servants speak French ?*
or, **Est-ce que** les bonnes parlent français ? }

¹ To avoid the unpleasant sound of two *mute* syllables following each other, the final *e* mute of the verb is pronounced sharp, and this is indicated in print by an acute accent.

In like manner with verbs of any other conjugation; as,

Finis-tu (*or, Est-ce que tu finis*) ton ouvrage? *Art thou finishing thy work?*
Vendez-vous (*or, Est-ce que v. vendez*) votre maison? *Do you sell your house?*
A-t-il (*or, Est-ce qu'il a*) sa récompense? *Has he his reward?*
Sont-ils (*or, Est-ce qu'ils sont*) à la maison? *Are they at home?*

B. Relative Interrogation, viz., BEGINNING WITH AN INTERROGATIVE WORD:—

9 (a) *The Subject a Personal Pronoun:—*

Où demeurez-vous? *or, Où est-ce que v. de neurez?* *Where do you live?*
Que désirent-ils? *or, Qu'est-ce qu'ils désirent?* *What do they want?*
Quel état préférez-vous? } *What profession do you prefer?*
or, Quel état est-ce que vous préférez? }
Où trouve-t-on les coraux? } *Where are corals found?*
or, Où est-ce qu'on trouve les coraux? }

10 (b) *The Subject a Noun:—*

(1) *With a Simple Predicate, i.e. an Intransitive or Reflexive Verb, without complement:—*

Où demeure votre frère? } *Where does your brother live?*
or, Où est-ce que votre frère demeure? }
Que désire votre ami? } *What does your friend want?*
or, Qu'est-ce que votre ami désire? }

(2) *With a Complex Predicate, i.e. a Transitive Verb with a Noun-Object:—*

Où les pêcheurs **trouvent-ils** les coraux? } *Where do the fisher-*
or, Où est-ce que les pêcheurs trouvent les coraux? } *men find corals?*

11 **NEGATIVE FORM.**

Je	ne parle pas de vous.	<i>I do not speak (I am not speaking) of you.</i>
Tu	ne parles pas correctement.	<i>Thou dost not speak correctly.</i>
Il (elle)	ne parle pas mal.	<i>He (she) does not speak amiss.</i>
Louis	ne parle pas de toi.	<i>Louis is not speaking of thee.</i>
Nous	ne parlons pas italien.	<i>We do not speak Italian.</i>
Vous	ne parlez pas sensément.	<i>You do not speak sensibly.</i>
Ils (elles)	ne parlent pas trop.	<i>They do not speak too much.</i>
Les écoliers	ne parlent pas assez haut.	<i>These pupils do not speak loud enough.</i>

In like manner with—

THE SECOND CONJUGATION:—

Je **ne finis pas** mon travail. *I do not finish (I am not finishing) my work.*
 Nous **ne finissons pas** nos thèmes. *We do not finish our exercises, etc.*

THE FOURTH CONJUGATION :—

Je **ne** vends **pas** ma maison. *I do not sell my house.*
 Nous **ne** vendons **pas** nos marchandises. *We do not sell our wares, etc.*

THE AUXILIARY VERBS :—

Je **n'ai pas** mon couteau sur moi. *I have not my knife with (lit. upon) me.*
 Nous **n'avons pas** nos livres ici. *We have not our books here, etc.*
 Je **ne** suis **pas** indisposé. *I am not unwell.*
 Nous **ne** sommes **pas** tranquilles. *We are not quiet, etc.*

- 12 In French a verb is made *negative* in meaning by placing the particle **ne** before that verb ; in most cases this **ne**, which is the real negation, must be supplemented by some Adverb or Noun to indicate the *manner* or *degree* in which the action expressed by that verb is negated : (see § 316) as,

Cet écolier-ci **ne** travaille **pas**. *This pupil is not working.*

(which is the plainest and most general form of negation) ;

Cet écolier-là **ne** travaille **point**. *That pupil does not work (at all).*
 Votre écolier **ne** travaille **plus**. *Your pupil works no more (no longer), i.e. does not work now.*
 Le vôtre **ne** travaille **pas non plus**. *Yours does not work either.*
 Vous **ne** travaillez **guère**. *You hardly ever work.*
 Ce fainéant **ne** travaille **jamais**. *This idler never works.*
 Elle **ne** travaille **que** rarement. *She works only (but) rarely.*
 Je **ne** demande **rien**. *I ask for nothing.*
 Je **ne** demande **personne**. *I do not ask for anything.*
I ask for nobody (no one).
I do not ask for anybody (any one).

Obs.—**Rien** and **personne**, being used substantively, may stand as the Subject of the Verb ; as,

Rien **ne** décourage l'homme persévérant. *Not-thing daunts a persevering man.*
Personne **ne** travaille ici. *Nobody (no one) is working here.*

13

INTERROGATIVE AND NEGATIVE FORM.

Ne parlé-je } **pas** à propos ? *Am I not speaking to the purpose ?*
 or, Est-ce que je **ne** parle }
Ne parles-tu } **pas** de lui ? *Art thou not speaking of him ?*
 or, Est-ce que tu **ne** parles }
Ne parle-t-il **plus** de cela ? *Is he no longer speaking of that ?*
Ne parle-t-elle **jamais** de nous ? *Does she never speak of you ?*
Ne parlons-nous **pas** bien ? *Don't we speak well ?*
Ne parlez-vous **point** anglais ? *Don't you speak English ?*
Ne parlent-ils **plus** de vous ? *Do they not speak of you any more ?*

The *interrogative* form is made *negative* by placing **ne** before the Verb, and **pas** or **point**, **plus**, **jamais**, etc., after the Verb ; comp. § 8 : as,

L'orateur **ne** parle-t-il pas bien ? } *Does not the orator speak well ?*
 or, Est-ce que l'orateur **ne** parle **pas** bien ? }
 Pourquoi les écoliers **ne** répondent-ils **pas** ? *Why do the pupils not reply ?*

14 THE VERB WITH A PERSONAL PRONOUN FOR ITS OBJECT.

I. AFFIRMATIVE:—

Cherchez-vous mon ami ?—	<i>Are you looking for my friend?—</i>
Oui, je le cherche partout.	<i>Yes, I am looking for him everywhere.</i>
Est-ce que je connais cette dame ?—	<i>Do I know that lady?—</i>
Oui, tu la connais bien.	<i>Yes, you know her well.</i>
Est-ce qu'il désire ce couteau ?—	<i>Does he want this knife?—</i>
Oui, il le ¹ désire beaucoup.	<i>Yes, he wants it much.</i>
Est-ce qu'il mange sa pomme ?—	<i>Is he eating his apple?—</i>
Oui, il la ² mange.	<i>Yes, he is eating it.</i>

15 In like manner the *objective form* of all Personal Pronouns is placed before the Verb (see § 257): as,

(a) *Direct Object*:—

1.	Mon ami	me blâme.	<i>My friend is blaming me.</i>
2.	Ton maître	te loue.	<i>Thy master is praising thee.</i>
3.	{ Sa ² sœur	le taquine.	<i>His sister is teasing him.</i>
	{ Son ² frère	la conduit.	<i>Her brother is leading her.</i>
	{ L'écuyer	le (la) cherche.	<i>The pupil is looking for it.²</i>
1.	Notre ami	nous accompagne.	<i>Our friend accompanies us.</i>
2.	Votre ennemi	vous menace.	<i>Your enemy threatens you.</i>
3.	Leur maître	les protège.	<i>Their master protects them.</i>

Obs.—Before Verbs beginning with a vowel or silent *h*, **me** = **m'**, **te** = **t'**, **le**, **la** = **l'**; as—on **m'**attend, on **t'**attend, on **l'**attend.

16 (b) *Indirect Object*:—

1.	Mon maître	me parle.	<i>My master is speaking to me.</i>
2.	Ton ami	te répond.	<i>Thy friend replies to thee.</i>
3.	{ Son frère	lui répond.	<i>His brother replies to him.</i>
	{ Sa sœur	lui répond.	<i>Her sister replies to her.</i>
1.	Notre boucher	nous vend de la viande.	<i>Our butcher sells meat to us.</i>
2.	Votre maître	vous donne une leçon.	<i>Your master gives a lesson to you.</i>
3.	Leur père	leur envoie de l'argent.	<i>Their father sends money to them.</i>

¹ *It*, used as Object, answers to the French **le** or **la** according as the antecedent is *masculine* or *feminine*.

² A Possessive Adjective in French takes the Gender and Number of the Nouns which it qualifies.

II. INTERROGATIVE AND NEGATIVE:—

17 (a) *Simple Interrogation*, i.e., without Interrogative Pronoun or Adverb:—*Interrogative.*

Me blâme-t-il?—
 or, Est-ce qu'il **me** blâme?—
Does he blame me?

Te cherche-t-elle?—
Is she looking for thee?—

Le (la) loue-t-on?—
Does one blame him (her)?—
Son ami **le** loue-t-il?—
Est-ce que son ami le loue?—
Does his friend praise him?—

Nous flattez-vous?—
Do you flatter us?—

Vous protége-t-il?—
Does he protect you?—

Les honorez-vous?—
Do you honour them?—

Negative.

Il ne **te** blâme pas.

He does not blame thee.

Elle ne **me** cherche plus.
She is not looking for me now.

On ne **le** (la) loue jamais.
One never blames him (her).

Son ami ne **le** loue pas.

His friend does not praise him.

Nous ne **vous** flattons pas.
We do not flatter you.

Il ne **nous** protège pas.
He does not protect us.

Nous ne **les** honorons pas.
We do not honour them.

18 (b) *Relative Interrogation*; i.e., with an Interrogative Pronoun or Adverb:—

'Où' **le** cherchez-vous? } *Where do you look for him?*
 'Où' est-ce que vous **le** cherchez? }
 'Depuis quand' son ami **le** cherche-t-il? } *Since when has his friend been*
looking for him?
 Pourquoi **les** blâmez-vous? } *Why do you blame them?*

19 III. INTERROGATIVE-NEGATIVE COMBINED:—

- (a) Ne **me** blâme-t-il pas? } *Does he not blame me?*
 Est-ce qu'il ne **me** blâme pas? }
 Ne **te** cherche-t-il plus? } *Is he no longer looking for*
 Est-ce qu'il ne **te** cherche plus? } *thee? etc.*
 Ton maître ne **te** blâme-t-il jamais? } *Does thy master never blame*
 Est-ce que ton maître ne **te** blâme jamais? } *thee? etc.*
- (b) Pourquoi ne **me** récompense-t-il pas? } *Why does he not reward me?*
 Pourquoi est-ce qu'il ne **me** récompense pas? } *etc.*

IV. IMPERATIVE:—

(a) *Pronoun-Object in the FIRST PERSON.**Direct and Indirect Object.**Affirmative.*

Soulagez-**moi** ! *Relieve me.*
 Donne-**moi** cela. *Give that to me.*

Soulagez-**nous** ! *Relieve us!*
 Donnez-**nous** cela ! *Give us that!*

Negative.

Ne **me** suis pas ! *Don't follow me!*
 Ne **me** donne pas cela ! *Don't give me that*
 Ne **nous** suivez pas ! *Don't follow us!*
 Ne **nous** donnez pas cela. *Don't give us that!*

(b) *Pronoun-Object in the THIRD PERSON.**Direct Object.*

Dirige-**le** ! *Direct him!*

Dirige-**la** ! *Direct her!*
 Surveillez-**les** bien !
Watch them well!

Ne **le** dirige pas. } *Do not direct him*
 Ne **la** dirige pas. } *(her).*
 Ne **les** surveillez pas.
Don't watch them.

Indirect Object.

Apporte-**lui** cela.
Bring that to him (to her).
 Prêtez-**leur** ces ciseaux.
Lend these scissors to them.

Ne **lui** apporte pas cela.
Do not bring that to him (to her).
 Ne **leur** prêtez pas ces ciseaux.
Do not lend these scissors to them.

For the 2nd person, see Reflexive Verbs, § 199.

THE NOUN AND ITS ADJUNCTS.

21 I. THE NOUN QUALIFIED BY THE **Determinative Adjective** (Definite Article):—

(a) as the **Subject** of a Verb; *i.e.*, answering the question *who?* or *what?*: as,

<i>Singular.</i>	<i>Masculine.</i>	<i>Plural.</i>
Le maître commande. <i>The master commands.</i>		Les maîtres commandent. <i>The masters command.</i>
L'éccolier obéit. <i>The pupil obeys.</i>		Les écoliers obéissent. <i>The pupils obey.</i>
L'homme travaille. <i>The man works.</i>		Les hommes travaillent. <i>The men work.</i>
<i>Feminine.</i>		
La maîtresse commande. <i>The mistress commands.</i>		Les maîtresses commandent. <i>The mistresses command.</i>
L'eau coule. <i>The water flows.</i>		Les eaux coulent. <i>The waters run.</i>
L'horloge avance. <i>The clock gains.</i>		Les horloges avancent. <i>The clocks gain.</i>

From the above scheme we see that the form of the Definite Article is—

Le before a *masculine noun singular* } beginning with a *consonant* (except
La before a *feminine noun singular* } silent *h*).
L' before *masc. and fem. nouns singular*, beginning with a *vowel or silent h*.
Les before *all masc. and fem. nouns plural*.

Obs. 1.—If the Noun is preceded by a qualifying Adjective, then **le**, **la**, or **l'** is used according as the Adjective itself begins with a *consonant* or a *vowel*.—

L'homme est mortel. *Man is mortal.* **Le** bel homme. *The handsome man.*
Le soldat est blessé. *The soldier is wounded.* **L'**ancien soldat. *The retired soldier.*

Obs. 2.—To ascertain whether the initial *h* of a French word is silent or aspirate there is no other test but its *derivation*: if derived from *Latin* or *Greek* the *h* will be *silent*; if derived from another language (especially *Teutonic*) it will generally be *aspirate*:—

L'homme, **l'**habit, **l'**habitude, **l'**heure, **l'**horloge, **l'**histoire, **l'**herbe, etc.
Le hameau, **le** harenç, **le** héron, **le** houx, **la** hache, **la** harpe, **la** hâte, etc.

To this important rule there are but very few exceptions—*le héros, le huit octobre.*

- 22 (b) as the **Object** of a Verb; *i.e.*, answering the question *whom?* or *what?* as,

Singular. Plural.

Je respecte **le maître** (**les maîtres**). *I respect the master (the masters).*
 Vous instruisez **l'écoulier** (**les écouliers**). *You instruct the pupil (the pupils).*
 Ils récompensent **l'homme** (**les hommes**). *They reward the man (the men).*
 Nous respectons **la maîtresse** (**les maîtresses**). *We respect the mistress (the mistresses).*
 Ils versent **l'eau** (**les eaux**). *They pour the water (the waters).*
 On raccommode **l'horloge** (**les horloges**). *One is mending the clock (the clocks).*

- 23 (c) as the **Predicate Complement** of a Verb; *i.e.*, answering the question *who?* or *what?* after a Verb; as,

Masculine. Feminine.

Je suis **le maître** (**la maîtresse**). *I am the master (the mistress).*
 Tu es **l'écoulier** (**l'écoulière**). *Thou art the pupil.*
 C'est **l'homme** (**la femme**). *It is the man (the woman).*
 Nous sommes **les maîtres** (**les maîtresses**). *We are the masters (the mistresses), &c.*

All French Nouns, even those which denote things without any *natural sex*, are either masculine or feminine in *Grammatical Gender*. A few general rules for ascertaining whether a Noun is masculine or feminine will be found in the Appendix. The beginner will do well to learn all new Nouns as they occur with the Determinative Adjective, or with the Indefinite Article, if they begin with a vowel or silent *h*.

- 24 (d) with the **Preposition 'de,'** of, from:—

(1) as the *Attributive Adjunct* of another Noun (corresponding to the English *Possessive* and to the Latin *Genitive* case): as,

Masculine.

Nous étudions les livres	{ du maître. des maîtres.	We study the books { of the master. of the masters.
On corrige les thèmes	{ de l'écoulier. des écouliers.	One corrects the { of the pupil. exercises } of the pupils.
On approuve la conduite	{ de l'homme. des hommes.	One approves of the { of the man. conduct } of the men.

Feminine.

Admirez le dévouement	{ de la maîtresse. des maîtresses.	Admire the { of the mistress. devotion } of the mistresses.
J'aime la fraîcheur	{ de l'eau. des eaux.	I like the { of the water. freshness } of the waters.
J'aperçois { le cadran les cadrans	{ de l'horloge. des horloges.	I perceive { the dial of the clock. the dials of the clocks.

de standing before **le** coalesces with it into **du** :

de before **les** into **des** :

But **de** before **la** or **l'** never coalesces; hence—**de la**, **de l'**

} of the, from the.

In English the *possessive relation* of one Noun to another may be expressed in two ways:—*the master's book*, or, *the book of the master*; in French only the latter construction is used in prose.

- 25 (2) as the *Predicative Complement* of a Verb or Adjective (corresponding to the English Prepositions *of, from, with, by,* and others, and to the Latin *Genitive* or the *Ablative* with or without *de, ex, a*): as,

Singular. Plural.

<i>Masc.</i>	{ Je parle	du roi (des rois).	<i>I speak of the king (of the kings).</i>
	{ Il prend soin	de l'enfant (des enfants).	<i>He takes care of the child (children).</i>
	{ Je me sers	de l'habit (des habits).	<i>I make use of the coat (coats).</i>
<i>Fem.</i>	{ Je décide	de la question (des questions).	<i>I decide the question (questions).</i>
	{ Il vient	de l'écurie (des écuries).	<i>He comes from the stable (stables).</i>
	{ Je doute	de l'histoire (des histoires).	<i>I doubt of the story (stories).</i>

- 26 In like manner after *Adjectives*: as,

Cette action est digne	{ du ministre	<i>This action is worthy of the minister</i>
	{ des ministres.	<i>(of the ministers).</i>
Le maître est content	{ de l'écuyer.	<i>The master is satisfied with the pupil</i>
	{ des écuyers.	<i>(with the pupils).</i>
Je suis fâché	{ de la mésaventure.	<i>I am sorry for the mishap</i>
	{ des mésaventures.	<i>(for the mishaps).</i>

Many Verbs and Adjectives which in English take *with, by, at,* require in French the Preposition *de* (see §§ 324-344).

- 27 (c) with the Preposition '*à*':—

(1) as the *Indirect Object* of a Transitive Verb (corresponding generally to the English Prepositions *to, at, in, for,* and others, and to the Latin *Dative*): as,

Nous rendons les livres	{ au maître.	<i>We return the</i>	{ to the master.
	{ aux maîtres.	<i>books</i>	{ to the masters.
Il voue ses soins	{ à l'écuyer.	<i>He devotes his</i>	{ to the pupil.
	{ aux écuyers.	<i>attention</i>	{ to the pupils.
Nous rendons justice	{ à l'homme.	<i>We do justice</i>	{ to the man.
	{ aux hommes.		{ to the men.
Ils donnent des baisers	{ à la mère.	<i>They give kisses</i>	{ to the mother.
	{ aux mères.		{ to the mothers.
Le maître rend les exercices	{ à l'élève.	<i>The master returns</i>	{ to the pupil.
	{ aux élèves.	<i>the exercises</i>	{ to the pupils.
Elle donne sa montre	{ à l'horloger.	<i>She gives her</i>	{ to the watchmaker.
	{ aux horlogers.	<i>watch</i>	{ to the watchmakers.

à standing before *le* coalesces with it into *au*; } *to the, for the, in the, at the*;
à before *les* into *aux*;
 But *à* before *la* or *l'* never coalesces; hence *à la, à l'*.

- 28 (2) as the *Adverbial Complement* of an Intransitive Verb, an Adjective, or of another Noun : as,

Masculine.

Le fils ressemble	au père.	<i>The son bears likeness to the father.</i>
Les fils ressemblent	aux pères.	<i>The sons bear likeness to the fathers.</i>
Cela est conforme	à l'usage.	<i>That is conformable to (the) custom.</i>
Cela est contraire	aux usages.	<i>That is contrary to (the) customs.</i>

Feminine.

La fille ressemble	à la mère.	<i>The daughter resembles (to) the mother.</i>
Les filles ressemblent	aux mères.	<i>The daughters resemble (to) the mothers.</i>
Le cheval est	à l'écurie.	<i>The horse is in the stable.</i>
Les vaches sont	aux écuries.	<i>The cows are in the stables.</i>

Obs.—No other Prepositions but **de** and **à** coalesce with the Definite Article.

- 29 (f) with other Prepositions than **de** and **à** : used as an *Adverbial Adjunct* of Verbs, Adjectives, or Nouns : as,

Masculine.

Ces écoliers demeurent	{ chez le maître. chez les maîtres.	<i>The pupils reside with the master (with the masters).</i>
Ces paquets sont	{ pour l'écolier. pour les écoliers.	<i>These parcels are for the pupil (for the pupils).</i>
Les montres ont été raccommodées	{ par l'horloger. par les horlogers.	<i>The watches have been mended by the watchmaker (watchmakers).</i>

Feminine.

L'élève arriva	{ avant la maîtresse. avant les maîtresses.	<i>The pupil arrived before the mistress (before the mistresses).</i>
Le foin est	{ dans l'écurie. dans les écuries.	<i>The hay is in the stable (in the stables).</i>
Cela n'est pas	{ selon l'habitude. selon les habitudes.	<i>That is not according to his habit (according to his habits).</i>

- 30 (g) If we now sum up the above-mentioned forms and functions of a Noun qualified by the Determinative Adjective (Definite Article) we obtain the following scheme :—

Singular.

Masculine : beginning with a *Consonant* :—

<i>Subject.</i>	Le maître parle.	<i>The master is speaking, etc.</i>
<i>Dir. Obj.</i>	J'écoute le maître.	<i>I am listening (to) the master.</i>
<i>Possessive.</i>	Le livre du maître est amusant.	<i>The master's book is amusing.</i>
<i>Indir. Obj.</i>	Il répond au maître.	<i>He replies to the master.</i>

Feminine : beginning with a *Consonant* :—

<i>Subj.</i>	La maîtresse commande.	<i>The mistress commands.</i>
<i>Dir. Obj.</i>	Je comprends la maîtresse.	<i>I understand the mistress.</i>
<i>Possessive.</i>	Le travail de la maîtresse est fini.	<i>The mistress's work is finished.</i>
<i>Indir. Obj.</i>	Elle répond à la maîtresse.	<i>She replies to the mistress.</i>

Masculine and Feminine : beginning with a *Vowel* or *silent h* :—

<i>Subj.</i>	L' élève écoute.	<i>The pupil is listening.</i>
<i>Dir. Obj.</i>	On instruit l' élève.	<i>One instructs the pupil.</i>
<i>Possessive.</i>	Le cahier de l' élève est neuf.	<i>The pupil's copybook is new.</i>
<i>Indir. Obj.</i>	Cela appartient à l' élève.	<i>That belongs to the pupil.</i>

Plural.

Masculine and Feminine : beginning either with a *Consonant* or *Vowel* :—

<i>Subj.</i>	Les maîtres (les élèves) écoutent.	<i>The masters (pupils) listen.</i>
<i>Dir. Obj.</i>	Je comprends les maîtres (les élèves).	<i>I understand the master (pupils).</i>
<i>Possessive.</i>	Le travail des maîtres (des élèves) est excellent.	<i>The work of the masters (pupils) is excellent.</i>
<i>Indir. Obj.</i>	Il répond aux maîtres (aux élèves).	<i>He replies to the masters (pupils).</i>

- 31 Use of the Determinative Adjective (DEFINITE ARTICLE) in French as compared with English :—

(a) Le grand homme est admiré.	<i>The great man is admired.</i>
L' or que j'avais perdu a été retrouvé.	<i>The gold I had lost has been found again.</i>
La vertu de Caton.	<i>The virtue of Cato (but — Cato's virtue).</i>

When a Noun is taken in a *limited, particular, or individual* sense, the Definite Article is used both in *English and French*.

- 32 (b) **L'**homme est mortel. *Man is mortal.*
Les hommes sont mortels. *Men are mortal.*
L'habitude est une seconde nature. *Habit is second nature.*
La Foi, **l'**Espérance et **la** Charité. *Faith, Hope and Charity.*

When a Noun is taken in an *unlimited (general)* sense, i.e. when it implies the whole of the class (genus) of the persons or things which it denotes, then the Definite Article is also used in French, but not in English.

- 33 (c) 1. **La** France et **l'**Angleterre sont de grandes puissances. *France and England are great powers.*
Le Portugal possédait autrefois **le** Brésil. *Portugal once possessed Brazil.*
 2. **Le** roi Arth'ur de la table ronde. *King Arthur of the Round Table.*
La reine Victoria est née en 1819. *Queen Victoria was born in 1819.*
Le petit Charles est très gentil. *Little Charles is a very nice boy.*

When a Noun is (1) the name of a *continent, country, province, etc.*, or (2) the name of a *title, dignity, profession, etc.*, followed by a proper noun, then the Definite Article is used in French, but not in English.

- 34 (d) Mexico, capitale du Mexique, est une ville très ancienne. *Mexico, the capital of the republic of Mexico, is a very ancient city.*
 Charles douze mourut à Fried-richshall. *Charles the Twelfth died at Fried-richshall.*

When a Noun is used in *apposition to another Noun*, the Article may be omitted in French, though generally used in English. With *cardinal numbers* qualifying the names of *sovereigns*, or referring to *sections, chapters, etc.*, of books, documents, etc., the Definite Article is never used in French.

- 35 (e) 1. Les vins de France (= français) sont bons. *French wines are good.*
 C'est un vrai acte de vertu (= vertueux). *That is a truly virtuous action.*
 J'ai une montre d'or à remontoir. *I have a gold (= golden) keyless watch.*
 2. Il parle à cœur ouvert (= franchement). *He speaks candidly.*
 Il répondit avec dureté (= durement). *He answered harshly.*
 3. Prendre garde (= se garder) de tomber. *To take care not to fall.*
 J'ai peur (= crains) de l'offenser. *I am afraid of offending him.*
 Cela me fait plaisir (= réjouit). *That gives me pleasure.*

When a Noun is used as an *adjunct* so as to form with the preceding Preposition or Verb (1) an *adjectival*, (2) an *adverbial*, (3) a *verbal*, phrase, then it is generally used *without* Article. In like manner after the Preposition **en**: *en France, en hiver, en prison*, §§ 347-348.

N.B.—A few more examples, strongly contrasted, will bring home the distinction more vividly than any rules would do:—

NOUNS USED SUBSTANTIVELY } compared with { NOUNS USED ADJECTIVELY OR ADVERBIALY :—

Tel est le plaisir **du** roi.
Such is the king's pleasure.
 Voilà la tour **de** l'église.
There is the tower of the church.
 Voici les jeux **de** l'enfant.
Here are the games of the child.
 C'est un ami **de** l'enfance.
He is a friend of young people.
 Le livre **de** l'enfant est joli.
The book of the child is pretty.
 Il est **dans** le secret.
He is in the secret.
 J'admire le palais **de** la reine.
I admire the palace of the queen.

La chasse est un plaisir **de** roi.
Hunting is a kingly sport.
 Haut comme une tour **d'**église.
High as a church tower.
 C'est un vrai jeu **d'**enfant.
It is (a) real child's play.
 Charles est mon ami **d'**enfance.
Charles is my friend from childhood.
 Je ne lis plus de livres **d'**enfant.
I no longer read children's books.
 Je le dis **en** secret.
I say it in secrecy.
 Cette fille a un port **de** reine.
This girl has a queenly bearing.

Formation of the Plural of Nouns (Substantives and Adjectives) :—

36 (a) General Rule :—Add -s to all Nouns and Adjectives, except those specified under (b) : as,

Singular.

Le chien fidèle est utile.
The faithful dog is useful.

Plural.

Les chiens fidèles sont utiles.
The faithful dogs are useful.

37 (b) Special Rules :—

(1) Nouns and Adjectives ending in -s, -x, -z, *do not change* : as,

Cet **Anglais** est **heureux**.
 La **noix** est un fruit **délicieux**.

Ces **Anglais** sont **heureux**.
 Les **noix** sont des fruits **délicieux**.

(2) Nouns and Adjectives ending in -au, -eu, *take x* ; as,

Ce grand château est beau.
This great castle is fine.
 Le nouveau jeu est amusant.
The new game is amusing.

Ces grands châteaux sont beaux.
These great castles are fine.
 Les nouveaux jeux sont amusants.
The new games are amusing.

[Exception : **bleu**, *blue* takes **s** : Les cieux sont bleus.]

Obs.—Seven Nouns in -ou also take **x** :—

Les bijoux, *jewels* ;
 Les cailloux, *pebbles* ;

les choux, *cabbages* ;
 les genoux, *knees* ;
 les hiboux, *owls*.

les joux, *toys* ;
 les poux, *lice* ;

(3) Nouns and Adjectives ending in **-al** or **-ail** change their ending into **-aux** : as,

Le cheval anglais est beau.
The English horse is fine.

Dieu bénira votre travail.
God will bless your work.

Mon droit est égal au vôtre.
My right is equal to yours.

Les chevaux anglais sont beaux.
English horses are fine.

Dieu bénira vos travaux.
God will bless your labours.

Mes droits sont égaux aux vôtres.
My rights are equal to yours.

[Exception 1 : Six nouns in **-al**, and nine in **-ail** take **s** :—

Les bals, dances ;	les carnavaux, carnivals ;	les pails, stakes ;
Les cals, callosities ;	les chacals, jackals ;	les régals, treats.
Attirails, gears ;	les épouvantails, scarecrows ;	les mails, malts, mallets ;
Les bercails, sheepfolds ;	les éventails, fans ;	les poitrails, breast-pieces.
Les détails, details ;	les gouvernails, rudders ;	les portails, fronts, gateways.]

[Exception 2 : Many adjectives in **-al**, as, *colossal, filial, final, frugal, glacial, jovial, naval, pénal*, etc., are not used in the Masculine Plural.]

For Nouns with two forms in the Plural and for the Plural of Compound Nouns, see Appendix.

38 II. THE NOUN QUALIFIED BY THE Indefinite Article.

(a) The Indefinite Article used in French as in English :—

Masc. Un frère est un ami donné par la nature. *A brother is a friend given by nature.*

Fem. Une sœur est une amie donnée par la nature. *A sister is a friend given by nature.*

The form of the Indefinite Article is not affected, as that of the Definite Article is, by either **de** or **à**.

Masculine.

Subj. & Pred. Un ami est un trésor. *A friend is a treasure.*
Dir. Obj. J'ai trouvé un trésor. *I have found a treasure.*
Possess. J'ai la clef d'un trésor. *I have the key of a treasure.*
Ind. Obj. Un bon état est égal à un trésor. *A good trade is equal to a treasure.*
Complem. Je ne le donnerais pas pour un trésor. *I would not give it for a treasure.*

Feminine.

Subj. & Pred. Une sœur est une amie. *A sister is a friend.*
Possess. J'apprécie l'affection d'une amie. *I value the affection of a friend.*
Ind. Obj. J'ai confié mon secret à une amie. *I have confided my secret to a friend.*

La devise des ligueurs était : une foi, une loi, un roi.
The motto of the leaguers was : one faith, one law, one king.

Obs. 1.—Although **un, une** used adjectively has no Plural, yet a Noun used indefinitely may be used in the Plural; in French with the Part. Art. (§ 40), in English with or without *some, any*.

Il a **un** ami. *He has a friend.*

Il n'a **pas d'**ami.¹ *He has no friends.*

Il n'a **pas un** ami. *He has not a single friend.*

Il a **des** amis. *He has (some) friends.*

Il n'a **pas d'**amis. *He has no (not any) friends.*

¹ **De** instead of **un**, according to § 41.

Obs. 2.—**Un** used substantively may be used in the Singular and Plural with the Definite Article; as,

L'un (l'une) et l'autre sont ici.

Les uns (les unes) et les autres seront punis.

L'un l'autre. (**Les uns** les autres.)

Les uns travaillent, les autres jouent.

Both are here.

All will be punished.

One another. Each other.

Some work, others play.

39 (b) The Indefinite Article is used in English, but not in French:—

(1) before a Noun in *Apposition*:—

Richmond, petite ville d'Angleterre.

Quel¹ coquin d'intendant!

Richmond, a small town in England.

What a rascal of a steward!

(2) before a Noun used as a *Predicative Complement* to a verb denoting *being*, as *être, devenir, paraître*, etc., or *believing, appointing*:—

Il est né Anglais.

De simple soldat qu'il était, il devint capitaine.

Je le crois homme d'honneur.

He is a born Englishman.

From a private soldier he rose to the rank of captain.

I believe him to be a man of honour.

(3) when a Noun denoting a *bodily or mental quality* is used as the object of the verb *avoir*, in which case the *Definite Article* is generally used in French:—

Elle a **la** mémoire sûre.

Platon avait **les** traits réguliers.

She has a good memory.

Plato had regular features.

Notice the following cases:—

Quatre schellings **le** mètre.

Trois francs **la** livre.

Il vient trois fois **par** jour.

Four shillings a yard.

Three francs a pound.

He comes three times a day.

¹ So after **quel** and **jamais**: Quel beau coup d'œil! *What a beautiful sight!* Jamais homme ne fut plus malheureux. *Never was a man more unhappy.*

III. THE NOUN QUALIFIED BY THE Partitive Article.

40

*Masculine.**Singular.**Plural.*

Donnez-moi **du** pain et **des** noix. *Give me some bread and nuts.*
 Qui a **de l'**argent a **des** amis. *He who has money has friends.*

Feminine.

Voici **de la** bière et **des** gâteaux. *Here is (some) beer and (some) cakes.*
 Nous avons **de l'**huile et **des** fruits. *We have oil and fruits.*

Compare :—

Avez-vous **du** fromage? *Have you any cheese?*
 Je n'ai **pas de** fromage! *I have no cheese (see § 41).*

In order to express that only a *part* or *fraction* of a whole denoted by a Noun is implied, the *partitive* form of the Definite Article, i.e., **de + le = du**, or **de la**, **de l'**, **de les = des**, (see § 24) is put before the Noun thus used in a *partitive* sense :—

NOUNS DENOTING THE WHOLE } compared { NOUNS DENOTING A PART OF
 OF A THING OR THINGS } with { FRACTION OF A WHOLE :—

Singular.

M. Voici **le** fer. *Here is (the) iron.* Voici **du** fer. *Here is (some) iron.*
 Voilà **l'**or. *There is (the) gold.* Voilà **de l'**or. *There is (some) gold.*
 Il brigue **l'**honneur. *He covets (the) honour.* Il brigue **des** honneurs. *He covets honours.*

F. Il vend **la** toile. *He sells (the) cloth.* Il vend **de la** toile. *He sells cloth.*
 Voici **l'**encre. *Here is (the) ink.* Voici **de l'**encre. *Here is ink.*
 Voilà **l'**huile. *There is (the) oil.* C'est **de l'**huile. *It is oil.*

Plural.

M. Brisez **les** fers. *Break the irons.* Il porte **des** fers. *He wears fetters.*
 Rendez-lui **les** honneurs. *Do him the honours.* Rendez-lui **des** honneurs. *Render him honours.*

F. Il aime **les** confitures. *He likes the preserves, or, preserves.* Il mange **des** confitures. *He is eating preserves.*
 Voici **les** oranges. *Here are the oranges.* Voici **des** oranges. *Here are some oranges.*

Obs.—J'ai **de** bon pain, **d'**excellente viande et **de** beaux fruits.
I have good bread, excellent meat and fine fruits.

If a Noun used in a *partitive* sense is limited by a *Qualifying Adjective*, **de** alone is used as above.

41 IV. THE NOUN QUALIFIED BY AN Adverb or Noun of Quantity or Negation.

- (b) J'ai **assez de** vinaigre et **assez d'**huile pour faire de la salade. *I have vinegar and oil enough to make salad.*
 Il y a **trop de** moutarde et **trop d'**œufs, mais **trop peu** (pas assez) de sel. *There is too much mustard and too many eggs, but too little (not enough) salt.*
 Mettez **plus de** chicorée et **plus de** laitues, mais **moins de** poivre et **moins d'**oignons. *Put more endives and more lettuce, but less pepper and fewer onions.*
 Maintenant **encore un peu de** cresson. *Now a little more cress.*
 Qui a **beaucoup d'**argent a **beaucoup d'**amis. *He who has much money has many friends.*
 Qui a **peu d'**argent a **peu d'**amis. *He who has little money has few friends.*
Combien de papier et **combien de** plumes désirez-vous donc? *How much paper and how many pens do you want then?*
 Je désire **autant de** papier et **autant de** plumes que vous. *I require as much paper and as many pens as you.*
 Tu **n'as pas tant de** fruit **ni tant de** fleurs que nous. *You have not so much fruit, nor so many flowers as we.*
 Je **n'ai pas de** patience. *I have no patience.*
N'ayant point d'argent, il **n'a point d'**amis. *Having no money, he has no friends.*
 Donnez au pauvre mendiant un **morceau de** pain et un **verre de** vin. *Give the poor beggar a piece of bread and a glass of wine.*
 Voici une **livre de** café. *Here is a pound of coffee.*
 Voilà une **corbeille de** cerises. *There is a basket of cherries.*
 Apportez-moi une **douzaine de** verres et une **demi-douzaine d'**assiettes. *Bring me a dozen glasses and half-a-dozen plates.*

42 When a Noun denoting *part or fraction of a whole* is the Adjunct of an Adverb of Quantity or Negation, or of a Noun of Measure, **de** alone is used:—

NOUNS USED PARTITIVELY } compared { NOUNS USED AS ADJUNCTS
 WITHOUT ADVERB OR NOUN } with . } OF ADVERBS OR OF NOUNS
 OF MEASURE:—

- J'ai **du** pain. *I have bread.* J'ai **assez de** pain. *I have enough bread.*
 Il a **de l'**or. *He has gold.* Il a **beaucoup d'**or. *He has much gold.*
 Elle a **de la** viande. *She has meat.* Elle a une **livre de** viande. *She has a pound of meat.*
 Ils ont **des** amis. *They have friends.* Ils n'ont **point d'**amis. *They have no friends.*

V. THE NOUN QUALIFIED BY A Possessive Adjective :

43 (a) Used as the Subject of a sentence :—

		<i>Singular.</i>
<i>Masc.</i>	<i>Fem.</i>	
Mon frère et	ma ^r sœur sont à la maison.	<i>My brother and my sister are at home.</i>
Ton fils et	ta ^r fille sont à l'école.	<i>Thy son and thy daughter are at school.</i>
Son cousin et	sa ^r cousine voyagent.	<i>His (her) cousins (m. and f.) are travelling.</i>
Notre maître et	notre maîtresse travaillent.	<i>Our master and our mistress are working.</i>
Votre oncle et	votre tante sont à l'église.	<i>Your uncle and your aunt are at church.</i>
Leur neveu et	leur nièce étudient.	<i>Their nephew and their niece are studying.</i>

Plural.

Mes frères et	mes sœurs jouent.	<i>My brothers and sisters are playing.</i>
Tes fils et	tes filles étudient.	<i>Thy sons and daughters are studying.</i>
Ses cousins et	ses cousines sont ici.	<i>His cousins (m. and f.) are here.</i>
Nos maîtres et	nos maîtresses travaillent.	<i>Our masters and mistresses are working.</i>
Vos oncles et	vos tantes ne sont pas ici.	<i>Your uncles and aunts are not here.</i>
Leurs neveux et	leurs nièces descendent.	<i>Their nephews and nieces are coming down.</i>

* **Mon** amie est plus discrète que **ton** amie. *My friend is more discreet than your friend.*
Son habit n'est pas neuf. *His (her) coat is not new.*

Before a *feminine* Noun or Adjective beginning with a vowel or silent *h*, **ma**, **ta**, **sa** are, for the sake of avoiding a *hiatus*, i.e., the unpleasant sound of two vowels in close succession, changed into **mon**, **ton**, **son**.

Compare the English:—*a* tree, *an* ass, *an* heir; though, of course, *an* in English is the original and *a* the clipped form.

Observation.

Il a perdu **son** crayon (*m.*) et **sa** plume (*f.*) *He has lost his pencil and his pen.*
 Elle a trouvé **son** crayon (*m.*) et **sa** plume (*f.*) *She has found her pencil and her pen.*

In French the Possessive Adjective takes the *gender* of the Noun qualified by it, whilst in English it takes the *gender* of the Noun denoting the possessor.

(b) used as the Object of a Verb; see §§ 3 and 4.

44 (c) With Prepositions: used as attributive adjunct of a Noun, Adjective, or Verb: as,

Les études **de mon frère et de^r ma sœur**. *The studies of my brother and sister.*
 Les lettres **de mes frères et de mes sœurs**, etc. *The letters of my brothers and sisters.*

Nous parlons **de notre voyage**. *We are speaking of our journey.*
 Il répond **à mon père et à^r ma mère**. *He replies to my father and mother.*
 Je parle **à ma maîtresse**, etc. *I am speaking to my mistress.*
 Elle demeure **chez son oncle**. *She lives with her uncle.*
 Il demeure **chez sa tante**, etc. *He lives with his aunt.*

^r Observe the repetition of **de** and **à**.

45 VI. THE NOUN QUALIFIED BY THE Demonstrative Adjective.

Masculine.

(a) **Ce village et ce hameau** sont en Suisse. *This village and this hamlet are in Switzerland.*
Cet été et cet hiver sont longs. *This summer and this winter are long.*

Feminine.

Cette flute et cette harpe sont à moi. *This flute and this harp are mine.*
Cette aventure et cette histoire sont amusantes. *This adventure and this story are amusing.*

Plural Masc. and Fem.

Ces villages et ces hameaux sont en Suisse. *These villages and hamlets are in Switzerland.*
Ces aventures et ces histoires sont amusantes. *These adventures and stories are amusing.*

The form of the Demonstrative Adjective is—

Ce before *masculine Nouns singular*, beginning with a *consonant*.

Cet before *masculine Nouns singular*, beginning with a *vowel* or *silent h*.

Cette before all *feminine Nouns singular*.

Ces before all *masculine and feminine Nouns plural*.

Obs.—**Ce** marchand; *this merchant*; **cet** honnête marchand; *this honest merchant*.

Cet homme; *this man*; **ce** brave homme; *this worthy man*. Compare §21, Obs. x.

Masculine.

46 (b) **Ce cheval-ci** est plus beau que **ce cheval-là**. *This horse is finer than that horse.*
Cet arbre-ci n'est pas si haut que **cet arbre-là**. *This tree is not so high as that tree.*

Feminine.

Cette pomme-ci est plus mûre que **cette pomme-là**. *This apple is riper than that apple.*
Ces raisins-ci sont moins doux que **ces raisins-là**. *These grapes are not so sweet as those grapes.*

To indicate the distinction between *this* and *that*, i.e., to distinguish what is *nearer* from what is *farther*, the Adverbial Particles **ci** and **là** are appended to the Noun limited by **ce** as above.

- 47 To sum up the above, compare the different ways in which the same Noun may be limited by different Adjuncts:—

MASCULINE.

*Singular.**Plural.*

Le pain, <i>the bread</i> ;	l' honneur, <i>the honour.</i>	Les honneurs, <i>the honours.</i>
Du pain, <i>some (any) bread</i> ;	de l' honneur, <i>some (any) honour.</i>	Des honneurs, <i>some (any) honours.</i>
Un pain, <i>a loaf</i> ;	un honneur, <i>a(n) honour.</i>	Des honneurs, <i>honours.</i>
Mon pain, <i>my bread</i> ;	mon honneur, <i>my honour.</i>	Mes honneurs, <i>my honours.</i>
Ce pain, <i>this loaf</i> ;	cet honneur, <i>this honour.</i>	Ces honneurs, <i>these honours.</i>

FEMININE.

*Singular.**Plural.*

La soupe, <i>the soup</i> ;	l' eau, <i>the water.</i>	Les eaux, <i>the waters.</i>
De la soupe, <i>some (any) soup</i> ;	de l' eau, <i>some (any) water.</i>	Des eaux, <i>some (any) waters.</i>
Une soupe, <i>a soup</i> ;	une eau, <i>a water.</i>	Des eaux, <i>waters.</i>
Ma soupe, <i>my soup</i> ;	mon eau, <i>my water.</i>	Mes eaux, <i>my waters.</i>
Cette soupe, <i>this soup</i> ;	cette eau, <i>this water.</i>	Ces eaux, <i>these waters.</i>

48 VII. THE NOUN LIMITED BY AN Adjective of Quality:—

- (a) M. Le fruit **vert** n'est pas **mûr**. *Green fruit is not ripe (see 32).*
 F. La pomme **verte** n'est pas **mûre**. *The green apple is not ripe (see 31).*
 M. Les fruits **verts** ne sont pas **mûrs**. *Green fruits are not ripe.*
 F. Les pommes **vertes** ne sont pas **mûres**. *The green apples are not ripe.*

An Adjective or Past Participle used attributively or predicatively must take the sign of the *feminine*, if the Noun which it limits is feminine ; and the sign of the *plural*, if that Noun is plural.

- 49 (b & c) M. Un ami **fidèle** est **précieux**. *A faithful friend is precious.*
 F. Une amie **fidèle** est **précieuse**. *A faithful friend (f.) is precious.*
 M. Les amis **fidèles** sont **précieux**. *The faithful friends are precious.*
 F. Les amies **fidèles** sont **précieuses**. *The faithful friends (f.) are precious.*

- 50 (d) M. L'écolier **attentif** est récompensé. *The attentive pupil is rewarded.*
 F. L'écolière **attentive** est récompensée. *The attentive pupil is rewarded.*
 M. Les écoliers **attentifs** sont récompensés. *The attentive pupils are rewarded.*
 F. Les écolières **attentives** sont récompensées. *The attentive pupils are rewarded.*
- 51 (e) M. L'hôpital est un édifice **public**. *The hospital is a public building.*
 F. C'est une charge **publique**. *It is a public office.*
 M. Les hôpitaux sont des édifices **publics**. *Hospitals are public buildings.*
 F. Ce sont des charges **publiques**. *They are public offices.*
- 52 (f) M. L'**ancien** château est haut. *The old castle is high.*
 F. L'**ancienne** église est haute. *The old church is high.*
 M. Les **anciens** châteaux sont hauts. *The old castles are high.*
 F. Les **anciennes** églises sont hautes. *The old churches are high.*
- 53 (g) M. Mon **cher** ami est **discret**. *My dear friend is discreet.*
 F. Ma **chère** amie est **discrète**. *My dear friend (f.) is discreet.*
 M. Mes **chers** amis sont **discrets**. *My dear friends are discreet.*
 F. Mes **chères** amies sont **discrètes**. *My dear friends (f.) are discreet.*

The sign of the *feminine* for an Adjective of Quantity is—

(a) *General Rule* :—an **e** mute added to its masculine form. ;

Special Rules :—

(b) Adjectives ending in **-e** mute in the masculine, *remain unchanged* in the feminine.

(c) Adjectives ending in **-x** in the masculine, change this **x** into **s** and add **e** mute.

(d) Adjectives ending in **-f** in the masculine, change this **f** into **v** and add **e** mute.

(e) Adjectives ending in **-c** in the masculine, change this **c** into **qu** and add **e** mute.

(f) Adjectives ending in **-on, -ien, -el, -eil, -as**, double their final consonant and add **e** mute.

(g) Adjectives ending in **-er** or **-et**, change this **e** into **è** and add **e** mute.

Obs.—The same Rules hold good for all Nouns which have not a distinct term for masculine and feminine, (as, *masc.* homme, *fem.* femme ; see Appendix.) :—

Masc.	Fem.	Masc.	Fem.
(a) Le cousin, <i>the cousin</i> ;	la cousine.	(d) Le chien, <i>the dog</i> ;	la chienne
(b) L'esclave, <i>the slave</i> ;	l'esclave.	(e) Le captif, <i>the captive</i> ;	la captive.
(c) L'époux, <i>the spouse</i> ;	l'épouse.	(f) Le berger, <i>the shepherd</i> ;	la bergère.

54 (h) Five Adjectives have two different forms for the masculine :

M. { Le beau fruit que voilà !	<i>What fine fruit that is !</i>
{ Le bel arbre que voici !	<i>What a beautiful tree this is !</i>
F. La belle voix que vous avez !	<i>What a fine voice you have !</i>

- M. { Le **nouveau** livre a paru. *The new book has appeared.*
 { Le **nouvel** an est arrivé. *The new year has come.*
 F. La **nouvelle** année est arrivée. }
- M. { Le **vieux** mendiant a un chien. *The old beggar has a dog.*
 { Le **vieil** ami est fidèle. *The old friend is faithful.*
 F. La **vieille** amie est sûre. *The old friend (f.) is reliable.*
- M. { Le **fou** rire m'a pris. *An irresistible fit of laughter seized me.*
 { Un **fol** espoir vous trompe. *A foolish hope deludes you.*
 F. Votre **folle** dépense vous ruine. *Your extravagant expenses ruin you.*
- M. { Ce lit n'est guère **mou**. *This bed is hardly soft.*
 { Il parle avec un **mol** abandon. *He speaks with an indolent listlessness.*
 F. Il s'adonne à une **molle** oisiveté. *He indulges in a sluggish idleness.*

55 Adjectives forming their feminine irregularly:—

Masculine.

- Le sucre est **blanc**. *Sugar is white.*
 Ton aveu est **franc**. *Thy confession is frank.*
 Le bois est **sec**. *The wood is dry.*
 J'aime le beurre **frais**. *I like fresh butter.*
 Son mot **favori**. *His favourite word.*
 Naturel **bénin**. *Benign disposition.*
 Esprit **malin**. *Evil spirit.*
 Un **gentil** enfant. *A nice child.*
 Mur **épais** trois de pieds. *A wall three feet thick.*
 Il est **gros** et **gras**. *He is stout and fat.*
 L'ordre est **exprès**. *The order is explicit.*
 Le **tiers** état. *The third estate (Commons).*
 Il a été **absous**. *He has been acquitted.*
 Elle a le teint **net**. *She has a clear complexion.*
 Un pays **sujet** aux inondations. *A country subject to inundations.*
 Le miel est **doux**. *Honey is sweet.*
 Un **faux** témoin. *A false witness.*

Feminine.

- La neige est **blanche**. *Snow is white.*
 Sa conduite est **franche**. *His conduct is straightforward.*
 La figue est **sèche**. *The fig is dry.*
 Voici de l'eau **fraîche**. *Here is fresh water.*
 Sa promenade **favorite**. *His favourite walk.*
 Humeur **bénigne**. *Sweet temper.*
 Fièvre **maligne**. *Malignant fever.*
 Une **gentille** petite fille. *A nice little girl.*
 Planche **épaisse** de deux pouces. *A board two inches thick.*
 Elle est **grosse** et **grasse**. *She is stout and fat.*
 Défense **expresse**! *The prohibition is explicit.*
 La **tierce** partie. *The third part.*
 Elle a été **absoute**. *She has been acquitted.*
 Son écriture est **nette**. *His writing is neat.*
 Une couleur **sujette** à changer. *A colour liable to fade.*
 La poire est **douce**. *The pear is sweet.*
 Une **fausse** nouvelle. *False news.*

56 Adjectives and Nouns ending in -eur :—

- | | |
|---|---|
| 1. Le rang inférieur . <i>The inferior rank.</i> | La région inférieure . <i>The inferior region.</i> |
| 2. Un homme trompeur . <i>A deceitful man.</i> | Une femme trompeuse . <i>A deceitful woman.</i> |
| 3. Un génie créateur . <i>A creative genius.</i> | Puissance créatrice . <i>A creative power.</i> |
| 4. Un Dieu vengeur . <i>An avenging God.</i> | Divinité vengeresse . <i>Avenging God-head.</i> |

There are *four* different classes of Adjectives and Nouns in **-eur** :—

(1) those implying an idea of *comparison* take **e** mute in the feminine ; as,

Supérieur-**e** ; antérieur-**e** ; postérieur-**e** ; extérieur-**e** ; intérieur-**e** ; meilleur-**e**, *better* ; mineur-**e**.

(2) those derived from a *Present Participle* by turning **-ant** into **-eur**, change **-r** into **se** ; as,

<i>Pres. Part.</i>	<i>Adjective or Noun.</i>
flatt-ant ; flatt-eur, flatt-euse ;	<i>flattering.</i>
parl-ant ; parl-eur, parl-euse ;	<i>talker, talkative, etc.</i>
pêch-ant ; pêch-eur, pêch-euse ;	<i>fisherman.</i>

(3) those ending in **-teur** not derived from a *Present Participle* (mostly from Latin names in **-tor**, f. **-trix**) change **-teur** into **-trice** : as,

Direc-**teur**, *director*, direc-**trice** ; lec-**teur**, *reader*, lec-**trice**.

(4) in a few *poetical* and *legal* terms **-eur** is changed into **-eresse** ; as,

Chasseur, <i>hunter</i> , chasseresse.	Baillieur, <i>lessor</i> , bailleresse.
Enchanteur, <i>enchanter</i> , enchanteresse.	Défendeur, <i>defendant</i> , défenderesse.
Pêcheur, <i>sinner</i> , pécheresse.	Demandeur, <i>plaintiff</i> , demanderesse.
Vengeur, <i>avenger</i> , vengeresse.	Vendeur, <i>vendor</i> , venderesse.

57 VIII. THE NOUN QUALIFIED BY AN ADJECTIVE IN THE COMPARATIVE AND SUPERLATIVE DEGREE :—

Positive.

(a) L'air est léger.

Air is light.

Comparative.

L'air est plus léger que l'eau.

Air is lighter than water.

Superlative.

<i>m.s.</i> Le gaz est le plus léger des corps.	<i>Gas is the lightest body.</i>
<i>f.s.</i> C'est la plus légère des substances.	<i>It is the lightest substance.</i>
<i>m.pl.</i> Les gaz sont les plus légers des corps.	<i>Gases are the lightest bodies.</i>
<i>f.pl.</i> Cesont les substances les plus légères.	} <i>They are the lightest substance.</i>
<i>f.pl.</i> Ce sont les plus légères substances.	

58 (b) Ce vin est aussi bon que celui-là. *This wine is as good as that.*
 Ceci est tout aussi utile que cela. *This is quite as useful as that.*
 Cela n'a pas moins de trente pieds. *That is not less than thirty feet.*

59 (c) Elle est moins jolie que sa sœur. } *She is less pretty than (not so*
 Elle n'est pas si jolie que sa sœur. } *pretty as) her sister.*

Comparisons may be divided into those of (a) *superiority*, (b) *equality*, and (c) *inferiority*.

60 The following Adjectives form their *degrees of comparison irregularly* ; the irregularities spring from the corresponding Latin forms :—

<i>Positive.</i>	<i>Comparative.</i>	<i>Superlative.</i>
Ce vin est bon ; <i>This wine is good ;</i>	celui-ci est meilleur ; <i>this is better ;</i>	c'est le meilleur . <i>it is the best.</i>
Cette eau est bonne ; <i>This water is good ;</i>	celle-ci est meilleure ; <i>this is better ;</i>	c'est la meilleure . <i>it is the best.</i>
Ce vin est mauvais ; <i>This wine is bad ;</i>	celui-ci est { pire ; plus mauvais ;	c'est { le pire . le plus mauvais <i>it is the worst.</i>
Ce service est petit ; <i>This service is slight ;</i>	il est moindre que l'autre ; <i>it is less than the other ;</i>	c'est le moindre de tous. <i>it is the slightest of all.</i>
La distance est petite ; <i>The distance is short ;</i>	elle est moindre que l'autre ; <i>it is shorter than the other ;</i>	c'est la moindre . <i>it is the smallest.</i>
Ce cheval est petit ; <i>This horse is small ;</i>	il est plus petit ; <i>it is smaller ;</i>	c'est le plus petit . <i>it is the smallest.</i>

61 Observations :—

1. Cela est **plus** facile que vous **ne** pensez.
That is easier than you fancy ; i.e. You do not fancy it so easy as it really is.

N.B. Notice the use of **ne** with the Verb after a *Comparative*.

2. Je n'y pense **plus**.
Je n'en ai **plus**.
Il ne pleut **plus**.
*I no longer think about it.
I have none (not any) left.
It does not rain now.*

See also Adverbs of Quantity, § 47.

3. La vertu est **plus** estimable que la science.
La science est estimable ; la vertu l'est **davantage**.
Je n'en sais pas **davantage**.
*Virtue is more estimable than knowledge.
Knowledge is estimable, but virtue is more so.
I do not know more about it.*

Whilst **plus** must be used when there is a second term of comparison, **davantage** can only be used when there is *no* second term of comparison.

4. **Plus** on est élevé en dignité, **plus** on doit être **modeste**.
Plus vous lui en direz, **moins** il en fera.
Moins on a de soucis, **plus** on est **heureux**.
*The more exalted one is in rank, the more modest one ought to be.
The more you talk to him, the less he will do it.
The fewer cares one has, the happier one is.*
5. C'est le **plus** beau spectacle que j'aie jamais vu.
It is the finest sight I ever saw.

N.B. Notice the use of the *Subjunctive* in the Dependent Clause after a *Superlative* in the principal sentence.

6. C'est une chose que le moindre ouvrier peut faire.
Sentez-vous là quelque douleur?—
Non, pas la moindre. *It is a thing that the commonest workman can do.*
Do you feel any pain?—No, not the slightest.
7. C'est le plus riche }
banquier }
or, C'est le banquier le } de la ville. *He is the richest banker in the town.*
plus riche }

N.B. Notice the use of *de* after the Superlative.

62

IX. THE NOUN QUALIFIED BY AN Adjective of Quantity (Numeral).

(a) Cardinal Numbers.

N.B.—This will serve at the same time as a repetition of the Plural of Nouns.

- | | |
|---|---|
| 1 un jour, <i>one day.</i> | 11 onze années. |
| une journée, <i>one day.</i> | (11 le onze avril, <i>April 11th</i> , see § 64.) |
| 2 deux ans, <i>two years.</i> | 12 douze apôtres. |
| 3 trois mois, <i>three months.</i> | 13 treize fois. |
| 4 quatre feux, <i>four fires.</i> | 14 quatorze lieues. |
| 5 cinq clous, <i>five nails.</i> | 15 quinze jours. |
| 6 six chevaux, <i>six horses.</i> | 16 seize onces. |
| 7 sept travaux, <i>seven labours.</i> | 17 dix-sept jeux. |
| 8 huit cerfs-volants, <i>eight kites.</i> | 18 dix-huit canaux. |
| 9 neuf timbres-poste, <i>nine postage-stamps.</i> | 19 dix-neuf chefs-lieux. |
| 10 dix avant-coureurs, <i>ten fore-runners.</i> | 20 vingt choux-fleurs. |
-
- | | |
|---------------------------------------|---|
| 21 vingt et un. | 90 quatre-vingt-dix. |
| 22 vingt-deux, etc. | 91 quatre-vingt-onze, etc. |
| 30 trente. | 100 cent. |
| 40 quarante. | 101 cent un. |
| 50 cinquante. | 150 cent cinquante. |
| 60 soixante. | 200 deux cents. |
| 69 soixante-neuf. | 220 deux cent vingt (1). |
| 70 soixante-dix (soixante et dix). | 1,000 mille (<i>mil in dates A.D.</i>). |
| 71 soixante et onze. | 10,000 dix mille. |
| 72 soixante-douze, etc. | 100,000 cent mille (2). |
| 80 quatre-vingts. | 1,000,000 un million. |
| 81 quatre-vingt-un, (1) etc. | 10,000,000 dix millions. |
| 1881 mille huit cent quatre-vingt-un. | |

Observations :—

(1) *Quatre-vingts* and *cents* (plural of *cent*) take no *s* if followed by another numeral, or if used as an ordinal number : *page deux cent quatre-vingt.*

(2) *Mille*, *thousand*, never takes *s*, but *mille*, *mile*, does : *dix milles*, *ten miles.*

63 (b) *Ordinal Numbers.*

<i>First</i>	{ Le premier homme. <i>The first man.</i> La première année. <i>The 1st year</i>	
	{ Les premiers hommes. <i>The first men.</i> Les premières années. <i>., years.</i>	
<i>2nd</i>	{ Le deuxième étage. <i>The 2nd storey.</i> La deuxième série. <i>The 2nd series.</i>	
	{ Le second volume. <i>The 2nd volume.</i> La seconde fois. <i>The 2nd time.</i>	
<i>3rd</i>	Le troisième mois. <i>The 3rd month.</i> La troisième partie. <i>The 3rd part.</i>	
<i>4th</i>	le (la) quatrième.	<i>21st</i> le (la) vingt-et-unième.
<i>5th</i>	le (la) cinquième.	<i>22nd</i> le (la) vingt-deuxième, etc.
<i>6th</i>	le (la) sixième.	<i>30th</i> le (la) trentième.
<i>7th</i>	le (la) septième.	<i>100th</i> le (la) centième.
<i>8th</i>	le (la) huitième.	<i>1000th</i> le (la) millième.
<i>9th</i>	le (la) neuvième.	<i>last</i> le dernier, la dernière.
<i>10th</i>	le (la) dixième.	<i>the last but one</i> , l'avant-dernier.
<i>20th</i>	le (la) vingtième.	

64 (c) *French Cardinal Numbers used instead of Ordinal :—*(1) In speaking of the *days of the month* (except the *first*): as,Le **premier** janvier. *The 1st of January.*Le **deux** février. *The 2nd of February.*Le **trois** mars. *The 3rd of March.*Le **quatre** avril. *The 4th of April.*Le **cinq** mai. *The 5th of May.*Le **six** juin. *The 6th of June.*Le **huit** juillet. *The 8th of July.*Le **vingt et un** août. *The 21st of August.*Le **vingt-deux** septembre. *The 22nd of September.*Le **vingt-trois** octobre. *The 23rd of October.*Le **trente** novembre. *The 30th of November.*Le **trente et un** décembre. *The 31st of December.**Obs.*—In speaking of the pages, chapters, etc., of a book, we may say : chapitre **dix**, chapitre **dixième**, or, le **dixième** chapitre.(2) With the names of *sovereigns*, except the *first*; (for the *second*, either cardinal or ordinal is used): as,François **premier**, *Francis the First*; Henri **deux** (**second**), *Henry the Second*;Louis **quatorze**, *Louis the Fourteenth*.Exceptionally:—Charles-**quint**, *Charles the Fifth*, Emperor of Germany, and Sixte-**quint**, *Pope Sixtus the Fifth*.65 (d) *Different ways of expressing dimensions :—*Ce mur **est haut de dix** pieds.Ce mur **a dix** pieds **de haut**.Ce mur **a dix** pieds **de hauteur**.Ce mur **a une hauteur de dix** pieds.Un mur **haut de cinq** mètres.Un mur **de cinq** mètres **de haut**.Cette cour **a vingt** mètres **de longueur** (**de profondeur**) sur dix **de largeur**.Ce royaume **a trois** cents lieues **de long** et deux cents **de large**.Il **est plus grand** que moi **d'un** pouce.Une garnison **forte de** douze mille hommes.*Obs.*—Dans cette sanglante bataille il y eut **cinq** mille hommes **de** tués et **dix** mille **de** blessés.*This wall is ten feet high.**A wall five yards high.**This court-yard is twenty metres long (deep) by ten wide.**This kingdom is three hundred leagues long and two hundred broad.**He is an inch taller than I.**A garrison twelve thousand men strong.**In this murderous battle there were five thousand men killed and ten thousand wounded.*

The Imperfect Past Tense, formed from the *Present*

Participle (§ 1)

by changing its ending **-ant** into—

	<i>Sing.</i>	<i>Plur.</i>
(1)	-ais,	-ions.
(2)	-ais,	-iez.
(3)	-ait,	-aient.

- 66 FIRST CONJUGATION.
- Je **parl-ais** pendant que tu jouais. *I was speaking while you were playing.*
 Tu **parl-ais** pendant que je lisais. *Thou wast speaking whilst I was reading.*
 Il **parl-ait** tandis qu'elle écoutait. *He was speaking whilst she was listening.*
 Nous **parl-ions** en même temps que vous. *We were speaking at the same time as you.*
 Vous **parl-iez** tous ensemble. *You were speaking altogether.*
 Ils **parl-aient** au même moment que moi. *They were speaking at the same time as I.*

(a) A Verb is used in the *Imperfect Past Tense* to denote that an action was going on together with another action.

- 67 SECOND CONJUGATION.
- Je **fin-iss-ais** quand il entra. *I was just finishing when he entered.*
 Tu **fin-iss-ais** lorsque je commençai. *Thou wast finishing when I began.*
 Il **fin-iss-ait** quand il sonna midi. *He was finishing when it struck twelve.*
 Nous **fin-iss-ions** avant qu'il arrivât. *We were finishing before he arrived.*
 Vous **fin-iss-iez** au moment où je rentrais. *You were finishing just when I returned.*
 Ils **fin-iss-aient** quand il se mit à travailler. *They were finishing when he set to work.*

(b) A Verb is used in the *Imperfect* to denote that an action was already in progress, when another action began.

- 68 FOURTH CONJUGATION.
- Je te **répond-ais** toujours en français. *I always used to reply to you in French.*
 Tu lui **répond-ais** souvent en anglais. *You often used to answer him in English.*
 Il me **répond-ait** régulièrement. *He used to reply to me regularly.*
 Nous leur **répond-ions** tous les jours. *We used to reply to them every day.*
 Vous nous **répond-iez** de temps en temps. *You used to reply to us from time to time.*
 Ils vous **répond-aient** tous les huit jours. *They used to reply to you every week.*

(c) A Verb is used in the *Imperfect* to denote that an action was habitually or repeatedly done.

(formed *irregularly*—not from the Present Participle-stem.)

Il croyait que j' **avais** une maison. *He believed that I had a house.*
 Il demanda ce que tu **avais**. *He asked what thou hadst.*
 Elle répondit qu'il **avait** des affaires. *She replied that he had business.*
 Il m'assurait que n. **avions** le temps. *He assured me that we had time.*
 Je pensais que vous **aviez** une bonne occasion. *I thought that you had
 a good opportunity.*
 Nous pensions qu'ils **avaient** de l'argent. *We thought that they had money.*

Quand j' **avais** sommeil je dormais. *When I was sleepy I used to sleep.*
 Quand tu **avais** faim tu mangeais. *When you were hungry you used to eat.*
 Quand il **avait** soif il buvait. *When he was thirsty he used to drink.*
 Si nous **avions** raison nous ne céderions pas. *If we were right we should not yield.*
 Si vous **aviez** froid je vous plaindrais. *If you were cold I should pity you.*
 S'ils **avaient** chaud ils se baigneraient. *If they were warm they would bathe.*

70

Il demanda qui j'	étais. <i>He asked who I was.</i>
Je répondis que tu	étais à la maison. <i>I replied that you were at home.</i>
Elle pensait qu'il	était en voyage. <i>She thought that he was on a journey.</i>
Il m'assura que nous	étions ses amis. <i>He assured me that we were his friends.</i>
Nous prétendions que v.	étiez Français. <i>We pretended that you were Frenchmen.</i>
Ils déclarèrent qu'ils	étaient étrangers. <i>They declared that they were strangers.</i>

(d) The *Imperfect* is generally used in dependent clauses when the Verb in the principal clause contains a Verb of *thinking, feeling, saying, asking*, etc.

The Preterite (Past Definite).

71

FIRST CONJUGATION.

Je	parl-ai de vous l'autre jour.	<i>I spoke of you the other day.</i>
Tu	parl-as à propos.	<i>Thou spoked to the purpose.</i>
Il	parl-a à tort et à travers.	<i>He spoke at random.</i>
Nous	parl-âmes de la guerre.	<i>We spoke of the war.</i>
Vous	parl-âtes de la paix.	<i>You spoke of peace.</i>
Ils	parl-èrent de leurs affaires.	<i>They spoke of their affairs.</i>

A Verb is used in the *Preterite* to denote actions absolutely past without reference to their duration, repetition, or to any accessory circumstances.

72

SECOND CONJUGATION.

Je	fin-is mon travail il y a huit jours.	<i>I finished my work a week ago.</i>
Tu	fin-is ta traduction bien vite.	<i>You finished the translation quickly.</i>
Il	fin-it sa besogne d'un seul trait.	<i>He finished his job at one stretch.</i>
Nous	fin-îmes nos travaux à la hâte.	<i>We finished our labours in haste.</i>
Vous	fin-îtes avant nous.	<i>You finished before us.</i>
Ils	fin-irent par céder enfin.	<i>They finished by yielding at last (at last they yielded).</i>

73

FOURTH CONJUGATION.

Je	répond-is à toutes ses questions.	<i>I replied to all his questions.</i>
Tu	répond-is bien vaguement.	<i>You answered very vaguely.</i>
Il	répond-it qu'il était fatigué.	<i>He replied that he was tired.</i>
Nous	répond-îmes que nous étions prêts.	<i>We replied that we were ready.</i>
Vous	répond-îtes correctement.	<i>You answered correctly.</i>
Ils	répond-irent par écrit.	<i>They answered in writing.</i>

74

THE AUXILIARY VERBS.

Avoir, to have.

J'	eu-s beaucoup de difficultés.	<i>I had many difficulties.</i>
Tu	eu-s lieu de rester.	<i>You had occasion to stay.</i>
Il	eu-t mal aux dents.	<i>He had the toothache.</i>
Nous	eû-mes envie de partir.	<i>We had a mind to start,</i>
Vous	eû-tes un voyage à faire.	<i>You had a journey to take.</i>
Ils	eu-rent pitié du pauvre vieillard.	<i>They had pity on the poor old man.</i>

75

Être, to be.

Je	fu-s charmé de le trouver.	<i>I was delighted to find him.</i>
Tu	fu-s sans doute bien surpris.	<i>You were no doubt much surprised.</i>
Il	fu-t content du succès.	<i>He was satisfied with the success.</i>
Nous	fû-mes indécis un moment.	<i>We were undecided for a moment.</i>
Vous	fû-tes bien négligents.	<i>You were very careless.</i>
Ils	fu-rent à même de payer.	<i>They were able to pay.</i>

76 In like manner (a) *interrogatively* :—

Parlai-je? <i>or, est-ce que je parlai?</i>	<i>Did I speak?</i>
L'orateur parla-t-il bien? etc.	<i>Did the orator speak well? etc.</i>

(b) *negatively* :—

Je ne répondis pas.	<i>I did not reply.</i>
Tu ne fus pas prudent, etc.	<i>You were not prudent, etc.</i>

(c) *interrogative-negatively* :—

Ne fus-je pas dans mon droit?	} <i>Was I not in my right?</i>
Est-ce que je ne fus pas dans mon droit?	
La guerre ne fut-elle pas bien longue?	<i>Was not the war very long?</i>

The Future Present: formed from the *Infinitive* (§ 1)

	<i>Sing.</i>	<i>Plur.</i>
by adding the endings	(1) -ai,	-ons.
	(2) -as,	-ez.
	(3) -a,	-ont.

These endings are nothing else but the *Present* tense of *avoir*; 1st and 2nd pl. contracted (av)ons, (av)ez.

77

FIRST CONJUGATION.

- Je **parler-ai** à mon fournisseur. *I shall speak to my purveyor.*
 Tu **parler-as** bientôt couramment. *You will soon speak fluently.*
 Il **parler-a** ce soir au concierge. *He will speak this evening to the door-keeper.*
 Nous **parler-ons** de cela un autre jour. *We will talk about that another day.*
 Vous **parler-ez** tant que vous voudrez (§ 81, Obs.). *You will talk as long as you like.*
 Ils **parler-ont** jusqu'à la fin. *They will speak until the end.*

78

SECOND CONJUGATION

- Je **finir-ai** aussitôt que possible. *I shall finish as soon as possible.*
 Tu **finir-as** bientôt, j'espère. *Thou wilt finish soon, I hope.*
 Il **finir-a** longtemps avant moi. *He will finish long before me.*
 Nous **finir-ons** la besogne en moins de rien. *We shall finish the job in less than no time.*
 Vous **finir-ez** cela sans difficulté. *You will finish that without difficulty.*
 Ils **finir-ont** leur travail à loisir. *They will finish their work at leisure.*

79 **FOURTH CONJUGATION** (the final *e* of the Infinitive is dropped).

- Je **descendr-ai** à l'instant. *I shall come down instantly.*
 Tu **descendr-as** quand il te plaira (§ 250). *You will come down when you like.*
 Il **descendr-a** avec son frère. *He will come down with his brother.*
 Nous **descendr-ons** pour déjeuner. *We shall come down for breakfast.*
 Vous **descendr-ez** avec nous. *You will come down with us.*
 Ils **descendr-ont** dans cinq minutes. *They will come down in five minutes.*

AUXILIARY VERBS (formed *irregularly*),

the Future tense-stem { for **avoir** being **aur-**; to which add—
 { for **être** being **ser-**;
 { (1) **-ai**, **-ons.**
 { (2) **-as**, **-ez.**
 { (3) **-a**, **-ont.**

80

Avoir, to have.

J'	aur-ai bientôt des nouvelles.	<i>I shall soon have news.</i>
Tu	aur-as une lettre demain.	<i>Thou wilt have a letter to-morrow.</i>
Il	aur-a beaucoup d'indulgence.	<i>He will have great forbearance.</i>
Nous	aur-ons des difficultés avec lui.	<i>We shall have difficulties with him.</i>
Vous	aur-ez une visite ce soir.	<i>You will have a call this evening.</i>
Ils	aur-ont peu de succès.	<i>They will have but little success.</i>

81

Être, to be.

Je	ser-ai chez moi à huit heures.	<i>I shall be at home at eight o'clock.</i>
Tu	ser-as chez toi, n'est-ce pas ?	<i>Thou wilt be at home, wilt thou not ?</i>
Il	ser-a chez lui toute la journée.	<i>He will be at home the whole day.</i>
Elle	ser-a chez elle tous les jeudis.	<i>She will be at home every Thursday.</i>
On	ser-a chez soi pour ses amis.	<i>One will be at home for one's friends.</i>
Nous	ser-ons chez nous à midi.	<i>We shall be at home at noon.</i>
Vous	ser-ez chez vous, n'est-ce pas ?	<i>You will be at home, will you not ?</i>
Ils	ser-ont chez eux } de midi à	<i>They will be at home from twelve till one.</i>
Elles	ser-ont chez elles } une heure.	

Obs. 1. The Future is used in French instead of the English Present after Adverbial Conjunctions of time:—

Je partirai quand il **arrivera**. *I shall leave when he comes.*
 Aussitôt qu'elle **descendra** je descendrai aussi. *As soon as she comes down I shall also come down.*

*Obs. 2. Vous **serez** obsédé de fatigue.*

You must be worn out.

The Conditional Mood, Present Tense formed from the Infinitive

by adding the endings

(1) -ais,	-ions.
(2) -ais,	-iez.
(3) -ait,	-aient.

N.B. These endings are the contracted Imperfect form of **avoir**.

82

FIRST CONJUGATION.

- Je **parler-ais** anglais si je le savais. *I should speak English if I knew it.*
 Tu **parler-ais** bien si tu te donnais la peine. *Thou wouldst speak well if thou wouldst take the trouble.*
 Il **parler-ait** plus haut s'il n'était pas enrhumé. *He would speak louder if he had not a cold.*
 Nous **parler-ions** politique si c'était permis. *We should talk politics if it were allowed.*
 Vous **parler-iez** mieux si vous n'étiez pas si timide. *You would speak better if you were not so timid.*
 Ils **parler-aient** volontiers s'ils osaient. *They would fain speak if they dared.*

(a) The Conditional Mood is used to denote an action the accomplishment of which depends on a condition either expressed in a Dependent Clause, or understood. N.B.—The Verb denoting the condition, must not be used in the Conditional Mood.

83

SECOND CONJUGATION.

- Je lui répondis que je **finir-ais** immédiatement. *I replied to him that I should finish at once.*
 Il m'assura que tu **finir-ais** sous peu. *He assured me that thou wouldst have done within a short time.*
 Il répéta qu'il **finir-ait** avant nous. *He repeated that he would finish before us.*
 Nous étions sûrs que vous **finir-ions** bientôt. *We were sure that we should finish soon.*
 Elle espérait que vous **finir-iez** une fois pour toutes. *She hoped you would have done once for all.*
 Je comptais qu'ils **finir-aient** tôt ou tard. *I reckoned that they would finish sooner or later.*

(b) The Conditional is also used as a kind of Future Imperfect; i.e. to denote a future contingency viewed from the Past (whilst the Future Pres. denotes a future contingency viewed from the Present); compare:—

- Je **sais** qu'il **finira** ce soir. *I know he will finish this evening.*
 Je **savais** qu'il **finirait** ce soir. *I knew he would finish this evening.*

84

FOURTH CONJUGATION.

- Il ne savait pas si je **descendr-ais**. *He did not know whether I should come down.*
 Je n'étais pas sûr si tu **descendr-ais**. *I was not sure whether thou wouldst come down.*
 Elle demanda s'il **descendr-ait** ou non. *She asked whether he would come down or not.*
 Il doutait si nous **descendr-ions**. *He doubted whether we should come down.*
 Nous doutions si vous **descendr-iez**. *We doubted whether you would come down.*
 Elle était incertaine s'ils **descendr-aient**. *She was uncertain whether they would come down.*

N.B. Only in the sense of *whether* can **si** be used with the Future or Conditional.

AUXILIARY VERBS (formed *irregularly* with the same stem as the *Future*, see p. 35).

<i>i.e.</i> the stem	{ for avoir being aur- ; for être being ser- ;	to which add—
	{ (1) -ais, -ions. (2) -ais, iez. (3) -ait, -aient.	

85

Avoir, to have.

- J' **aur-ais** beaucoup de plaisir à te voir. *I should have much pleasure in seeing you.*¹
- Tu **aur-ais** bien besoin de patience. *Thou wouldst have great need of patience.*
- Il **aur-ait** lieu de vous remercier. *He would have occasion to thank you.*
- Nous **aur-ions** des amis si nous étions riches. *We should have friends if we were rich.*
- Vous **aur-iez** patience si vous étiez à ma place. *You would have patience if you were in my place.*
- Ils **aur-aient** de la peine à se maintenir. *They would have difficulty in supporting themselves.*

¹ The condition is understood, *i.e.* si vous veniez, *if you were to come*, and so in the 2nd and 3rd pers. singular and in the 3rd pers. plural.

86

Être, to be.

- Je **ser-ais** heureux de vous voir. *I should be happy to see you.*
- Tu **ser-ais** fâché de manquer l'occasion. *Thou wouldst be sorry to miss the opportunity.*
- Il **ser-ait** disposé à vous secourir. *He would be disposed to help you.*
- Nous **ser-ions** charmés de le rencontrer. *We should be delighted to meet him.*
- Vous **ser-iez** sans doute curieux de voir ça. *You would no doubt be anxious to see that.*
- Ils **ser-aient** enchantés de rester ici. *They would be delighted to stay here.*

**The Present Subjunctive : formed from the
Present Participle (§ 1)**

by changing **-ant-** into $\left\{ \begin{array}{l} (1) -e, \\ (2) -es, \\ (3) -e; \end{array} \right.$ $\left\{ \begin{array}{l} -ions. \\ -iez. \\ -ent. \end{array} \right.$

FIRST CONJUGATION.

PRINCIPAL SENTENCE.

DEPENDENT CLAUSE.

Mon père désire	que je	par-le français.	<i>My father desires that I speak French.</i>
Le maître souhaite	que tu	parl-es correctement.	<i>The master wishes thee to speak correctly.</i>
Les élèves exigent	qu' il	parl-e distinctement.	<i>The pupils insist that he should speak distinctly.</i>
Ma mère trouve bon	que nous	parl-ions anglais.	<i>My mother approves of our speaking English.</i>
On approuve	que vous	parl-iez politique.	<i>They approve of your talking politics.</i>
Leur maître consent	qu' ils	parl-ent avec lui.	<i>Their master consents that they speak to him.</i>

1st Rule of the Subjunctive.—When the Verb in the Principal Sentence expresses a wish, command, necessity, consent, etc., the Verb in the Dependent Clause must be in the Subjunctive Mood.

SECOND CONJUGATION.

Il faut absolument	que je	finiss-e mon travail.	<i>It is absolutely necessary that I finish my work.</i>
Il importe	que tu	finiss-es ta tâche.	<i>It is important that you should finish your task.</i>
Il est impossible	qu' il	finiss-e son ouvrage.	<i>It is impossible for him to finish his work.</i>
Il est temps	que nous	finiss-ions notre besogne.	<i>It is time we should finish our job.</i>
Il vaut mieux	que vous	finiss-iez votre dessin.	<i>It is better that you should finish your drawing.</i>
Il convient	qu' ils	finiss-ent leurs devoirs.	<i>It is convenient that they finish their lessons.</i>

2nd Rule of the Subjunctive.—When the Verb in the Principal Sentence is impersonal, and does not express a fact, the Verb in the Dependent Clause must be in the Subjunctive Mood.

FOURTH CONJUGATION.

Ma sœur est bien aise	que je	répond-e à sa lettre.	<i>My sister is glad that I reply to her letter.</i>
Le maître regrette	que tu	répond-es si mal.	<i>My master is sorry you reply so badly.</i>
Nous sommes surpris	qu' il	répond-e si bien.	<i>We are surprised that he answers so well.</i>
Elle trouve mauvais	que nous	répond-ions si tard.	<i>She takes it ill that we reply so late.</i>
Je suis enchanté	que vous	répond-iez de tout.	<i>I am delighted that you answer for everything.</i>
L'examineur est fâché	qu' ils	répond-ent si évasivement.	<i>The examiner is annoyed that they reply so evasively.</i>

3rd Rule of the Subjunctive.—When the Verb in the Principal Sentence expresses an affection of the mind (emotion), as joy, sorrow, fear, shame, surprise, etc., the Verb in the Dependent Clause must be in the Subjunctive.

90

THE AUXILIARY VERB **Avoir**.

N.B.—In the singular and 3rd pers. plural the 'y' of the Pres. Part. is changed into 'i.'

PRINCIPAL SENTENCE.

DEPENDENT CLAUSE.

Le médecin doute	que j'	ai-e assez de force.	<i>The physician doubts if I have strength enough.</i>
Elle ne croit pas	que tu	ai-es la fièvre.	<i>She does not believe you have the fever.</i>
Crois-tu donc	qu'il	ai-t de l'argent?	<i>Do you believe he has money?</i>
Je nie	que nous	ay-ons des dettes.	<i>I deny that we have debts.</i>
Suppose-t-il	que vous	ay-ez des ressources?	<i>Does he suppose that you have resources?</i>
Est-il vrai	qu'ils	ai-ent des ennemis?	<i>Is it true that they have enemies?</i>

4th Rule of the Subjunctive.—When the Verb in the Principal Clause expresses a *doubt, denial, ignorance* (which may be expressed by a Verb of *thinking, perceiving, saying, etc.*, used *interrogatively, negatively, or conditionally*), the Verb in the Dependent Clause must be in the Subjunctive.

91

THE AUXILIARY VERB **Être**

(formed *irregularly*, i.e., not from the Pres. Part. *étant*).

Je suis content	quoique je	so-is pauvre.	<i>I am content although I am (lit. I be) poor.</i>
Tu es malheureux	bien que tu	so-is riche.	<i>Thou art unhappy although thou art rich.</i>
On est heureux	pourvu qu'on	so-it content.	<i>One is happy provided one is content.</i>
Il sera ici	avant que nous	soy-ons de retour.	<i>He will be here before we are back.</i>
Nous travaillons	de sorte que v.	soy-ez satisfaits.	<i>We work so that you may be satisfied.</i>
Je leur dis cela	afin qu'ils	soi-ent persuadés.	<i>I tell them that in order that they may be persuaded.</i>

5th Rule of the Subjunctive.—When an Adverbial Clause is linked to the Principal Clause by a *Subordinate Conjunction* expressing a *concession or condition, a purpose or time* (expected or contingent), the Verb in the Dependent Clause must be in the Subjunctive. (See § 96).

The **Preterite (Imperfect) Subjunctive**: formed from the *Preterite Indicative* (§§ 71-75) by changing the -s of the 2nd pers. sing. into

- (1) -sse, -ssions.
 (2) -esses, -ssiez.
 (3) -t; -ssent.

92

FIRST CONJUGATION.

PRINCIPAL SENTENCE.

DEPENDENT CLAUSE.

Il désirait	que je	parl-asse français.	<i>He desired that I should speak French.</i>
Elle souhaitait	que tu	parl-asses haut.	<i>She wished that you should speak loud.</i>
On exigeait	qu'il	parl-ât distinctement.	<i>One insisted that he should speak distinctly.</i>
Elle trouva bon	que nous	parl-ussions anglais.	<i>She approved of our speaking English.</i>
Il approuvait	que vous	parl-assiez ainsi.	<i>He approved of your speaking thus.</i>
Je consentis	qu'ils	parl-assent avec lui.	<i>I consented to their speaking with him.</i>

When the Verb of the Principal Sentence is in the *Preterite, Imperfect* or *Conditional Present* or *Past*, the Verb in the Dependent Clause is generally put in the *Imperfect* or *Preterite*.

93

SECOND CONJUGATION.

Il fallut	que je	fin-isse mon travail.	<i>It was necessary that I should finish my work.</i>
Il importait	que tu	fin-isses ta tâche.	<i>It was important that thou shouldst finish thy task.</i>
Il fut impossible	qu'il	fin-it son ouvrage.	<i>It was impossible for him to finish his work.</i>
Il était temps	que nous	fin-issions enfin.	<i>It was time that we should finish at last.</i>
Il valait mieux	que vous	fin-issiez ce dessin.	<i>It was better for you to finish this drawing.</i>
Il convenait	qu'ils	fin-issent les exercices.	<i>It was convenient that they should finish the exercises.</i>

94

FOURTH CONJUGATION.

Il fut bien aise	que je	répond-isse à sa lettre.	<i>He was glad that I replied to his letter.</i>
Elle regrettait	que tu	répond-isses si mal.	<i>She was sorry that you answered so badly.</i>
J'étais surpris	qu'il	répond-it si bien.	<i>I was surprised that he answered so well.</i>
Il fut enchanté	que nous	répond-issions si tôt.	<i>He was delighted that we replied so early.</i>
On trouva mauvais	que vous	répond-issiez si tard.	<i>One took it amiss that you replied so late.</i>
Il était fâché	qu'ils	répond-issent si peu.	<i>He was sorry that they answered so little.</i>

95

AUXILIARY VERB *Avoir, to have.*

PRINCIPAL SENTENCE.

DEPENDENT CLAUSE.

Il doutait	que j'	eu-sse assez de force.	<i>He doubted if I had strength enough.</i>
Elle ne crut pas	que tu	eu-ses la fièvre.	<i>She did not believe that thou hadst the fever,</i>
Croyais-tu donc	qu'il	eût de l'argent ?	<i>Did you believe then that he had any money ?</i>
Je niai	que nous	eu-ssions des dettes.	<i>I denied that we had debts.</i>
Supposait-il	que vous	eu-ssiez des ressources ?	<i>Did he suppose that you had any resources ?</i>
Était-il vrai	qu'ils	eu-ssent des ennemis ?	<i>Was it true that they had enemies ?</i>

96

AUXILIARY VERB *Être, to be.*

Je fus content	quoique je	fu-sse pauvre.	<i>I was content though I was poor.</i>
Tu étais malheureux bien que tu		fu-ses riche.	<i>Thou wast unhappy though thou wast rich.</i>
On était heureux	pourvu qu'on	fût content.	<i>One was happy provided one was content.</i>
Il était ici	avant que nous	fu-ssions de retour.	<i>He was here before we were back.</i>
Nous travaillions	de façon que v.	fu-ssiez satisfaits.	<i>We were working so that you might be satisfied.</i>
Je leur disais cela	afin qu'ils	fu-ssent persuadés.	<i>I kept telling them that in order that they might be persuaded.</i>

The following are the Conjunctions after which the Verb is used in the *Subjunctive*.

(a) *Expressing a concession, condition, purpose or result*:—quoique, bien que, malgré que, *although*; quelque (si) . . . que, *however*; quoi . . . que, *whatever*; quel . . . que, *whatever*; soit que, *be it that*; pourvu que, *provided*; supposé que, *supposing that*; pour peu que, *if . . . ever so little*; en cas que, *in case that*; afin que, *in order that*; de manière que, de façon (sorte) que, *so that*; sans que, *without*; de peur (crainte) que . . . ne, *lest*.

(b) *Expressing time, expected or contingent*:—avant que, *before*; à moins que . . . ne, *unless*; en attendant que, *until*; jusqu'à ce que, *until* (if the time is not accomplished).

The Imperative : formed from the *Present Indicative* by omitting the Personal Pronoun.

97

FIRST CONJUGATION.

Sing. 2nd pers.	Parle ¹ franchement. <i>Speak (thou) openly.</i>
Plur. 1st pers.	Parlons français. <i>Let us speak French.</i>
Plur. 2nd pers.	Parlez à cœur ouvert. <i>Speak (ye) candidly.</i>

¹ The **s** of the 2nd pers. sing. of the Indicative is dropped in the Imperative.

98

SECOND CONJUGATION.

Sing. 2nd pers.	Finis ton repas. <i>Finish thy meal.</i>
Plur. 1st pers.	Finissons une fois pour toutes. <i>Let us finish once for all</i>
Plur. 2nd pers.	Finissez vos travaux. <i>Complete your labours.</i>

99

FOURTH CONJUGATION.

Sing. 2nd pers.	Réponds sans hésiter. <i>Reply without hesitating.</i>
Plur. 1st pers.	Répondons à sa lettre. <i>Let us reply to his letter.</i>
Plur. 2nd pers.	Répondez donc enfin ! <i>Reply then at last !</i>

100

AUXILIARY VERBS.

Avoir, *to have* (formed from the Present Subjunctive).

Sing. 2nd pers.	Aies donc un peu de patience. <i>Just have a little patience.</i>
Plur. 1st pers.	Ayons des égards pour notre prochain. <i>Let us have regard for our neighbour.</i>
Plur. 2nd pers.	Ayez la bonté de m'aider. <i>Have the kindness to help me.</i>

101

AUXILIARY VERB.

Être, *to be* (formed from the Present Subjunctive).

Sing. 2nd pers.	Sois moins réservé. <i>Be less reserved.</i>
Plur. 1st pers.	Soyons sur nos gardes. <i>Let us be on our guard.</i>
Plur. 2nd pers.	Soyez plus modestes. <i>Be (ye) more modest.</i>

The Infinitive.

- 102** The **Infinitive** form of a Verb is a Verbal Noun, and as such must be used when the Verb stands as: (a) the *Subject*, (b) the *Predicative Complement*, or (c) the *Object of a sentence*, or (d) the *Attribute Adjunct* of a Noun or Adjective.

It may be used:—

(I.) *without* Preposition; (II.) with **de**; (III.) with **à**, and (IV.) with other Prepositions.

I. THE PURE INFINITIVE, *i.e.*, without Preposition:—

- 103** (a) as the **Subject** of a sentence, answering to the English *Infinitive* or *Verbal Noun in -ing*; as,

Parler ainsi n'est pas raisonnable. *To speak (speaking) thus is not reasonable.*

Végéter c'est mourir. *To vegetate is to die.*

- 104** (b) as the **Predicative Complement** of a Verb of *being*, *seeming*, *going*, and the like; as,

Conjug.

1. C'est **parler** franchement. *That is speaking candidly.*

2. Il va **finir** tout de suite. *He is going to finish immediately.*

4. Nous allons **répondre** catégoriquement. *We are going to reply categorically.*

Auxil. { Elle paraît **avoir** du courage. *She seems to have courage.*
C'est **être** bien entêté. *That is to be very obstinate.*

- 105** (c) as the **Direct Object** of *Transitive Verbs* which denote *thinking*, *declaring*, *wishing*, *perceiving* (including nearly all Verbs ending in **-oir**), especially also after **faire** and **laisser** (see § 235).

Il croit **parler** à une personne de qualité. *He fancies he is speaking to a person of rank.*

Nous désirons **finir** cela aujourd'hui. *We wish to finish that to-day.*

Il sait **répondre** à propos. *He knows how to reply to the purpose.*

Elle avoue **avoir** du regret d'avoir agi ainsi. *She confesses she is sorry for having acted thus.*

Ils déclarent **être** à même de le faire. *They declare they are able to do it.*

II. THE INFINITIVE WITH **de** :—106 (a) as the **Attributive Adjunct** to a *Noun* ; as,

- L'art **de parler** était cultivé à Athènes. *The art of speaking was cultivated at Athens.*
 Son désir **de finir** est naturel. *His desire to have done is natural.*
 L'occasion **de répondre** se présentera bientôt. *The opportunity of replying will soon present itself.*

107 (b) as an **Adverbial Adjunct** to an *Adjective* ; as,

- Vous êtes libre **de parler**. *You are at liberty to talk.*
 Il est content **de finir** aujourd'hui. *He is happy to finish to-day.*
 Elle est charmée **de répondre**. *She is delighted to reply.*

108 (c) as the **Object (Direct or Indirect)** of another *Verb* ; as,

- Elle se dépêcha **de parler** au concierge. *She hastened to speak to the doorkeeper.*
 Nous n. proposons **de finir** ce soir. *We intend finishing this evening.*
 Ils promettent **de répondre** par retour du courrier. *They promise to reply by return of post.*

All Nouns and Adjectives, and most Verbs, complemented by a Verb must be linked to it by some Preposition ; generally (1) by de, not unfrequently, however, (2) by à, also by (3) par, pour, sans après, and a few Conjunctive Prepositions ; as, avant de, de manière à, etc., see § 112.

For a list of Verbs requiring their Infinitive Complement either *without* Preposition, or with **de** or **à**, see Appendix.

III. THE INFINITIVE WITH **a** :—109 (a) as an **Attributive Adjunct** to a *Noun* or *Adjective* to express its *fitness* ; as,

- Votre chambre **à coucher** donne sur le jardin. *Your bedroom looks upon the garden.*
 C'est un ouvrage **à finir**. *It is a work to be finished.*
 C'est un homme prompt **à parler**. *He is ever ready to speak.*

110 (b) as the **Complement** of another *Verb* ; as,

- Il a réussi **à le tromper**. *He has succeeded in deceiving him.*
 Ils visent **à me supplanter**. *They aim at supplanting me.*
 Il gagne **à être connu**. *He improves on acquaintance.*

IV. THE INFINITIVE WITH OTHER PREPOSITIONS:—

- 111 Il finit par **avouer** sa faute. *He ended by confessing his fault.*
 Je le fais pour vous **plaire**. *I do it to please you.*
 Il travaille sans **désespérer**. *He works without ceasing.*
- On mange pour vivre, mais on ne vit pas pour **manger**. *One eats in order to live, but one does not live to eat.*
 Après **avoir** remis la lettre, nous partîmes. *After having delivered the letter, we left.*
 Songez y bien avant de vous **décider**. *Consider it well before making up your mind.*
 Faites-le de manière à le **satisfaire**. *Do it so as to satisfy him.*
 Je ne le ferai pas de peur (crainte) de l'**offenser**. *I shall not do it for fear of offending him.*

112 When the Subject of a Dependent clause is identical with that of the *Principal* Sentence, then the following Prepositions or Prepositional Conjunctions followed by the *Infinitive* must be used instead of the corresponding conjunctions followed by the *Subjunctive* or *Indicative* :—

- Je l'apprends pour le **savoir** ; *instead of—* pour que je le sache.
I learn it in order to know it.
- Tu le récites sans le **comprendre** ; ,, sans que tu le comprennes.
You recite it without understanding it.
- Il l'a fait afin de nous **obliger** ; ,, afin qu'il nous oblige.
He has done it in order to oblige us.
- On n'agit pas ainsi à moins d'**être** fou ; ,, à moins qu'on ne soit fou.
One does not act thus unless one is a fool.
- Ne le dites pas de peur de l'**offenser** ; ,, de peur que vous ne l'offensiez.
Do not say it for fear of offending him.
- Attendez un peu avant de lui **répondre** ; ,, avant que vous lui répondiez.
Wait a little before replying to him.
- Elles partirent après **avoir** attendu ; ,, après qu'elles eurent attendu.
They started after having waited.
- Travaillez de façon à ¹ le **satisfaire** ; ,, de façon que } vous le
Work so as to satisfy him. de manière que } satisfas-
 siez.

¹ Or, de manière à...

113

Present Participle.

(a) used *Adjectively*, and taking like an Adjective the *Gender* and *Number* of the Noun it qualifies :—

L'homme est la seule créature **parlante**. *Man is the only speaking creature.*
 Voilà une nouvelle bien **réjouissante**. *That is gladdening news.*
 C'est une affaire **dépendante** d'une autre. *It is an affair depending on another.*

114 (b) used *Verbally*, and then *remaining unchanged* :—

C'est une personne **parlant** très bien. *This is a person speaking well.*
 Une personne se **réjouissant** du bonheur d'autrui. *A person rejoicing at other people's good fortune.*
 Les personnes ne **dépendant** que d'elles-mêmes sont libres. *Persons depending only on their own means are free.*

115 The Verbal form in **-ant** may be :—

(a) A *Verbal Adjective*, used to denote a *permanent state* or *quality*, and agreeing like an Adjective with the Noun it qualifies ; or,

(b) A *Present Participle proper*, denoting a *Transitory Action*, and remaining unchanged : this is especially the case—

(1) if it has an *Object* ; as,

Ils partirent **laissant** leur père seul. *They started, leaving their father alone.*

(2) if it is qualified by a following *Adverb* ; as,

Une machine **fonctionnant** parfaitement. *A machine working well.*

(3) if it stands instead of an *Adverbial* or *Adjectival Clause* ; as,

Vivant (= comme ils vivent) sobrement ils dépensent peu. *Living temperately (as they do) they spend but little.*

(4) if it depends on **en** :—

C'est **en travaillant** qu'ils s'enrichissent. *It is by working that they get rich.*

- 116** Compound Tenses are formed by means of an *Auxiliary Verb* and the *Past Participle* of the Verb to be conjugated :—

	<i>Infinitive.</i>	<i>Past Participle.</i>
FIRST CONJUGATION :—	parl-er , to speak ;	parl-é , spoken.
SECOND CONJUGATION :—	fin-ir , to finish ;	fin-i , finished.
FOURTH CONJUGATION :—	vend-re , to sell ;	vend-u , sold.
AUXILIARY VERBS :—	{ avoir , to have ; être , to be ;	eu , had. été , been.

- 117** The Present Perfect (Past Indefinite): formed by the Present of *Auxiliary* + *Verb Past Participle* (§§ 5 and 6):—

(a) **J' ai** **parlé**.
I have spoken, etc.

(b) **Je suis** **monté**.
I have (am) gone up, etc.

(a) With *avoir* are conjugated *all Transitive* and *most Intransitive* Verbs ; as,

- 118** FIRST CONJUGATION.

J' ai parlé ce matin au facteur. *I have spoken this morning to the postman.*
Tu as parlé étourdiment. *Thou hast spoken thoughtlessly.*
Il (elle) a parlé très éloquemment. *He (she) has spoken very eloquently.*
Nous avons parlé il y a un moment. *We have spoken a minute ago.*
Vous avez parlé comme-il-faut. *You have spoken properly.*
Ils ont parlé au directeur. *They have spoken to the director.*

- 119** SECOND CONJUGATION.

J' ai fini mon ouvrage ce soir. *I have finished my work this evening, etc.*
Nous avons fini notre thème. *We have finished our exercise, etc.*

- 120** FOURTH CONJUGATION.

J' ai vendu ma maison à mon voisin. *I have sold my house to my neighbour, etc.*
Nous avons vendu la campagne très cher. *We have sold the country seat very dear, etc.*

- 121** AUXILIARY VERB *avoir*.

J' ai eu une visite ce matin de bonne heure. *I have had a call early this morning, etc.*
Nous avons eu de bonnes nouvelles de Paris. *We have had good news from Paris, etc.*

- 122** AUXILIARY VERB *être*.

J' ai été à l'école toute la matinée. *I have been at school all the morning, etc.*
Nous avons été bien en retard. *We have been very late, etc.*

- 123** The PRESENT PERFECT is used not only as in English to denote an action accomplished in a period not yet elapsed at the time of speaking:—*ce matin, this morning ; aujourd'hui, to-day ;* but also generally in familiar conversation and correspondence for all past events : compare—

French Present Perfect.

English Past or Preterite.

Je l'**ai rencontré** l'autre jour. *I met him the other day.*

J'**ai couru** si vite que je **suis tombé**. *I ran so quickly that I fell down.*

Obs.—With *il y a...que, voilà...que, depuis que, since, ago*, notice the use of the *French Present* for the *English Present Perfect*:—

Il y a huit jours qu'**il est ici**. *He has now been here for a week.*

Il y a longtemps que je **désire** le voir. *I have long been desirous to see him.*

- 124** *Agreement of Past Participle conjugated with avoir*:—

Voici le livre, l'**avez-vous apporté**? *Here is the book, have you brought it?*

Voici les livres, **les avez-vous apportés**? *Here are the books, have you brought them?*

Voici la lettre, l'**avez-vous apportée**? *Here is the letter, have you brought it?*

Voici les lettres, **les avez-vous apportées**? *Here are the letters, have you brought them?*

Le devoir **que j'ai fini** est facile. *The lesson that I have finished is easy.*

Les devoirs **que j'ai finis** sont faciles. *The lessons that I have finished are easy.*

La lettre **que j'ai finie** est pour mon frère. *The letter that I have finished is for my brother.*

Les lettres **que j'ai finies** sont pour ma sœur. *The letters that I have finished are for my sister.*

- 125** The *Past Participle* construed with *avoir* must take the number and gender of its *Direct Object*, if that *Direct Object* precedes the *Past Part.* in the sentence ; but the *Past Part.* does not agree with the following *Object* ; compare—

Avez-vous **vendu** votre maison?—
Have you sold your house?—

Oui, je l'**ai vendue**.
Yes, I have sold it.

Ont-ils **accompli** leurs devoirs?—
Have they fulfilled their duties?—

Non, ils ne **les** ont pas **accomplis**.
No, they have not fulfilled them.

- 126 (b) With **être** are conjugated *all Reflexive Verbs* (see §§ 199–205), and *Neuter Verbs* denoting *motion* or *transition* from one state into another :—

FIRST CONJUGATION.

Je	suis	arrivé ¹	par le premier train. <i>I have arrived by the first train.</i>
Tu	es	arrivé ¹	beaucoup trop tard. <i>Thou hast arrived much too late.</i>
Il	est	arrivé	avec son frère. <i>He has arrived with his brother.</i>
Elle	est	arrivée	ce matin. <i>She has arrived this morning.</i>
Nous	sommes	arrivés ²	par la poste. <i>We have arrived by the mail coach.</i>
Vous	êtes	arrivés ²	trop tôt. <i>You have arrived too early.</i>
Ils	sont	arrivés	à cinq heures. <i>They (have) arrived at five o'clock.</i>
Elles	sont	arrivées	à la hâte. <i>They have arrived in haste.</i>

1. or **arrivée**, if **je** or **tu** represent a Feminine.

2. or **arrivées**, if **nous** or **vous** represent a Feminine.

A Past Participle construed with **être** (except in the case of Reflexive Verbs) takes the gender and number of the *Subject* like an Adjective, (see § 48.)

- 127 SECOND CONJUGATION.

Je	suis	parti	pour Londres. <i>I have left for London.</i>
Elle	est	partie	toute seule. <i>She has left quite alone, etc.</i>

- 128 FOURTH CONJUGATION.

Je	suis	descendu	de bonne heure. <i>I have come down early.</i>
Nous	sommes	descendus	du premier étage. <i>We have come down from the first floor, etc.</i>

- 129 The following *regular Verbs* are generally conjugated with **être** :
arriver, to arrive ; **monter**, to go up ; **retourner**, to return ; **entrer**, to enter ; **rester**, to stay ; **tomber**, to fall ; **descendre**, to come (go) down, to descend.

For *irregular Verbs*, see §§ 212, 221, 238, 241, etc.

- 130 INTERROGATIVE AND NEGATIVE.

(a) Ai-je parlé à propos ? or	{	Non, tu n'as pas parlé à propos.
Est-ce que j'ai parlé à propos ?— <i>Have I spoken to the purpose ?—</i>		

As-tu fini ta besogne ? or	{	Je ne l'ai pas encore finie .
Est-ce que tu as fini ta besogne ?— <i>Have you finished your work ?—</i>		

A-t-il répondu à ta question ? or	{	Il n'y a pas répondu .
Est-ce qu'il a répondu à ta question ?— <i>Has he replied to your question ?—</i>		

- 131 (b) **Suis-je retourné** trop tard ? or
- | | | |
|---|---|--|
| Est-ce que je suis retourné trop tard ?—
<i>Have I returned too late ?—</i> | { | Vous n'êtes pas retourné assez tôt.
<i>You have not returned early enough.</i> |
|---|---|--|

- 132 INTERROGATIVE-NEGATIVE.

N'ai-je pas mérité une récompense ? *Have I not deserved a reward ?*
Ne suis-je pas descendu à temps ? *Have I not come down in time ?*

- 133** The Past Perfect (Pluperfect) is represented by two tenses :
the **Plusqueparfait** : formed by the

Imparfait of Auxiliary Verb + *Participle Perfect* ;

the **Passé Antérieur** : formed by the

Prétérite of Auxiliary Verb + *Participle Perfect*.

(a) With the Auxiliary Verb **avoir** :—

- 134** FIRST CONJUGATION.

I. *Plusqueparfait*.

Quand j' **avais parlé** je m'asseyais. *Whenever I had spoken I used to resume my seat.*
Quand tu **avais parlé** tu t'asseyais. *Whenever you had spoken you used to sit down.*
Quand il **avait parlé** il s'asseyait. *Every time he had spoken he used to sit down.*
Quand nous **avions parlé** nous nous asseyions. *When we had spoken we used to sit down.*
Quand vous **aviez parlé** vous vous asseyiez. *When you had spoken you used to sit down.*
Quand ils **avaient parlé** ils s'asseyaient. *When they had spoken they used to sit down.*

Passé Antérieur.

- 135** Quand j' **eus parlé** je m'assis. *When I had spoken I sat down.*
Dès que tu **eus parlé** tu t'assis. *When you had spoken you sat down.*
Aussitôt qu'il **eut parlé** il s'assit. *As soon as he had spoken he sat down.*
Après que nous **eûmes parlé** nous nous assîmes. *After we had spoken we sat down.*
Lorsque vous **eûtes parlé** vous vous assîtes. *When you had spoken you sat down.*
Dès qu'ils **eurent parlé** ils s'assirent. *As soon as they had spoken they sat down.*

Rule.—Both the **Plusqueparfait** and **Passé Antérieur** express an action past at a time itself past, but with this distinction :—

The **Plusqueparfait** denotes an action usually done or already in progress } at some
The **Passé Antérieur** denotes an action just accomplished } past period ;
in other words, the **Plusqueparfait** corresponds to the **Imparfait**,
the **Passé Antérieur** corresponds to the **Prétérite**.

- 136** SECOND CONJUGATION.

Plusqueparfait.

Si j'**avais fini** je serais bien aise, etc. *If I had finished I should be very glad.*

Passé Antérieur.

Dès que j'**eus fini** je partis, etc. *As soon as I had done I started.*

- 137** FOURTH CONJUGATION.

Plusqueparfait.

Si j'**avais vendu** ma maison, je m'en repentirais, etc. *If I had sold my house, I should be sorry.*

Passé Antérieur.

Aussitôt que j'**eus vendu** ma maison, je m'en repentis, etc. *As soon as I had sold my house, I repented of it.*

AUXILIARY VERBS.

- 138** Si j'**avais eu** de l'argent j'étais parti. *If I had had money I should have started.*
Si j'**avais été** à la maison je vous aurais écrit. *If I had been at home I should have written to you.*

b) With the Auxiliary Verb être :—

139

1. *Plusqueparfait.*

- J' **étais** déjà **arrivé** avant lui. *I had already arrived before him.*
 Tu **étais** déjà **arrivé** de bonne heure. *You had already arrived early.*
 Il **était** déjà **arrivé** de grand matin. *He had already arrived very early.*
 Elle **était** déjà **arrivée** après nous. *She had already arrived after us.*
 Nous **étions** déjà **arrivés** avant vous. *We had already arrived before you.*
 Vous **étiez** déjà **arrivés** alors. *You had already arrived then.*
 Ils **étaient** déjà **arrivés** depuis peu. *They had already arrived a short time ago.*
 Elles **étaient** déjà **arrivées** pour dîner. *They had already arrived for dinner.*

140

2. *Antérieur.*

- Dès que je **fus descendu** il me salua. *As soon as I had come down he greeted me.*
 Aussitôt que tu **fus descendu** je partis. *As soon as you had come down I left.*
 Après qu'il **fut descendu** elle apporta le déjeuner. *After he had come down she brought the breakfast.*
 Quand elle **fut descendue** elle commença à pleurer. *When she had come down she began to cry.*
 Lorsque nous **fûmes descendus** nous déjeunerâmes. *When we had come down we breakfasted.*
 Dès que vous **fûtes descendus** il monta. *As soon as you had come down he went upstairs.*
 Après qu'ils **furent descendus** on les interrogea. *After they had come down they were questioned.*
 Dès qu'elles **furent descendues** on se mit à table. *As soon as they had come down they sat down to table.*

In accordance with the Rule laid down in § 135, the *Antérieur* is generally used instead of the *Plusqueparfait* after the following Conjunctions of time:—*quand, lorsque*, when; *après que*, after; *à peine . . . que*, hardly . . . when; *dès que, aussitôt que*, as soon as, *ne pas plus tôt que*, no sooner . . . than.

141

INTERROGATIVE AND NEGATIVE.

- Avais-je mérité** cette ingratitude?—Vous ne l'**aviez** pas **méritée**.
Étais-je descendu trop tard?—Vous n'**étiez** pas **descendu** assez tôt.

142 **The Future Perfect : formed by means of the**
Future Pres. of Auxiliary + Participle Perf.

(a) **J'aurai parlé.** *I shall have spoken.*

(b) **Je serai entré.** *I shall have (be) entered.*

(a) With the Auxiliary Verb **avoir** :—

143 **FIRST CONJUGATION.**

J' **aurai dîné** avant cinq heures. *I shall have dined before five o'clock.*

Tu **auras dîné** à midi. *You will have dined at noon.*

Il **aura dîné** avant nous. *He will have dined before us.*

Nous **aurons dîné** dans un moment. *We shall have dined in a moment.*

Vous **aurez dîné** dans une heure. *You will have dined in an hour.*

Ils **auront dîné** avec nous. *They will have dined with us.*

144 **SECOND CONJUGATION.**

J' **aurai fini** mon ouvrage avant vous. *I shall have done before you.*

Tu **auras fini** dans cinq minutes. *You will have done in five minutes, etc.*

145 **FOURTH CONJUGATION.**

J' **aurai attendu** une heure. *I shall have waited an hour.*

Tu **auras attendu** bien longtemps. *You will have waited a very long time, etc.*

146 **AUXILIARY VERB avoir, to have.**

J' **aurai eu** un régal. *I shall have had a treat.*

Tu **auras eu** bien de la peine. *You will have had much trouble, etc.*

147 **AUXILIARY VERB être, to be.**

J' **aurai été** en France. *I shall have been in France.*

Tu **auras été** à la campagne. *You will have been in the country, etc.*

(b) With the Auxiliary Verb être :—

148

FIRST CONJUGATION.

Je **serai retourné** avant peu. *I shall have returned before long.*Tu **seras retourné** à l'instant. *You will have returned instantly.*Il **sera retourné** à midi. *He will have returned at noon.*Elle **sera retournée** ce soir. *She will have returned this evening.*Nous **serons retournés** avant vous. *We shall have returned before you.*Vous **serez retournés** après nous. *You will have returned after us.*Ils **seront retournés** à Noël. *They will have returned at Christmas.*Elles **seront retournées** à Pâques. *They will have returned at Easter.*

149

SECOND CONJUGATION.

Je **serai parti** pour tout de bon. *I shall have started for good.*Elle **sera partie** sans retour. *She will have gone without returning.*

150

FOURTH CONJUGATION.

Je **serai descendu** avant lui. *I shall have gone down before him.*Nous **serons descendus** bientôt. *We shall have come down soon.*

151

INTERROGATIVE AND NEGATIVE.

Aurai-je travaillé pour rien? *Shall I have worked for nothing?*Vous n'**aurez** pas travaillé en vain. *You will not have worked in vain.***Serai-je descendu** assez tôt? *Shall I have come down early enough?*Vous ne **serez** pas **descendu** trop tôt. *You will not have come down too soon.*

152 The Conditional Perfect : formed by means of the Conditional Present of Auxiliary Verb + Past Participle :—

(a) **J'aurais parlé.** *I should have spoken.*

(b) **Je serais descendu.** *I should have (be) come down.*

(a) With the Auxiliary Verb **avoir** :—

153 FIRST CONJUGATION.

J' **aurais parlé** si j'avais osé. *I should have spoken if I had dared.*
 Tu **aurais parlé** si tu avais osé. *You would have spoken if you had dared.*
 Il **aurait parlé** s'il avait osé. *He would have spoken if he had dared.*
 Nous **aurions parlé** si nous avions osé. *We should have spoken if we had dared.*
 Vous **auriez parlé** si vous aviez osé. *You would have spoken if you had dared.*
 Ils **auraient parlé** s'ils avaient osé. *They would have spoken if they had dared.*

The rules given for the use of the Conditional Present (§§ 82-83) hold good with the Conditional *Perfect*.

154 SECOND CONJUGATION.

J' **aurais fini** si j'avais été diligent. *I should have finished if I had been diligent.*
 Nous **aurions fini** si nous avions été appliqués. *We should have finished if we had been diligent.*

155 THIRD CONJUGATION.

J' **aurais répondu** plus tôt si j'avais eu le temps. *I should have replied sooner if I had had the time.*
 Nous **aurions répondu** à la question si nous avions étudié. *We should have answered the question if we had studied.*

156 AUXILIARY VERB avoir.

J' **aurais eu** du plaisir à vous voir. *I should have had pleasure in seeing you.*
 Nous **aurions eu** du regret à agir ainsi. *We should have been sorry to act thus.*

157 AUXILIARY VERB être.

J' **aurais été** charmé de vous rencontrer. *I should have been delighted to meet you.*
 Nous **aurions été** heureux de lui rendre ce service. *We should have been happy to render him this service.*

158 (b) With the Auxiliary Verb être :—

FIRST CONJUGATION.

- Je **serais arrivé** ce matin si j'étais parti hier. *I should have arrived this morning if I had left yesterday.*
 Tu **serais arrivé** à temps si tu étais parti de bonne heure. *You would have arrived in time if you had started early.*
 Il **serait arrivé** assez tôt s'il était parti ce matin. *He would have arrived early enough if he had started this morning.*
 Elle **serait arrivée** avant nous si elle était partie plus tôt. *She would have arrived before us if she had left sooner.*
 Nous **serions arrivés** à midi si nous étions partis à onze heures. *We should have arrived at noon if we had started at eleven.*
 Vous **seriez arrivés** trop tard si vous étiez partis par ce train. *You would have arrived too late if you had started by this train.*
 Ils **seraient arrivés** à point nommé s'ils étaient partis assez tôt. *They would have arrived in time if they had started early enough.*
 Elles **seraient arrivées** ce soir si elles étaient parties ce matin. *They would have arrived this evening if they had left this morning.*

159

SECOND CONJUGATION.

- Je **serais sorti** ce matin si j'avais reçu sa lettre. *I should have gone out this morning if I had received his letter.*
 Elle **serait sortie** avec plaisir si le temps avait été beau. *She would have gone out with pleasure if the weather had been fine.*

160

FOURTH CONJUGATION.

- Je **serais descendu** de bonne heure s'il avait plu. *I should have come down early if it had rained.*
 Nous **serions descendus** plus tôt si le repas avait été servi. *We should have come down sooner if the meal had been served.*

161

INTERROGATIVE AND NEGATIVE.

- Aurais-je parlé** en vain?— *Should I have spoken in vain?*
 Non, vous **n'auriez pas parlé** en vain. *No, you would not have spoken in vain.*
Serais-je arrivé trop tard?— *Should I have arrived too late?*
 Vous **ne seriez pas arrivés** trop tard. *You would not have arrived too late.*

162

INTERROGATIVE-NEGATIVE.

- N'aurais-je pas mérité** une récompense si j'avais achevé mon ouvrage. *Should I not have deserved a reward if I had finished my work?*
 Ne **serais-je pas sorti** si vous m'aviez accompagné? *Shouldn't I have gone out if you had accompanied me?*

163 The Present-Perfect Subjunctive ; formed by means of the *Present Subjunctive of Auxiliary Verb + Past Participle* :—

- (a) **J'aie parlé.** *I may have spoken.*
 (b) **Je sois parti.** *I may have (be) started.*

(a) With the Auxiliary Verb **avoir** :—

164

FIRST CONJUGATION.

PRINCIPAL SENTENCE. DEPENDENT CLAUSE.

- Il est bien aise que j' **aie parlé.** *He is glad that I have spoken.*
 Je suis étonné que tu **aies parlé.** *I am astonished that you have spoken.*
 Nous regrettons qu'il **ait parlé.** *We are sorry that he has spoken.*
 Il ne croit pas que nous **ayons parlé.** *He does not believe that we have spoken.*
 Est-il donc vrai que vous **ayez parlé ?** *Is it true then that you have spoken ?*
 Il se peut qu'ils **aient parlé.** *It may be that they have spoken.*

The rules given in §§ 87-91 apply also to the Compound Tenses of the *Subjunctive*.

165

SECOND CONJUGATION.

- Ne venez pas avant que j' **aie fini.** *Don't come before I have finished.*
 J'attendrai jusqu'à ce que tu **aies fini.** *I shall wait until you have finished.*

166

FOURTH CONJUGATION.

- C'est la seule lettre à laquelle j' **aie répondu.** *It is the only letter to which I have replied.*
 Voilà la première question à laquelle tu **aies répondu.** *That is the first question to which you have replied.*

167

AUXILIARY VERB **avoir**.

- Il regrette que j' **aie eu** tant de peine. *He is sorry I should have had so much trouble.*
 Je ne doute pas que tu **aies eu** beaucoup de difficultés. *I do not doubt that you have had many difficulties.*

168

AUXILIARY VERB **être**.

- Quel dommage que j' **aie été** empêché de venir ! *What a pity I should have been prevented from coming.*
 Il est extraordinaire que tu **aies été** si peu clairvoyant. *It is extraordinary that you have been so shortsighted.*

(b) With the Auxiliary Verb *être* :—

169

FIRST CONJUGATION.

PRINCIPAL SENTENCE.

DEPENDENT CLAUSE.

Il ne croit pas que je	sois arrivé.	<i>He does not believe that I have arrived.</i>
Elle est fâchée que tu	sois arrivé.	<i>She is sorry that you have arrived.</i>
Je suis surpris qu'il	soit arrivé.	<i>I am surprised that he has arrived.</i>
J'ignore absolument qu'elle	soit arrivée.	<i>I do not know at all that she has arrived.</i>
Ils doutent que nous	soyons arrivés.	<i>They doubt if we have arrived.</i>
Nous sommes bien aises que v.	soyez arrivés.	<i>We are glad you have arrived.</i>
N'êtes-vous pas contents qu'ils	soient arrivés?	<i>Are you not pleased that they have arrived?</i>
Je me réjouis qu'elles	soient arrivées.	<i>I am glad that they have arrived.</i>

170

SECOND CONJUGATION.

Venez me voir avant que je	sois parti.	<i>Come to see me before I have gone.</i>
Il est resté quoiqu'elle	soit partie.	<i>He has remained although she has left.</i>

171

FOURTH CONJUGATION.

Attendez donc jusqu'à ce que je	sois descendu.	<i>Just wait until I have come down.</i>
Elle est partie avant que nous	soyons descendus	<i>She has left before we came down stairs.</i>

172

NEGATIVE.

C'est la première fois que je	n'aie pas	achevé ma besogne.	<i>It is the first time I have not finished my work.</i>
C'est la seule fois que je	ne sois pas	rentré à temps.	<i>It is the first time I have not returned in time.</i>

6th Rule of the Subjunctive. When the principal sentence contains an Adjective in the superlative degree or conveying the idea of *exclusiveness*, as—**le seul, l'unique**, etc., the Verb in the dependent clause is generally used in the *Subjunctive*.

173 The Past Perfect (Pluperfect) Subjunctive : formed by means of *Imperfect of Auxiliary Verb + Past Participle* :—

- (a) **J'eusse parlé.** *I should have spoken.*
 (b) **Je fusse arrivé.** *I should have (be) arrived.*

(a) With the Auxiliary Verb **avoir** :—

174

FIRST CONJUGATION.

- Quoique j' **eusse parlé** haut il n'entendit pas. *Although I had spoken loud he did not hear.*
 Bien que tu **eusses parlé** français il répondit en anglais. *Though you had spoken French he replied in English.*
 Avant qu'il **eût parlé** longtemps il fut interrompu. *Before he had spoken long he was interrupted.*
 Malgré que nous **eussions parlé** pour lui, il fut puni. *Although we had spoken in his behalf he was punished.*
 Sans que vous **eussiez parlé** vous fûtes acquittés. *Without having spoken you were acquitted.*
 Encore qu'ils **eussent parlé** bas je les entendis. *Though they had spoken low I heard them.*

For a list of Conjunctions which require the following Verb in the Subjunctive see §§ 91 and 96.

175

SECOND CONJUGATION.

- Il ne croyait pas que j'**eusse réussi.** *He did not believe I had succeeded.*
 Je doutais fort que tu **eusses réussi.** *I doubted much if you had succeeded.*

176

FOURTH CONJUGATION.

- Il aurait mieux valu que j' **eusse attendu.** *It would have been better for me to wait.*
 N'aurait-il pas mieux valu que tu **eusses attendu?** *Would it not have been better for you to wait?*

177

THE AUXILIARY VERBS **avoir** AND **être**.

- Il aurait fallu que j' **eusse eu** plus d'argent. *It would have been necessary that I had more money.*
 Il aurait mieux valu que j'**eusse été** absent. *It would have been better if I had been abs. nt.*

(b) With the Auxiliary Verb être :—

178

FIRST CONJUGATION.

PRINCIPAL SENTENCE.	DEPENDENT CLAUSE.	
Il doutait que je	fusse arrivé.	<i>He doubted if I had arrived.</i>
J'ignorais que tu	fusses arrivé.	<i>I did not know that you had arrived.</i>
On ne savait pas qu'il	fût arrivé.	<i>It was not known that he had arrived.</i>
On niait qu'elle	fût arrivée.	<i>They denied that she had arrived.</i>
Il ne se doutait pas que nous	fussions arrivés.	<i>He was not aware that we had arrived.</i>
Je ne savais pas que vous	fussiez arrivés.	<i>I did not know that you had arrived.</i>
Il n'était pas probable qu'ils	fussent arrivés.	<i>It was not likely that they had arrived.</i>
Il se réjouissait qu'elles	fussent arrivées.	<i>He was glad they had arrived.</i>

179

SECOND CONJUGATION.

On ne croyait pas que je	fusse parti.	<i>They did not believe I had left.</i>
Il ne se doutait pas qu'elle	fût partie.	<i>He did not suspect that she had left.</i>

180

FOURTH CONJUGATION.

Il était enchanté que je	fusse descendu.	<i>He was delighted I had gone down.</i>
On était étonné que nous	fussions descendus.	<i>They were astonished that we had come down.</i>

181

NEGATIVE.

N'auriez-vous pas été surpris si je	n'eusse pas travaillé?	<i>Would you not have been surprised if I had not worked?</i>
N'aurait-il pas mieux valu que je	ne fusse pas rentré?	<i>Would it not have been better for me not to have returned home?</i>

**182 The Infinitive Perfect : formed by means of the
Infinitive Present of Auxiliary Verb + Past Participle :—**

(a) **Avoir parlé.** *To have spoken.*

(b) **Être arrivé.** *To have (be) arrived.*

183 (a) With the Auxiliary Verb avoir :—

Il a été puni pour **avoir parlé** indiscretement. *He has been punished for having spoken indiscreetly.*

Il sera payé après **avoir fini** son ouvrage. *He will be paid after having finished his work.*

Je suis fâché d' **avoir répondu** si tard. *I am sorry I have replied so late.*

Il croyait **avoir eu** des preuves. *He thought he had had proofs.*

Nous regrettâmes d'**avoir été** si mal informés. *We were sorry we were so misinformed.*

N.B.—For the use of the *Infinitive after Prepositions* see §§ 106–111.

184 (b) With the Auxiliary Verb être :—

Nous fûmes fatigués avant d'**être arrivés.** *We were tired before we had arrived.*

Elle est tombée malade après **être partie.** *She was taken ill after having left.*

Elles regrettent d' **être descendues.** *They are sorry they have come down.*

N.B.—For the use of **avant de**, with the *Infinitive*, instead of *avant que* with the *Subjunctive* see § 112.

185

NEGATIVE.

(a) Je suis fâché { de **n'avoir pas parlé.** *I am sorry I did not speak.*
de **ne pas avoir parlé.**

(b) Je regrette { de **n'être arrivé pas plus tôt.** *I am sorry I did not arrive sooner.*
de **ne pas être arrivé plus tôt.**

The Participle Perfect : formed by means of the
Participle Present of Auxiliary Verb + *Past Participle* :—

186 (a) With the Auxiliary Verb **avoir** :—

Ayant parlé ainsi, je partis. *Having spoken thus, I left.*

Ayant fini, je me reposai. *Having finished, I rested.*

Ayant répondu déjà, je n'ai plus rien à dire. *Having already replied, I have
nothing more to add.*

Ayant eu de mauvaises nouvelles, il était triste. *Having had bad news, he
was sad.*

Ayant été longtemps à Paris, elle parle bien le français. *Having been in
Paris for a long time, she speaks French well.*

187 (b) With the Auxiliary Verb **être** :—

Le train **étant arrivé** trop tard, il y eut un accident. *The train having
arrived too late, there was an accident.*

Le voyageur **étant parti** avant nous, arriva le premier. *The traveller having
started before us, arrived first.*

Lui, **étant descendu**, se reposa. *He, having come down, rested
(himself).*

Thus also with *reflexive* Verbs :—

M' **étant retardé** en route, j'arrivai trop tard. *Having been belated on the
way I arrived too late.*

S' **étant ennuyé** à mort, il partit. *Have been wearied to death, he left.*

Nous **étant repentis** de notre faute, on nous pardonna. *Having repented of
our fault, we were forgiven.*

188

NEGATIVE.

(a) L'orateur **n'ayant jamais parlé** mieux, fut applaudi. *The orator having
never spoken better, was applauded.*

(b) Le train **n'étant pas arrivé**, nous rentrâmes. *The train not having come,
we returned home.*

N.B. For special rules on the agreement of the Participle Perfect see
Appendix, § 148.

SYNOPTIC TABLE OF AUXILIARY VERBS.

189

SIMPLE TENSES.

190

Infinitive. **avoir**, *to have.***Participle.** **eu**, *had.***être**, *to be.***été**, *been.***Indicative.** **Subjunctive.****Indicative.****Subjunctive.**

PRESENT.

*I have, etc.**I have, etc.* §§ 87-91.*I am, etc.**I be, etc.*j' **ai**j' ai-**e**je **suis**je soi-**s**tu **as**tu ai-**es**tu **es**tu soi-**s**il **a**il ai-**e**il **est**il soi-**t**n. **av-ons**n. ay-**ons**n. **sommes**n. soy-**ons**v. **av-ez**v. ay-**ez**v. **êtes**v. soy-**ez**ils **ont**ils ai-**ent**ils **sont**ils soi-**ent**

IMPERFECT.

I used to have, etc. See §§ 66-70.*I used to be, etc.*j' av-**ais**j' ét-**ais**tu av-**ais**tu ét-**ais**il av-**ait**il ét-**ait**n. av-**ions**n. ét-**ions**v. av-**iez**v. ét-**iez**ils av-**aient**ils ét-**aient**

PRETERITE.

I had, etc. See §§ 71-75.*I was, etc.*j' eu-**s**j' eu-**sse**je fu-**s**je fu-**sse**tu eu-**s**tu eu-**sses**tu fu-**s**tu fu-**sses**il eu-**t**il eû-**t**il fu-**t**il fû-**t**n. eû-**mes**n. eu-**ssions**n. fû-**mes**n. fu-**ssions**v. eû-**tes**v. eu-**ssiez**v. fû-**tes**v. fu-**ssiez**ils eu-**rent**ils eu-**ssent**ils fu-**rent**ils fu-**ssent****FUTURE.****Conditional.****FUTURE.****Conditional.***I shall have, etc.* *I should have* (82-86).*I shall be, etc.**I should be, etc.*j' aur-**ai**j' aur-**ais**je ser-**ai**je ser-**ais**tu aur-**as**tu aur-**ais**tu ser-**as**tu ser-**ais**il aur-**a**il aur-**ait**il ser-**a**il ser-**ait**n. aur-**ons**n. aur-**ions**n. ser-**ons**n. ser-**ions**v. aur-**ez**v. aur-**iez**v. ser-**ez**v. ser-**iez**ils aur-**ont**ils aur-**aient**ils ser-**ont**ils ser-**aient****Imperative.**

ai-**es**, *have (thou)*
 ay-**ons**, *let us have*
 ay-**ez**, *have ye*

soi-**s**, *be (thou)*
 soy-**ons**, *let us be*
 soy-**ez**, *be (ye)*

COMPOUND TENSES.

INFINITIVE PERFECT.

avoir eu, (*to*) *have had*. | **avoir** été, (*to*) *have been*.

PARTICIPLE PERFECT.

ayant eu, *having had*. | **ayant** été, *having been*.

PRESENT PERFECT.

Indicative. **Subjunctive.** | **Indicative.** **Subjunctive**

I have had, etc. See §§ 164-172. *I have been, etc.*

j'ai eu, etc.	j'aie eu, etc.	j'ai été, etc.	j'aie été, etc.
n. avons eu, etc.	n. ayons eu, etc.	n. avons été, etc.	n. ayons été, etc.

1ST PAST PERFECT (PLUPERFECT).

I had had, etc. See §§ 173-177. *I had been, etc.*

j'avais eu, etc.	j'avais été, etc.
n. avions eu, etc.	n. avions été, etc.

2ND PAST PERFECT (PAST ANTERIOR).

I had had, etc. See §§ 178-181. *I had been, etc.*

j'eus eu, etc.	j'eusse eu, etc.	j'eus été, etc.	j'eusse été, etc.
n. eûmes eu, etc.	n. eussions eu, etc.	n. eûmes été, etc.	n. eussions été, etc.

FUTURE AND CONDITIONAL PERFECT.

<i>I shall have had.</i>	<i>I should have had.</i>	<i>I shall have been.</i>	<i>I should have been.</i>
j'aurai eu, etc.	j'aurais eu, etc.	j'aurai été, etc.	j'aurais été, etc.
n. aurons eu, etc.	n. aurions eu, etc.	n. aurons été.	n. aurions été, etc.

In order to conjugate a verb in full it is necessary to know the

(a) From the **INFINITIVE**

(**donn-er, fin-ir, rompr-e**)

are formed :—

(1) THE FUTURE PRESENT

by adding

	1.	2.	3.
<i>Sing.</i>	-ai	-as	-a ;
<i>Plur.</i>	-ons	-ez	-ont ; as
<i>1st Conj.</i>	donner-ai,	-as, -a ;	
	donner-ons,	-ez, -ont.	
<i>2nd Conj.</i>	finir-ai,	-as, -a ;	
	finir-ons,	-ez, -ont.	
<i>4th Conj.</i>	rompr(e)-ai,*	-as, -a ;	
	rompr-ons,	-ez, -ont.	

(2) THE CONDITIONAL PRESENT :

by adding :—

	-ais,	-ais,	-ait ;
	-ions,	-iez,	-aient : as
<i>1st Conj.</i>	donner-ais,	-ais, -ait ;	
	donner-ions,	-iez, -aient.	
<i>2nd Conj.</i>	finir-ais,	-ais, -ait :	
	finir-ions,	-iez, -aient.	
<i>4th Conj.</i>	rompr-ais,*	-ais, -ais ;	
	rompr-ions,	-iez, -aient.	

* In the *4th Conj.* the final *e* of the Infinitive form is dropped.

(b) From the **PRESENT PARTICIPLE**

(**donn-ant, finiss-ant, romp-ant**)

are formed :—

(1) THE PRESENT INDICAT. PLUR.

by changing **-ant** into

	1.	2.	3.
	-ons,	-ez,	-ent : as
<i>1st Conj.</i>	donn-ons,	-ez, -ent.	
<i>2nd Conj.</i>	finiss-ons,	-ez, -ent.	
<i>4th Conj.</i>	romp-ons,	-ez, -ent.	

(2) THE IMPERFECT INDICAT.

by changing **-ant** into

	-ais,	-ais,	-ait ;
	-ions,	-iez,	-aient : as
<i>1st Conj.</i>	donn-ais,	-ais, -ait ;	
	donn-ions,	-iez, -aient.	
<i>2nd Conj.</i>	finiss-ais,	-ais, -ait ;	
	finiss-ions,	-iez, -aient.	
<i>4th Conj.</i>	romp-ais,	-ais, -ait ;	
	romp-ions,	-iez, -aient.	

(3) THE PRESENT SUBJUNCTIVE :

by changing **-ant** into

	-e,	-es,	-e ;
	-ions,	-iez,	-ent. : as
I.	donn-e,	-es, -e ;	-ions, -iez, -ent
II.	finiss-e,	-es, -e ;	-ions, -iez, -ent
IV.	vend-e,	-es, -e ;	-ions, -iez, -ent

Principal Parts from which all other Moods and Tenses are derived :—

(c) From the PAST PARTICIPLE (donn-é, fin-i, romp-u) are formed :—	(d) From the PRESENT INDICATIVE (donn-e, -e (s), -e; -ons, -ez, -ent. fin -is, -is, -it; -issons, -issez, -issent romp -s, -s, -t* -ons, -ez, -ent.) is formed :—	(e) From the PRETERITE INDICATIVE (donn-as, fin-is, romp-is) is formed :—
(1) ALL COMPOUND TENSES OF THE ACTIVE VOICE : either with avoir or être : as Pres. Perf. j'ai Past Perf. j'avais Past Anter. j'eus Fut. Perf. j'aurai Cond. Perf. j'aurais Subj. Perf. j'aie Subj. Plup. j'eusse Infinit. Perf. avoir Past Perf. ayant	(1) THE IMPERATIVE : by dropping the Pers. Pronoun, as <i>Singular.</i> 1st Conj. (2) donn-e, <i>Plural.</i> (1) donn-ons, (2) donn-ez. <i>Singular.</i> 2nd Conj. (2) fin-is, <i>Plural.</i> (1) fin-issons (2) fin-issez. <i>Singular.</i> 4th Conj. (2) romp-s, <i>Plural.</i> (1) romp-ons, (2) romp-ez.	(1) THE IMPERFECT SUBJUNCTIVE : by changing the s of 2nd Pers. Sing. into -sse, -sses, -t; -ssions, -ssiez, -ssent: as <i>1st Conj.</i> donn-asse, -asses, -ât ; donn-assions, -assiez, -assent. <i>2nd Conj.</i> fin-isse, -isses, -ît ; fin-issions, -issiez, -issent. <i>4th Conj.</i> romp-isse, -isses, -ît ; romp-issions, -issiez, -issent.
(2) THE WHOLE PASSIVE VOICE with être : as Pres. je suis Imperf. j'étais Pret. je fus Fut. Pres. je serai Cond. Pres. je serais Pres. Subj. je sois Imp. Subj. je fusse Pres. Perf. j'ai été Pluperf. j'avais été Past. Ant. j'eus été Fut. Perf. j'aurai été Cond. Perf. j'aurais été Subj. Perf. j'aie été Subj. Plup. j'eusse été Infinit. Perf. avoir été Part. Perf. ayant été	rompu. aimé, averti, défendu.	* If the final stem-consonant is a dental (i.e. d- or t-) then the inflexional -t of the 3rd pers. sing. is dropped : il vend-, il bat—.

SYNOPTIC TABLE OF THE THREE REGULAR CONJUGATIONS.

192 FIRST CONJUGATION. | 193 SECOND CONJUGATION. | 194 FOURTH CONJUGATION.

N.B. For the Verbs of the 3rd Conjugation (Infinitive in -oir), which are all *irregular*, see §§ 223-230, 246-248.

INFINITIVE.

Pres. parler, to speak | fin-ir, to finish | romp-re, to break

PARTICIPLE.

Pres. parl-ant, speaking | fin-issant, finishing | romp-ant, breaking
Past. parl-é, spoken | fin-i, finished | romp-u, broken

Present Tense.

INDICATIVE.	SUBJUNCTIVE.	INDICATIVE.	SUBJUNCTIVE.
<i>I speak (am speaking), etc.</i> See § 87.	<i>I finish (am finishing), etc.</i> See § 88.	<i>I break (am breaking), etc.</i> See § 89.	
je parl-e,	je fin-is,	je romp-s,	je romp-e.
tu parl-es,	tu fin-is,	tu romp-s,	tu romp-es.
il parl-e,	il fin-it,	il romp-t,	il romp-e.
n. parl-ons,	n. fin-issons,	n. romp-ons,	n. romp-lons.
v. parl-ez,	v. fin-issez,	v. romp-ez,	v. romp-lez.
ils parl-ent,	ils fin-issent,	ils romp-ent,	ils romp-ent.

<i>I was speaking, etc.</i> je parl-ais. tu parl-ais. il parl-ait. n. parl-ions. v. parl-iez. ils parl-aient.	Past Imperfect Tense. <i>I was finishing, etc.</i> je fin-issais. tu fin-issais. il fin-issait. n. fin-issions. v. fin-issiez. ils fin-issaient.	<i>I was breaking, etc.</i> je romp-ais. tu romp-ais. il romp-ait. n. romp-ions. v. romp-iez. ils romp-aient.
<i>I spoke, etc.</i> je parl-ai, tu parl-as, il parl-a. n. parl-âmes, v. parl-âtes, ils parl-èrent.	Preterite Tense. <i>I finished, etc.</i> See § 93. je fin-is, tu fin-is, il fin-it, n. fin-îmes, v. fin-îtes, ils fin-irent.	<i>I broke, etc.</i> See § 94. je romp-is, tu romp-is, il romp-it, n. romp-îmes, v. romp-îtes, ils romp-irent.
Future. <i>I shall speak, etc.</i> See § 77. je parler-ai, tu parler-as, il parler-a, n. parler-ons, v. parler-ez, ils parler-ont.	Future. <i>I shall finish, etc.</i> See § 78. je finir-ai, tu finir-as, il finir-a, n. finir-ons, v. finir-ez, ils finir-ont.	Future. <i>I shall break, etc.</i> See § 79. je rompr-ai, tu rompr-as, il rompr-a, n. rompr-ons, v. rompr-ez, ils rompr-ont.
CONDITIONAL. <i>romp-s, break.</i> romp-ons, <i>let us break.</i> romp-ez, <i>break ye.</i>	IMPERATIVE. fin-is, <i>finish.</i> fin-issez, <i>let us finish.</i> fin-issez, <i>finish ye.</i>	CONDITIONAL.

COMPOUND TENSES.

I.		II.		IV.	
Infinitive Perfect. avoir parl-é, (to) have spoken.		Infinitive Perfect. avoir fin-i, (to) have finished.		Infinitive Perfect. avoir romp-u, (to) have broken.	
INDICATIVE. SUBJUNCTIVE. <i>I have spoken, etc.</i> See § 164. j'ai parlé, aie parlé. n. avons parlé, ayons parlé.		INDICATIVE. SUBJUNCTIVE. <i>I have finished, etc.</i> See § 165. j'ai fini, aie fini. n. avons fini, ayons fini.		INDICATIVE. SUBJUNCTIVE. <i>I have broken, etc.</i> See § 166. j'ai rompu, aie rompu. n. avons rompu, ayons rompu.	
Past Perfect (a) (Pluperfect). <i>I had spoken, etc.</i> j'avais parlé. n. avions parlé.		Past Perfect (a) (Pluperfect). <i>I had finished, etc.</i> j'avais fini. n. avions fini.		Past Perfect (b) (Past Anterior). <i>I had spoken, etc.</i> See § 174. j'eus parlé, eusse parlé. n. eûmes parlé, eussions parlé.	
Past Perfect (b) (Past Anterior). <i>I had finished, etc.</i> See § 175. j'eus fini, eusse fini. n. eûmes fini, eussions fini.		Future and Conditional Perfect. <i>I shall (should) have spoken, etc.</i> j'aurai parlé, aurais parlé. n. aurons parlé, aurions parlé.		Future and Conditional Perfect. <i>I shall (should) have broken, etc.</i> j'aurai rompu, aurais rompu. n. aurons rompu, aurions rompu.	
CONDITIONAL. <i>I shall (should) have spoken, etc.</i>		CONDITIONAL. <i>I shall (should) have finished, etc.</i>		CONDITIONAL. <i>I shall (should) have broken, etc.</i>	

Peculiarities of Regular Verbs.

195

FIRST CONJUGATION.

(a) appel-er , to call.	(b) jet-er , to throw.	(c) men-er , to lead.	(d) espér-er , to hope.
-----------------------------------	----------------------------------	---------------------------------	-----------------------------------

Present Indicative.

j' appell-e	je jett-e	je mèn-e	j' espèr-e
tu appell-es	tu jett-es	tu mèn-es	tu espèr-es
il appell-e	il jett-e	il mèn-e	il espèr-e
n. appell-ons	n. jet-ons	n. men-ons	n. espér-ons
v. appell-ez	v. jet-ez	v. men-ez	v. espér-ez
ils appell-ent	ils jett-ent	ils mèn-ent	ils espèr-ent

(Thus also the *Pres. Subj.* and the *Imperative.*)*Future and Conditional.*

j' appell-erai, etc.	je jett-erai, etc.	je mèn-erai, etc.	j' espérer-ai, etc.
j' appell-erais, etc.	je jett-erais, etc.	je mèn-erais, etc.	j' espérer-ais, etc.

Verbs with an *e mute* in the last syllable but one are affected in their stem, whenever the following syllable becomes mute; either—

(a and b) The final stem-consonant is doubled, if it is *l* or *t*; except—

Celer, to hide; *geler*, to freeze; *peler*, to peel; *acheter*, to buy, etc., which, instead of doubling the consonant, change *e* into *è* (see *c*); as—

Je *cèle*, j'*achète*, etc.

Or (c) The *e mute* is changed into *è*, if the final stem-consonant is not *l* or *t*.

(d) Verbs with an *é* in the last syllable but one change this *é* into *è* whenever the following syllable becomes mute, except in the Future and Conditional.

(e) essay-er , to try.	(f) pri-er , to pray.	(g) chang-er , to change.	(h) plac-er , to place.
----------------------------------	---------------------------------	-------------------------------------	-----------------------------------

Present Indicative.

j' essai-e	je pri-e	je chang-e	je plac-e
tu essai-es	tu pri-es	tu chang-es	tu plac-es
il essai-e	il pri-e	il chang-e	il plac-e
n. essay- y -ons	n. pri-ons	n. chang-eons	n. plac- y -ons
v. essay- y -ez	v. pri-ez	v. chang-ez	v. plac- y -ez
ils essai-ent	ils pri-ent	ils chang-ent	ils plac-ent

(Thus also the *Imperative.*)*Imperfect Indicative.*

<i>Fut. and Condit.</i>	je pri-ais, etc.	je chang-eais, etc.	je plac-ais, etc.
j' essaier-ai, etc.	n. pri-ions	n. chang-ions	n. plac-ions
j' essaier-ais, etc.	v. pri-iez	v. chang-iez	v. plac-iez
	ils pri-aient	ils chang-eaient	ils plac-aient

(Thus also the *Preterite Indic. and Subj.*)

(e) Verbs in *-ayer*, *-eyer*, *-uyer*, change the *y* into *i* whenever the inflection becomes mute. Those in *-ayer* and *-eyer*, however, may retain *y* throughout.

(f) Verbs in *-icr* are regular, and only mentioned here to show the working of the Imperfect Plural.

(g) Verbs in *-ger* insert an *e* between the stem and the inflection when the latter begins with *a* or *o*.

(h) Verbs in *-cer* change the *c* into *ç* whenever the inflection begins with *a* or *o*.

196

SECOND CONJUGATION.

flourir (*to bloom*) in the sense of *to flourish*, { PRES. PART.:—*florissant*.
to prosper, has :— { IMPERFECT :—*je florissais*, etc.
bénir, *to bless, to consecrate*, has two forms { *béni*, -e, *blessed*.
for the PAST PART.:— { *bénit*, -e, *consecrated*.
hair, *to hate*, has, in the Singular of PRES. INDIC. and IMPERAT., *i* instead of *ix* :—
Je hais, tu hais, il hait ; but *Plural*—*nous haïssons*, etc.

197

The Passive Voice : formed by means of—

the Auxiliary Verb *être* + *Past Participle* :—

INDICATIVE : *Present*. (See § 6.)

FIRST CONJUGATION.

Je suis honoré (honorée) de mes concitoyens. I am honoured by my fellow citizens.
Tu es honoré (honorée) de tes amis (amies). You are honoured by your friends.
Il (on) est honoré de ses disciples. He (one) is honoured by his disciples.
Elle (on) est honorée de ses élèves. She is honoured by her pupils.
Nous sommes honorés (honorées) de nos enfants. We are honoured by our children.
Vous êtes honorés (honorées) de vos parents. You are honoured by your parents.
Ils sont honorés } de tout le monde. { They are honoured by everybody.
Elles sont honorées }

In like manner with Verbs of any other conjugation regular or irregular :—

Je suis averti (avertie) } du danger. I am warned } of the danger.
Nous sommes avertis (averties) }
Je suis défendu (-ue) } par nos amis. I am defended } by our friends.
Nous sommes défendus (-ues) }

Imperfect. (For the full Imperf. of *être* see § 70.)

J'étais honoré (honorée) de vous. I was honoured by you.

Preterite. (See § 75).

Je fus honoré (honorée) d'une réponse. I was favoured with a reply.

Future Present. (See § 81).

Je serai honoré (honorée) de sa visite. I shall be honoured with his visit.

CONDITIONAL : *Present*. (See § 86.)

Je serais honoré (honorée) de vous voir. I should be honoured by seeing you.

SUBJUNCTIVE : *Present*. (See § 91).

Il est bien aise que je **sois honoré (honorée)** de mes supérieurs. *He is glad that I am honoured by my superiors.*

Imperfect. (See § 96).

Il fut bien aise que je **fusse honoré (honorée)** de chacun. *He was glad that I was honoured by everybody.*

INFINITIVE : *Present*.

C'est un plaisir d'**être honoré** de ses compatriotes. *It is a pleasure to be honoured by one's countrymen.*

COMPOUND TENSES.

INDICAT. : *Pres. Perf. or Past Indef.* (For the Past Indef. of **être** see § 122.)

J'**ai été honoré** hier d'une réponse. *I have been (was) honoured yesterday with a reply*

Past Perfect or Pluperfect. (See § 138).

J'**avais été honoré** d'une commande. *I had been favoured with an order.*

Past Anterior. (See § 138).

Dès que j'**eus été honoré** de sa visite, je partis. *As soon as I had been honoured with his call, I started.*

Future Perfect. (See § 147).

Quand j'**aurai été honoré** d'une réponse je partirai. *When I shall have been honoured with a reply I shall leave.*

CONDITIONAL : *Perfect*. (See § 157).

J'**aurais été** bien honoré d'une ligne de votre part. *I should have felt much honoured by a line from you.*

SUBJUNCTIVE : *Perfect*. (See § 168).

Il ne doute pas que j'**aie été honoré** de mes élèves. *He does not doubt that I have been honoured by my pupils.*

Pluperfect. (See § 177).

Doutiez-vous que j'**eusse été honoré** d'une réponse? *Did you doubt that I had been honoured with an answer?*

INFINITIVE : *Perfect*.

Je suis fier d'**avoir été honoré** de votre visite. *I am proud to have been honoured with your visit.*

Êtes-vous avertis du danger? *Are you informed of the danger?*

Nous **ne sommes pas avertis** du danger. *We are not informed of the danger.*

N'**avez-vous pas été averti** du danger? *Have not you been informed of the danger.*

REFLEXIVE VERBS.

Reflexive Verbs are so called because the action denoted by them reflects upon, *i.e.* affects, the agent; they are much more frequently used in French than in English. The peculiarity of their conjugation is that, though the Verb is *active* in meaning, all its Compound Tenses are formed by means of the Auxiliary Verb *être*.

199 A.—SIMPLE TENSES :—

INFINITIVE.

Il faut **se laver**. *One must wash one's self.*

PRESENT PARTICIPLE.

En **se lavant** on se rafraîchit la peau. *By washing one's self one refreshes one's skin.*

INDICATIVE : Present.

Je	me lave tous les matins.	<i>I wash myself every morning.</i>
Tu	te laves avec de l'eau chaude.	<i>Thou washest thyself with hot water.</i>
Il (on)	se lave } avec de l'eau froide.	<i>He (one) washes } himself with</i>
Le garçon	se lave }	<i>The boy washes } cold water.</i>
Elle	se lave }	<i>She washes }</i>
La fille	se lave } à sept heures.	<i>The girl washes } herself at seven o'clock.</i>
Nous	nous lavons de bonne heure.	<i>We wash ourselves early.</i>
Vous	vous lavez avant nous.	<i>You wash yourselves before us.</i>
Ils (elles)	se lavent tous les soirs.	<i>They wash themselves every evening.</i>

Obs.—me, te, se before a vowel or silent h become m', t', s': —
Je **m'**amuse, tu **t'**amuses, il **s'**amuse.

Imperfect.

Chaque matin je **me** lavais à la fontaine. *Every morning I used to wash myself at the fountain.*

Preterite.

À sept heures je **me** lavai et m'habillai. *At seven o'clock I washed and dressed myself.*

Future.

Je **me** laverai quand j'aurai de l'eau. *I shall wash myself when I have water.*

CONDITIONAL : Present.

Je **me** laverais si j'avais du savon. *I should wash myself if I had some soap.*

SUBJUNCTIVE : Present.

Il faut que je **me** lave tout de suite. *I must wash myself immediately.*

Preterite or Imperfect.

Il aurait fallu que je **me** lavasse les mains. *It would have been necessary that I should wash my hands.*

IMPERATIVE. "

Lave-toi donc! *Do wash thyself!*

Lavons-nous avant de nous habiller. *Let us wash ourselves before dressing.*

Lavez-vous tous les matins. *Wash yourselves every morning.*

200 B.—COMPOUND TENSES: all formed with *être*, and *never* with *avoir* :—

INDICATIVE: *Present Perfect* (Past Indefinite).

Je	me suis levé ¹	ce matin.	<i>I have got up this morning.</i>
Tu	t'es levé ¹	de bonne heure.	<i>Thou hast got up early.</i>
Il (on)	s'est levé	} avant nous.	<i>He (one) has risen } before us.</i>
Elle	s'est levée		
Nous	nous sommes levés ²	tard.	<i>We have risen late.</i>
Vous	vous êtes levés ²	bien tard.	<i>You have risen very late.</i>
Ils	se sont levés	} trop tard.	<i>They have risen too late.</i>
Elles	se sont levées		

1. Or **levée**, if the Subject denotes a female.

2. Or **levées**, if the Subject denotes females.

Past Perfect (Pluperfect).

Je **m'étais déjà levé** quand il sonna six heures. *I had already risen when it struck six o'clock.*

Past Anterior.

Dès que je **me fus levé** je m'habillai. *As soon as I had risen I dressed myself.*

Future Perfect.

Quand je **me serai levé** je descendrai. *When I shall have risen I shall come down.*

CONDITIONAL: *Perfect.*

Je **me serais levé** plus tôt. *I should have risen earlier.*

SUBJUNCTIVE: *Perfect.*

Il ne croit pas que je **me sois déjà levé**. *He does not believe that I have got up already.*

Pluperfect.

Il ne croyait pas que je **me fusse déjà levé**. *He did not believe that I had already risen.*

INFINITIVE: *Perfect.*

Je craignais **m'être levé** trop tard. *I was afraid I had risen too late.*

PARTICIPLE: *Perfect.*

M'étant levé je m'habillai. *Having got up I dressed myself.*

201

INTERROGATIVE.

INDICATIVE: *Present.*

Me réjouis-je¹ de votre succès?—

or, Est-ce que je **me réjouis** de votre succès? etc. *Do I rejoice at your success?—*
Cela va sans dire. *Of course I do.*

Te réjouis-tu de mon succès? *Do you rejoice at my success?*

Se réjouit-il (elle) de ton arrivée? *Does he (she) rejoice at your arrival?*

Nous réjouissons-nous de vous voir? *Do we rejoice to see you?*

Vous réjouissez-vous de leur bonne fortune. *Do you rejoice at their good luck?*

Se réjouissent-ils de mon avancement? *Do they rejoice at my promotion?*

In like manner the other Simple Tenses.

¹ On account of the unpleasant sound of two successive syllables beginning with j, the second form is preferred.

Present Perfect.

Me suis-je réjoui de vous visiter?—

or, Est-ce que je **me** suis réjoui de, etc. *Have I rejoiced to go and see you?—*
Je crois que oui! I should think so!

T'es-tu réjoui de cette bonne aubaine? *Hast thou rejoiced at this windfall?*

S'est-il réjoui avec ses amis? } *Has he (she) rejoiced with his (her)*

S'est-elle réjouie avec ses amies? } *friends?*

Nous sommes-nous réjouis de vous rencontrer? *Were we glad to meet you?*

Vous êtes-vous réjouis autant que moi? *Did you rejoice as much as I did?*

Se sont-ils réjouis } *de la réussite de ce plan? Have they rejoiced at the*

Se sont-elles réjouies } *success of this plan?*

In like manner the other Compound Tenses.

NEGATIVE.

INDICATIVE: *Present.*

Je **ne me** défends **pas** en vain. *I do not defend myself in vain.*

Tu **ne te** défends **point**. *Thou dost not defend thyself at all.*

Il (elle) **ne se** défend **jamais**. *He (she) never defends him (her) self.*

Nous **ne nous** défendons **plus**. *We do no longer defend ourselves.*

Vous **ne vous** défendez **guère**. *You hardly defend yourselves.*

Ils **ne se** défendent **pas** mal. *They do not defend themselves badly.*

IMPERATIVE.

Ne te défends **pas** inutilement. *Do not defend thyself uselessly.*

Ne nous défendons **pas** lâchement. *Let us not defend ourselves like cowards.*

Ne vous défendez **pas** de l'avoir fait. *Do not deny having done it.*

INDICATIVE: *Present Perfect.*

Je **ne me** suis **pas** entendu avec lui. *I have not agreed with him.*

Tu **ne t'es** **pas** entendu avec moi. *Thou hast not agreed with me.*

Il (elle) **ne s'est** **pas** entendu(e) avec nous. *He (she) has not agreed with us.*

Nous **ne nous** sommes **pas** entendus. *We have not come to terms.*

Vous **ne vous êtes** **pas** entendus. *You have not understood each other.*

Ils (elles) **ne se sont** **pas** entendu(e)s. *They have not acted in concert.*

In like manner the other Compound Tenses. N.B. Notice the different meanings of **s'entendre**.

INFINITIVE: *Perfect.*

Je regrette de **ne pas m'être** mieux **défendu**. *I am sorry I did not defend myself better, etc.*

Nous regrettons de **ne pas nous être** mieux **défendus**. *We are sorry we did not defend ourselves better, etc.*

PARTICIPLE: *Perfect.*

Ne m'étant **pas** mieux **défendu**, je fus vaincu. *Not having defended myself better, I was conquered.*

Ne nous étant **pas** mieux **défendus** nous fûmes défaits. *Not having defended ourselves better, we were defeated.*

203

INTERROGATIVE-NEGATIVE.

Simple Tenses.

Est-ce que je ne me contente pas de peu ? *Don't I content myself with little ?*
 Ne te contentes-tu pas de cela ? etc. *Are you not contented with that ?*

Compound Tenses.

Ne me suis-je pas contenté de votre promesse ? *Have I not contented myself with your promise ?*
 Ne t'étais-tu pas contenté de ta fortune ? *Hadst thou not contented thyself with thy fortune ?*
 Ne s'en sera-t-il pas contenté ? *Will he not have contented himself with it ?*
 Ne nous serions-nous pas contentés de cette raison ? *Should we not have been satisfied with this reason ? etc.*

Obs. 1.—In all the above instances the Reflexive Pronoun is the *Direct Object*. There are many Reflexive Verbs, however, which take an *Indirect Reflexive Object-Pronoun* :—

Je **m'arroe** ce droit. *I arrogate to myself this right.*
 Nous **nous arrogeons** ces titres. *We assume these titles, etc.*
 Je **me suis procuré** un billet. *I have secured a ticket for myself.*
 Tu **t'es procuré** un passeport. *You have procured a passport.*
 Il **s'est procuré** } une place. *He (she) has got a situation.*
 Elle **s'est procuré** }

Obs. 2.—Je **me lave les** mains. *I wash my hands.*
 Tu **te laves le** visage. *You wash your face, etc.*

204 *Reciprocal Verbs* are the same in form and conjugation as Reflexive Verbs :—

Nous **nous flattons**. *We flatter each other (one another).*
 Vous **vous flattez**. *You flatter each other (one another).*
 Ils **se flattent**. *They flatter each other (one another).*

To avoid any possible ambiguity **l'un l'autre** or **les uns les autres**, *one another*, may be added ; as,

Nous nous trahissons l'un l'autre (les uns les autres).

Notice also—

S'**entr'aider**, *to help one another.*

S'**entre déchirer**, *to tear each other to pieces, etc.*

205 Many Verbs are *reflexive in French* which are *not used reflexively in English*, others again are rendered in English by the *Passive Voice* :—

Nous **nous arrêta**mes dans cette ville. *We stopped in this town.*
 “Je ne **me rendrai** pas,” **s'écria**-t-il. *“I shall not surrender,” exclaimed he.*
 Elle **s'ennuie** dans ce village. *Time hangs heavy upon her in this village.*
 Ils **se lassent** de lui aider. *They are getting tired of helping him.*
 Elles **se repentent** de l'avoir fait. *They repent having done it.*
 Comment **vous portez**-vous ? *How do you do ?*
 Je **me porte** très bien. *I am very well.*
 Bien des choses **se sont passées** depuis lors. *Many things have occurred since then.*

Je **me** couchai à onze heures ; *I went to bed at eleven o'clock ;*
 je **me** réveillai à onze heures et demie, *I awake at half-past eleven,*
 mais je **me** rendormis bientôt, *but I soon fell asleep again,*
 et ne **me** levai pas avant huit heures. *and did not rise before eight o'clock.*
 Allons **nous** promener ! *Let us go for a walk !*
 Je **m'en** doutais bien ! *I suspected as much !*
 Vous **vous** trompez, je vous assure. *You are mistaken, I assure you.*
 Cette étoffe **se** vend fort cher. *This stuff sells at a high price.*
 Cela **s'**entend. *That is understood (a matter of course).*
 Cette expression ne **s'**emploie qu'au style poétique. *This expression is only used in poetical style.*

Others will be mentioned in the chapter of Irregular Verbs.

IMPERSONAL VERBS.

(a) Denoting the state of the atmosphere :—

- 206 Pendant un orage il **pleut**, il **grêle**, *During a thunderstorm it rains, it*
 il **tonne**, il **éclaire**. *hails, it thunders, it lightens.*
 En hiver il **gèle**, il **neige**. *In winter it freezes, it snows.*
 Au printemps il **dégèle**. *In spring it thaws.*
 Quel temps **fait-il**? *What sort of weather is it?*
 Tantôt il **fait beau** temps, tantôt **mauvais** temps. *Sometimes it is fine, at*
other times it is bad weather.
 Au mois d'août il **fait chaud**. *In August it is hot.*
 Au printemps il **fait doux**. *In spring it is mild.*
 En automne il **fait frais**. *In autumn it is cool.*
 En hiver il **fait froid**. *In winter it is cold.*
 Il **fait jour** à six heures du matin. *It is daylight at six in the morning.*
 Il **fait nuit** (sombre) après le coucher du soleil. *It is dark after sunset.*
 En novembre il **fait du brouillard**. *In November it is foggy.*
 En mars il **fait de la poussière**. *In March it is dusty.*
 Il **fait clair de lune**. *The moon shines.*

Obs.—For the Conjugation of *faire*, see § 234 and 254.

(b) Only occasionally impersonal :—

- 207 Il **s'agit de** faire son devoir. *The question is to do one's duty.*
 De quoi **s'agissait-il**?—*What was it necessary to do?*—
 Il **s'agissait de** payer. *It was necessary to pay.*
 De qui **s'agissait-il**?—*Who was concerned?*—
 Il **s'agissait de** nous. *We were concerned.*
 Il **s'agira de** votre honneur. *Your honour will be at stake.*
 Il **importe** que vous finissiez cette règle. *It is important that you should finish*
this sum.
 Il **arrive** souvent qu'on est trompé. *It often happens that one is deceived.*
 Il **semble** que cela soit facile. *It seems to be easy.*

For **il y va de**, **il faut**, **il convient**, **il vaut mieux**, **il paraît**, see Irregular Verbs. N.B. Notice the different ways of rendering **s'agir de** in English.

- 208 (c) **Il y a** quelqu'un à la porte. *There is some one at the door.*
Il y avait toujours beaucoup de monde à la foire. *There were always many people at the fair.*
Il y eut un accident fâcheux. *There was a sad accident.*
Il y aura beaucoup de fruit cette année. *There will be much fruit this year.*
Il y aurait moins de misère, **s'il y avait** plus de tempérance. *There would be less misery if there were more temperance.*
Croyez-vous **qu'il y ait** du danger? *Do you think there is any danger.*
J'ignorais **qu'il y eût** du danger. *I was not aware there was any danger.*
Il y a eu plusieurs tremblements de terre en Suisse. *There have been several earthquakes in Switzerland.*

INTERROGATIVE.

209

- Y a-t-il** loin d'ici à Genève? *Is it far from here to Geneva?*
Combien y a-t-il de Paris à Londres?—*How far is it from Paris to London?—*
Il y a environ 450 kilomètres. *About 280 miles.*
Y avait-il souvent des concerts? *Were there often concerts?*
Y a-t-il eu un orage ce matin? *Has there been a storm this morning?*
Y a-t-il longtemps que vous êtes ici?—*Have you been here a long time?—*
Mais oui, **il y a** une heure et demie (see 123, Obs.). *Why yes, an hour and a half.*
Combien y a-t-il que votre sœur est mariée?—*How long has your sister been married?—*
Il n'y a que quinze jours. *Only a fortnight.*

210

NEGATIVE.

- Il n'y a pas** de commerce dans ce pays. *There is no commerce in this country.*
Il n'y avait jamais tant de monde. *There were never so many people.*
Il n'y a guère eu de visiteurs aujourd'hui. *There have hardly been any visitors to-day.*
J'ai peur **qu'il n'y ait** point de bénéfices dans cette affaire. *I am afraid there is no profit in this affair.*

211

INTERROGATIVE-NEGATIVE.

- N'y a-t-il personne** à la maison? *Is there nobody at home?*
N'y avait-il rien à faire? *Was there nothing to be done?*
N'y aurait-il pas eu de l'avantage à accepter ses offres? *Would there have been no advantage in accepting his offers?*

212

IRREGULAR VERBS.

Before going through the Irregular Verbs strictly classified according to their inflections, it will be convenient to deal first with those which, on account of their frequent use in forming *Idiomatic* tenses and constructions, may be termed *Auxiliary* Verbs; these are:—

Aller, to go; **venir**, to come.
Devoir, to owe; **falloir**, must; **pouvoir**, can; **savoir**, to know.
Faire, to make, to do; **croire**, to believe.

213

Aller, to go; **être allé**, to have gone.
Allant, going; **allé**, gone; **étant allé**, having gone.

A.—SIMPLE TENSES—

INDICATIVE: *Present.*

Je **vais** à l'église. *I am going to church.*
 Tu **vas** à la promenade. *Thou art going for a walk.*
 Il **va** à l'école. *He is going to school.*
 Nous **allons** aux eaux. *We are going to a watering place.*
 Vous **allez** à la campagne. *You are going to the country.*
 Ils **vont** tout droit. *They are going straight on.*

IMPERFECT: J'**allais** tous les jours au marché. *I used to go every day to the market.*

PRETERITE: J'**allai** hier au bal. *I went yesterday to the ball.*

FUTURE PRES.: J'**irai** demain à Paris. *I shall go to Paris to-morrow.*

CONDIT. PRES.: J'**irais** volontiers avec vous. *I would willingly go with you.*

SUBJUNCTIVE: *Present.*

Elle désire { que j' **aie** au spectacle. { *me to go to the theatre.*
 { que tu **aies** au marché. { *thee to go to the market.*
 { qu'il **aie** à la foire. { *him to go to the fair.*
 Il se peut que { nous **allions** à la campagne. { *we go to the*
 { vous **alliez** en ville. { *country.*
 Il importe qu'ils **aillent** à la Bourse. *It is important that they go to the Exchange.*

SUBJ. IMPF.: Il désirait que j'**y allasse**. *He wanted me to go there.*

IMPERATIVE: **Va** donc! *Go then!*

Allons, enfants de la patrie. *Let us go, children of the native land.*

Allez le voir! *Go and see him!*

214 B.—COMPOUND TENSES:—

INDIC. PRES. PERF.:	Je	suis allé aujourd'hui à la banque. <i>I went to the bank to-day.</i>
PAST PERF.:	Nous	sommes allés au spectacle. <i>We went to see the play.</i>
PAST ANT.:	J'	étais allé me baigner. <i>I had gone to bathe.</i>
	Dès que je	fus allé à la chasse, il commença à pleuvoir. <i>As soon as I had gone hunting, it began raining.</i>
FUT. PERF.:	Quand je	serai allé vous aurez mon livre. <i>When I have gone you shall have my book.</i>
CONDIT. PERF.:	Je	serais allé à sa rencontre. <i>I should have gone to meet him.</i>
SUBJ. PERF.:	Il est charmé que j'y	sois allé . <i>He is glad I have gone there.</i>
SUBJ. PAST PERF.:	Il était fâché que j'y	fusse allé . <i>He was sorry I had gone there.</i>
INFINIT. PERF.:	Il doit être	allé tout seul. <i>He must have gone quite alone.</i>
PART. PERF.:	Mon ami étant allé se promener,	<i>My friend having gone for a walk, I found the door shut.</i>
	je trouvai la porte fermée.	

215 C.—IDIOMATIC TENSES FORMED WITH *aller*:—

- Je **vais me promener**. *I am going for a walk.*
 Tu **vas te baigner**. *Thou art going to bathe.*
 Il **va recommencer** de plus belle. *He is going to start afresh.*
 Nous **allons partir** pour Brighton. *We are going to leave for Brighton.*
 Vous **allez lui parler**. *You are going to talk to him.*
 Ils **voût me chercher cela**. *They are going to fetch that for me.*
- J' **allais partir**, quand il arriva. *I was going to start, when he arrived.*
 Tu **allais te coucher**, quand il est venu. *Thou wast going to bed, when he came.*
 Il **allait se lever** lorsque j'entrai. *He was going to rise when I entered.*
 Nous **allions vous voir**. *We were going to call on you.*
 Vous **alliez faire** une sottise. *You were going to do something stupid.*
 Ils **allaient se mettre** en route. *They were going to start.*

216 S'en aller, to go away; s'en être allé, to have gone away.
S'en allant, going away; s'en étant allé, having gone away.

A.—SIMPLE TENSES:—

INDICATIVE: Present.

- Je **m'en vais** aujourd'hui. *I am going away to-day.*
 Tu **t'en vas** trop tard. *Thou art going away too late.*
 Il **s'en va** immédiatement. *He is going away immediately.*
 Nous **nous en allons** pour tout de bon. *We are going away for good.*
 Vous **vous en allez** trop tôt. *You are going away too early.*
 Ils **s'en vont** ensemble. *They are going away together.*

IMPERFECT: Je **m'en** allais, quand il m'accosta. *I was going away, when he came up to me.*

PRETERITE: Je **m'en** allai à deux heures. *I went away at two o'clock.*

FUT. PRES.: Je **m'en** irai dans un moment. *I shall go away in a moment.*

COND. PRES.: Je **m'en** irais s'il faisait beau. *I should go away if it were fine.*

SURJ. PRES.: Il faut que je **m'en** aille ce soir. *I must go away this evening.*

SUBJ. IMPF.: Il fallut que je **m'en** allasse. *I had to go away.*

IMPERATIVE.

Va-t'en porter ma lettre. *Go and take my letter.*

Allons-nous-en d'ici. *Let us go away from here.*

Allez-vous-en, vauriens que vous êtes! *Off with you, you good-for-nothing fellows!*

217 B.—COMPOUND TENSES:—

INDICATIVE: Present Perfect.

Je **m'en** suis allé à son insu. *I have gone away without his knowledge.*

Tu **t'en** es allé sans rien dire. *Thou hast gone away without saying a word.*

Il **s'en** est allé furtivement. *He has gone away stealthily.*

Elle **s'en** est allée toute seule. *She has gone away quite alone.*

Nous **nous en** sommes allés à la dérobée. *We have gone away by stealth.*

Vous **vous en** êtes allés malgré vous. *You have gone away in spite of yourself.*

Ils **s'en** sont allés }
Elles **s'en** sont allées } pour toujours. *They have gone away for ever.*

PAST PERF.: Je **m'en** étais allé avant lui. *I had gone away before him.*

PAST ANT.: Dès que je **m'en** fus allé, il arriva. *As soon as I had gone away, he arrived.*

FUT. PERF.: Quand je **m'en** serai allé, il sera tranquille. *When I (shall) have gone away, he will be at ease.*

COND. PERF.: Je **m'en** serais allé, si j'avais eu le temps. *I should have gone away, if I had had time.*

SUBJ. PERF.: Il est surpris que je **m'en** sois allé si tôt. *He is surprised I have gone away so early.*

SUBJ. PLUFF.: Il était surpris que je **m'en** fusse allé si tard. *He was surprised I should have gone away so late.*

218

INTERROGATIVE.

INDICATIVE: *Present*.

M'en vais-je trop tôt? *Am I going away too early?*
T'en vas-tu sans mot dire? *Art thou going away without saying a word?*
S'en va-t-il seul? *Does he go away alone?*
S'en va-t-elle tout de bon? *Does she go away for good?*
Nous en allons-nous ensemble? *Are we going away together?*
Vous en allez-vous avec nous? *Are you going away with us?*
S'en vont-ils faire un voyage? *Are they going to take a journey?*

¹ Or—Est-ce que je m'en vais? etc.

PRESENT PERFECT (*Past Indefinite*).

M'en suis-je allé trop tard? *Have I gone away too late?*
T'en es-tu allé avec lui? *Hast thou gone away with him?*
S'en est-il allé } la semaine *Did he (she) go away last week?*
S'en est-elle allée } dernière?
Nous en sommes-nous allés trop tôt? *Have we gone away too early?*
Vous en êtes-vous allés avec eux? *Have you gone away with them?*
S'en sont-ils allés } en bateau? *Have they rowed away?*
S'en sont-elles allées }
Past Perf. M'en étais-je allé? Had I gone away? etc.,

and so with the other Compound Tenses.

219

NEGATIVE.

INF. Pres. Il dit qu'il ne veut pas s'en aller. *He says he won't go away.*
INF. Perf. Il regrette de ne pas s'en être allé. *He is sorry he has not gone away.*

INDICATIVE: *Present*.

Je ne m'en vais pas aujourd'hui. *I do not go away to-day.*
Tu ne t'en vas pas de bon gré. *You do not go away of your own accord.*
Il ne s'en va pas volontiers. *He does not go away willingly.*
Nous ne nous en allons pas. *We do not go away.*
Vous ne vous en allez pas assez vite. *You are not going away quickly enough.*
Ils ne s'en vont pas avec vous. *They do not go away with you.*
Impf. Je ne m'en allais jamais de bon gré. *I never used to go away of my own accord.*

IMPERATIVE.

Ne t'en vas pas si tôt. *Do not go away so soon.*
Ne nous en allons pas ce soir. *Let us not go away this evening.*
Ne vous en allez pas sans nous. *Don't go away without us.*

PRESENT PERFECT (*Past Indefinite*).

Je ne m'en suis pas allé chez moi. *I have not gone away home.*
Tu ne t'en es pas allé chez toi. *Thou hast not gone away home.*
Il ne s'en est pas allé chez lui. } *He (she) has not gone home.*
Elle ne s'en est pas allée chez elle. }
Nous ne nous en sommes pas allé(e)s chez vous. *We have not gone home.*
Vous ne vous en êtes pas allé(e)s chez vous. *You have not gone home.*
Ils ne s'en sont pas allés chez eux. } *They have not gone home.*
Elles ne s'en sont pas allées chez elles. }
Past Perf. Je ne m'en étais pas encore allé. *I had not gone away yet.*

220

INTERROGATIVE-NEGATIVE.

INDICATIVE: *Present.*

Ne m'en vais-je pas assez tôt? *Am I not going away early enough?*
Ne t'en vas-tu pas aujourd'hui? *Art thou not going away to-day?*
Ne s'en va-t-il pas ce soir? *Is he not going away to-night?*

PRESENT: *Perfect.*

Ne m'en suis-je pas allé ponctuellement? *Have I not gone away punctually?*
 and so all other Tenses.

221 Venir, *to come*, see § 243.

Il faut **venir**, *it is necessary to come.* Il doit être **venu**, *he must have come.*
 Tout **en venant** il me raconta l'histoire. *Whilst coming along he told me the story.*
 Étant **venu** trop tard il manqua le train. *Having come too late he missed the train.*

Idiomatic construction of *venir* :—

- (a) Je **viens de** me baigner. *I have just taken a bathe.*
 Tu **viens de** te lever. *Thou hast just got up.*
 Il **vient de** se raser. *He has just shaved himself.*
 Nous **venons de** nous promener. *We have just been for a walk.*
 Vous **venez de** vous amuser. *You have just amused yourselves.*
 Ils **viennent de** s'entendre. *They have just come to an understanding.*
 (b) Je **venais de** me baigner. *I had just been bathing.*
 Tu **venais de** t'habiller. *Thou hadst just been dressing.*
 (c) Je **viens** lui parler. *I come to speak to him.*
 (d) Je **venais** à parler de lui. *I chanced to speak of him.*

222 Devoir, *to owe, to be one's duty, to intend (morally), to have to, to be appointed (bound) to*, see § 247.INDICATIVE: *Present.*

Je **dois** rester jusqu'à demain. *I am to stay till to-morrow.*
 Tu **dois** sortir ce soir. *Thou art to go out this evening.*
 Il **doit** passer l'hiver à Pau. *He is to spend the winter at Pau.*
 Nous **devons** y rester toute la journée. *We are to stay there all day.*
 Vous **devez** revenir sur vos pas. *You are to retrace your steps.*
 Ils **doivent** se trouver au rendezvous. *They are to keep their appointment.*

Imperfect.

Je **dev-ais** rester jusqu'au lendemain. *I was to have stayed until the next day,*

Preterite.

Il **dut** rester jusqu'à minuit. *He had to stay till midnight.*

Present Perfect.

J'**ai dû** y aller. *I have been obliged to go there.*
 Tu **as dû** t'ennuyer à mort. *You must have been bored to death.*

CONDITIONAL: *Present.*

Je **devrais** rester jusqu'à demain. *I ought to stay until to-morrow.*
 Tu **devrais** sortir ce soir. *Thou oughtst to go out this evening.*

CONDITIONAL: *Perfect.*

J'**aurais dû** rester plus longtemps. *I ought to (should) have remained longer.*

Je **crois devoir** vous dire la vérité. *I think it right to tell you the truth.*
 Racine **doit** beaucoup à Euripide. *Racine is much indebted to Euripides.*
 Cela **a dû** vous chagriner. *That must have grieved you.*
 Un fils **doit** respect à son père. *A son owes respect to his father.*

223 Falloir, *to be necessary, to want, must*, see § 246.

Idiomatic constructions:—

(a) With a *Noun-Complement* :

INDICATIVE: *Present.*

Il **me faut** du vin. *I want (some) wine.*
 Il **te faut** de l'argent. *Thou wantest (some) money.*
 Il **lui faut** de la viande. *He wants (some) meat.*
 Il **faut** une plume à cet écolier.¹ *This pupil wants a pen.*
 Il **lui faut** de l'eau. *She wants (some) water.*
 Il **nous faut** des raisins. *We want (some) grapes.*
 Il **vous faut** des épiceries. *You want (some) groceries.*
 Il **leur faut** des épices. *They want (some) spices.*

¹ Or—il **faut à cet écolier** une plume.

and so with other Tenses:—

Il **me fallait** (fallut) bien de l'argent. *I wanted much money.*
 Il **me faudra** beaucoup de patience. *I shall want much patience.*
 Il **me faudrait** trois exemplaires. *I should want three copies.*
 Il **m'aurait fallu** plus de ressources. *I should have wanted more resources.*
 Croyez-vous qu'il **me faille** un passeport? *Do you think I want a passport?*
 Il ne croyait pas qu'il **me fallût** un guide. *He did not think I wanted a guide.*

INTERROGATIVE AND NEGATIVE.

Me faut-il tant de bagage?—*Do I want so much luggage?*
 Il **ne vous faut** guère qu'une valise. *You want hardly anything but a port-manteau.*
 Combien **lui faut-il** d'argent? *How much money does he want?*
 Combien **vous faut-il** de tapis? *How many carpets do you want?*

224 (b) With a *Verb-Complement* in the *Infinitive* :—INDICATIVE: *Present*.

- Il **me faut** commencer à midi.[†] *I must begin at twelve o'clock.*
 Il **te faut** revenir tout de suite. *Thou must return immediately.*
 Il **lui faut** rester jusqu'au soir. *He must stay until evening.*
 Il **lui faut** tricoter une paire de bas. *She must knit a pair of stockings.*
 Il **vous faut** renoncer à ce projet. *You must renounce this project.*
 Il **leur faut** corriger leurs thèmes. *They must correct their exercises.*

[†] Or also without **me, te, etc.**, when it is plain from the context *who must*, or when used in a general sense :—

- Il faut payer. *One must pay.* Il faudra voir cela. *That remains yet to be seen.*
 Il faut être patient dans l'adversité. *One must be patient in adversity.*

Obs.—If the logical Subject is a *Noun*, the *Subjunctive* with **que** must be used instead of the *Infinitive*, see (c).

225 (c) With **que** and a *Verb-Complement* in the *Subjunctive* :—

- Il faut que je **revienne** demain. *I must come back to-morrow.*
 Il faudra que je **revienne**. *I shall have to come back.*
 Il faut (faudra) que tu **aïles** aux bains de mer. *Thou must go to the seaside.*
 Il faut (faudra) qu'il **s'en aille**. *He must (will have to) go away.*
 Il faut (faudra) qu'elle **se hâte** de partir. *She must (will have to) hasten to start.*
 Il a fallu (faudra) que nous **restions**. *We have been (shall be) obliged to stay.*
 Il fallut que je **revinsse** sur mes pas. *I had to retrace my steps.*
 Il aurait fallu que tu y **allasses**. *It would have been necessary for thee to be there.*

226 **Vouloir**, *will, to wish, to want, to be inclined (willing) to*, see § 246.

- (a) 1. Que **voulez-vous**? *What do you want?*
 Que **me voulez-vous**? *What can I do for you?*
 Je **veux** aller avec vous. *I want to go with you.*
 Je **voudrais** aller avec vous. *I should like to go with you.*
 Tu **voulais** } t'en aller tout } *You wanted } to go away*
 Tu **aurais voulu** } seul. } *You would have liked } alone.*
 Il **voulut** absolument retourner chez lui. *He insisted on returning home.*
Veillez m'éclairer jusqu'au bas de l'escalier. *Please (would you be so good as) to light me down stairs.*
2. Je **voudrais** bien vous parler. *I should like to speak to you.*
 J'**aurais voulu** m'embarquer. *I should have liked to embark.*
3. Quel cheval **voulez-vous** donc? *What horse do you want then?*
 Je **veux** mon argent. *I want my money.*

227 (b) With the *Verb-Complement* in the *Subjunctive*, if the two Verbs have not the same Subject :—

- Je **veux** qu'il revienne. *I want him to return.*
 Il **aurait voulu** que tu y allasses. *He would have liked you to go there.*

Je ne **veux** pas que vous lui parliez. *I do not want you to speak to him.*
Que **voulez**-vous que j'y fasse? *What would you have me do?*

Obs. 1. To wish in the sense of wishing good day, happy new year, etc., is rendered by
souhaiter :—

Je vous souhaite le bon jour. *I wish you a good morning.*

Obs. 2. Veux-tu bien te taire! *Do be quiet!*

Que **veut dire** ce mot? *What does this word mean?*

228 Pouvoir, *can, may, to be able*, see § 247.

Je ne **puis** pas vous le dire. *I cannot tell you.*

J'**aurais pu** le faire sans vous. *I could (might) have done it without you.*

Vous **pouvez** venir quand vous voudrez. *You may come when you like.*

Pourriez-vous me dire à qui je dois m'adresser? *Could you tell me to whom I must apply?*

229 Idioms :—

Je n'en puis plus. *I am knocked up. (I am exhausted.)*

Je n'en peux mais. *It is not my fault.*

Se peut-il que vous soyez si fâché? *Can it be that you are so angry?*

Puisse-t-il réussir! *May he succeed!*

Vouloir c'est pouvoir. *Where there is will there is a way.*

Savoir c'est pouvoir. *Knowledge is power.*

230 Savoir, *to know, to know of, to be aware*, see § 247.

INDICATIVE AND SUBJUNCTIVE.

Je **sais** ce que je veux; *I know what I want;*

tu **sais** ce que tu veux, etc. *you know what you want, etc.*

Je ne savais pas ce que je voulais. *I did not know what I wanted.*

Je sais le faire. *I know how to (can) do it.*

Je sais un excellent maître de musique. *I know of an excellent music master.*

Je sais cette mélodie. *I know (I can sing, play, etc.) this melody.*

Je vous **sais bon gré** d'être venu. *I thank you for having come.*

Je lui **sais mauvais gré** de cela. *I am vexed with him for that.*

Je saurai bien de quoi il s'agit. *I shall know what it is about.*

Il faut que je **sache** la vérité. *I must know the truth.*

Je veux que vous **sachiez** à quoi vous en tenir. *I want you to know how matters stand.*

Il a **su** le persuader. *He has managed to persuade him.*

231 Croire, *to believe, to think*, see § 250.

1. Je **crois** le connaître. *I think I know him.*

J'ai **cru** devoir vous dire. *I thought it my duty to tell you.*

Il a **cru** bien faire. *He thought he was acting properly.*

2. Je **le crois** homme d'honneur. *I believe him to be an honest man.*

Je **lui crois** de grands moyens. *I give him credit for great abilities.*

3. **Croyez**-vous ce médecin? *Do you believe this doctor?*

Croyez-vous **aux** médecins? *Do you believe in uoctors?*

4. Croyez-vous qu'il vienne? *Do you think he will come?*

Je crois que non. *I think not.*

Et moi, je crois que si. *And I think he will.*

232 **Faire**, *to do, to make, to get, to cause, to order*, see § 254.

(a) Different equivalents of **faire** in English :—

Je **fais** mon devoir. *I am doing my duty.*
 Tu ne **fais** pas attention. *You do not pay attention.*
 L'abeille **fait** du miel. *The bee makes honey.*
 Nous **faisons** une promenade. *We are taking a walk.*
 Vous **faites** les malades. *You pretend (feign) to be ill.*
 Ils **font** une partie de whist. *They are having a game at whist.*
 Cela **fait** plaisir à voir. *It is a pleasure to see that.*
 Il **s'est fait** soldat. *He has become a soldier.*

233 (b) Verbal phrases composed of **faire** + a Noun :—

Cela **fait pitié** (de la peine) à voir. *It excites pity to see that.*
 Cela **fait mal**. *That hurts.*
 Vous me **faites tort**. *You do me wrong.*
 Les soldats **furent feu**. *The soldiers fired.*
 Je **fais cas** de cet homme. *I value that man.*
 Il me **fit signe** de rester. *He beckoned to me to stay.*
 Vous me **faites peur**. *You frighten me.*
 Où a-t-il **fait ses études**? *Where has he studied?*
 Elles sont allées **faire des emplettes**. *They have gone shopping.*

234 (c) **Faire**, used to form Impersonal Verbal Phrases denoting the state of the atmosphere.

Il **fait** beau temps (mauvais temps). *It is fine weather (bad weather).*
 Il **faisait** chaud pendant la moisson. *It was hot during the harvest.*
 Il **fit** froid pendant la campagne de 1812. *It was cold during the campaign of 1812.*
 Il **fera** humide au mois de Novembre. *It will be damp in November.*
 Il **ferait** plus frais s'il ne faisait pas du soleil. *It would be cooler if the sun did not shine.*
 Croyez-vous qu'il **fasse crotté**? *Do you think it is dirty?*
 Je ne savais pas qu'il **fût** si sombre. *I did not know it was so dark.*
 Il **a fait** bien lourd avant l'orage. *It was very sultry before the storm.*
 Il **avait fait** de la poussière. *It had been dusty.*
 Dès qu'il **eut fait** des éclairs il tonna. *As soon as it had lightened it thundered.*
 Quand il **aura fait** de l'orage il fera plus frais. *When we have had a storm it will be cooler.*
 Il **n'aurait pas fait** si nuit s'il avait fait clair de lune. *It would not have been so dark if it had been moonlight.*
 Quoiqu'il **ait fait** du soleil, il fait encore de la boue. *Although the sun has been shining it is still dirty.*
 Bien qu'il **eût fait** du vent, les routes n'étaient pas propres. *Although it had been windy the streets were not clean.*

235 (d) **Faire** with an *Infinitive-Complement*: the Infinitive after **faire** is always used in the *Active Voice* :—

1. Je le **fais travailler**. *I make him (cause him to) work.*
On le **fit sortir**. *They made him go out.*

2. A Calais il vous **faudra faire** visiter vos bagages. *At Calais you will have to get your luggage visited.*

Faites donc **racommoder** vos souliers! *Do get your shoes mended!*

Je **me suis fait faire** cet habillement *I have got this suit made*
à Londres. *in London.*

Où avez-vous **fait relier** vos livres? *Where did you get your books bound?*

Ils ont **fait repasser** leur linge. *They have had their linen ironed.*

Savez-vous vous **faire comprendre** à Paris? *Can you make yourself understood in Paris?*

Par qui **faites-vous faire** le jardin? *By whom do you get the garden done up?*

236 Idiomatic uses of **Avoir** :—

J'**ai beau** lui parler, il est sourd de cette oreille. *It is in vain for me to speak to him, he won't listen to that.*

J'**eus** de ses nouvelles. *I heard from him.*

Votre ami **a mauvaise mine**, qu'a-t-il? *Your friend looks ill, what is the matter with him?*

Il **a mal à la tête** et **mal aux dents**. *He has a head-ache and the tooth-ache.*

Vous **avez l'air** soucieux, **avez-vous eu** de mauvaises **nouvelles** de chez vous? *You look anxious, have you had bad news from home?*

Quel **âge avez-vous** donc?—*How old are you then?*

Je n'**ai** que treize ans.—*I am only thirteen.*

SECOND CONJUGATION. All Irregular Verbs of the Second Conjugation differ from the *Regular*—

(1) in the absence of the character **-iss-** in the **Pres. Part.** and its derived tenses; and

(2) in the **Present** Tense inflections (singular) which are: **-s, -s, -t,** or **-e, -es, -e,** instead of **-is, -is, -it.**

N.B.—The **Future**, **Imperative**, and **Subjunctive** are only given when **irregularly** formed.

The **Conditional** always follows the **Future**.

Tenses, or parts of Tenses, irregularly formed are in **black type**.

(a) I Verbs:—PAST PART., -i or -ert; PRETERITE, -is.

Infinitive (Future if Irregular).	Participles (Pres. and Past).	Present Indicative.	Preterite.	Remarks, Compound Verbs, etc.
238 sent-ir , <i>to feel, to smell.</i>	Pres. sent-ant Past. sent-i	je sen-s, n. sent-ons tu sen-s, v. sent-ez il sen-t, ils sent-ent	je sent-is	consentir, to consent; ressentir, <i>to forebode;</i> ressentir, to resent.
dorm-ir , <i>to sleep.</i>	dorm-ant dorm-i	je dor-s, n. dorm-ons	je dorm-is	endormir, to lull to sleep. s'endormir, to fall asleep.
ment-ir , <i>to lie.</i>	ment-ant ment-i	je men-s, n. ment-ons	je ment-is	démentir, to give the lie.
part-ir , <i>to set out.</i>	part-ant part-i	je par-s, n. part-ons	je part-is	répartir, to distribute, is conjugated <i>regularly;</i> repartir, to start again, like partir.
sort-ir , <i>to go out.</i>	sort-ant sort-i	je sor-s, n. sort-ons	je sort-is	ressortir, to be in the jurisdiction, is conjugated <i>regularly.</i>
serv-ir , <i>to serve.</i>	serv-ant serv-i	je ser-s, n. serv-ons	je serv-is	asservir, to enslave, is conjugated <i>regularly.</i>

se repent-ir, <i>to repent.</i>	se repent-ant repent-i	je me repen-s n. n. repent-ons	je me repent-is
bouill-ir, <i>to boil</i> (intransit.)	bouill-ant bouill-i	je bou-s, n. bouill-ons tu bou-s, v. bouill-ez il bou-t, ils bouill-ent	je bouill-is
fu-ir, <i>to flee.</i>	fuy-ant fu-i	je fui-s, n. fuy-ons tu fui-s, v. fuy-ez il fui-t, ils fui-ent	je fui-s
239 acquér-ir, <i>to acquire.</i> FUT. j'acquér-ral.	acquér-ant acqu-is	j' acquier-s, n. acquér-ons tu acquier-s, v. acquér-ez il acquier-t, ils acquér-ent	j' acqu-is
		PRES. SUBJ.	
		j' acquièr-e, n. acquér-ions tu acquièr-es, v. acquér-iez il acquièr-e, ils acquièr-ent	
240 assail-ir, <i>to assail.</i>	assail-ant assail-i	j' assail-e, n. assaill-ons tu assail-es, v. assail-ez il assail-e, ils assaill-ent	j' assail-is
cueill-ir, <i>to gather, collect.</i> FUT. je cueille-ral.	cueill-ant cueill-i	je cueill-e, n. cueill-ons tu cueill-es, v. cueill-ez il cueill-e, ils cueill-ent	je cueill-is
241 ouvr-ir, <i>to open.</i>	ouvr-ant ouv-ert	j' ouvr-e, n. ouvr-ons tu ouvr-es, v. ouvr-ez il ouvr-e, ils ouvr-ent	j' ouvr-is
			<i>to boil</i> (transitive) = faire bouillir.
			s'enfuir, to run away.
			conquérir, to conquer. s'enquérir, to inquire. requérir, to require. quérir, to fetch (Infinitive only).
			tressaillir, to start, to shudder. saillir (3rd pers. only), to jut out. saillir, to gush, conjug. regularly.
			accueillir, to welcome, to receive. recueillir, to gather, to reap.
			ouvrir, to reopen. couvrir, to cover. découvrir, to discover. offrir, to offer. souffrir, to suffer.

(b) U Verbs:—PAST PART., -u; PRETERITE, -is, -s or -us.

Infinitive (Future if Irregular.)	Participles.	Present Indicative.	Present Subjunctive (if Irregular.)	Preterite.	Compound Verbs.
242 vêt-ir , <i>to clothe.</i>	vêt-ant vêt-u	je vêt-s , tu vêt-s , il vêt , n. vêt- ons v. vêt- ez ils vêt- ent		je vêt-is	revêtir, <i>to invest.</i>
ven-ir , <i>to come.</i> FUT. je viendrai .	ven-ant ven-u	je vien-s , tu vien-s , il vien-t , n. ven- ons v. ven- ez ils vienn-ent	vienn-e , vienn-es , vienn-e , ven- ions ven- iez vienn-ent	je vin-s , - s , - t vin-mes , - tes vin-rent	convenir, <i>to agree</i> , etc. PRES. PERF. Je suis venu, etc. (§ 126).
ten-ir , <i>to hold.</i> FUT. je tiendrai .	ten-ant ten-u	je tien-s , tu tien-s , il tien-t , n. ten- ons v. ten- ez ils tienn-ent	tienn-e , tienn-es , tienn-e , ten- ions ten- iez tienn-ent	je tin-s , - s , - t tin-mes , - tes tin-rent	appartenir, <i>to belong</i> , etc.
cour-ir , <i>to run.</i> FUT. je courrai .	cour-ant cour-u	je cour-s , tu cour-s , il cour-t , n. cour- ons v. cour- ez ils cour- ent		je cour-us	accourir, <i>to hasten to</i> . secourir, <i>to help</i> , etc.
mour-ir , <i>to die.</i> FUT. je mourrai .	mour-ant mort	je meur-s , tu meur-s , il meur-t , n. mour- ons v. mour- ez ils meur-ent	meur-e , meur-es , meur-e , mour- ons mour- ez meur-ent	je mour-us	PRES. PERF. je suis mort. elle est morte, etc.

(c) Defective Verbs in -ir. (Forms in brackets are unusual.)

sir, <i>to tie, to rest.</i>	gis-ant* P. PAST.— <i>wanting</i> il git	— — ils gis-ent	n. gis-ons* v. gis-ent ils gis-ent	(<i>wanting</i>)	IMPERF. je gis*ais , etc. *s pronounced = ss. Obs. Ci-gît, <i>here lies</i> (on gravestones). défaillir, <i>to feel faint</i> , in the Infinitive only. †The 1st and 2nd pers. are hardly ever used.
il-ir, <i>to fail.</i>	(faill-ant) faill-i	(je faux , (tu faux , il faut ,	n. faill-ons†) v. faill-ent†) ils faill-ent	je faill-is	

férir, *to strike*, is used in the *Infinitive only*: **sans coup férir**, *without striking a blow*.
ouïr, *to hear, oui, heard*; used in the *Infinitive* and *Past Part. only*.

THIRD CONJUGATION.

(a) U Verbs:—PAST PART., -u; PRETERITE, -us.

Infinitive (Future if Irregular).	Participles.	Present Indicative.	Present Subjunctive (if Irregular).	Preterite.	Remarks, etc.
voul-oir , <i>to wish, to want.</i> FUT. je voudrai .	voul-ant voul-u	je veu-x , tu veu-x , il veu-t ,	veull-e , veull-es , veull-e , veull-ent	je voul-us	IMPERATIVE. veuille } <i>be so good</i> veuilions } <i>as to...</i> veuillez
val-oir , <i>to be worth.</i> FUT. je vaudrai .	val-ant val-u	je vau-x , tu vau-x , il vau-t ,	vail-e , vail-es , vail-e , vail-ent	je val-us	prévaloir, <i>to prevail</i> PRES. SUBJ.: je prévale

Infinitive (Future if Irregular).	Participles.	Present Indicative.	Present Subjunctive (if Irregular.)	Preterite.	Remarks, etc.
fall-oir, must, to be necessary. FUT. il faudra.	(wanting) fall-u	il me faut, il te faut, il lui faut,	il me faille, il te faille, il lui faille, etc.	il me fallut, il te fallut, etc.	falloir is <i>impers.</i> , see §§ 223-5.
déch-oir, to decay. FUT. je déch-errai.	(wanting) (IMPF. déchoyais) déch-u	je déchoi-s, tu déchoi-s, il déchoi-t,	n. déchoy-ons v. déchoy-ez ils déchoi-ent	je déch-us	
éch-oir, to fall due. FUT. écherra.	éch-é-ant éch-u	— , — , il échoi-t,	— — —	il éch-u-t	

247

(b) PAST PART. and PRETERITE *contracted*.

recev-oir, to receive. FUT. je recevrai.	recev-ant reç-u	je reçois, tu reçois, il reçoit-s,	n. recev-ons v. recev-ez ils reçoiv-ent	reçoiv-e, recev-ions reçoiv-es, recev-iez reçoiv-e, reçoiv-ent	apercevoir, to perceive concevoir, to conceive percevoir, to collect
lev-oir, to owe. FUT. je devrai.	dev-ant dû, f. due	je dois, tu dois, il doi-t,	n. dev-ons v. dev-ez ils doiv-ent	doiv-e, dev-ions doiv-es, dev-iez doiv-e, doiv-ent	redevoir to still owe
sav-oir, to know. FUT. je saurai.	sach-ant* (* IMPF. je sav-ais) su	je sais, tu sais, il sai-t,	n. sav-ons v. sav-ez ils sav-ent	sach-e, sach-ions sach-es, sach-iez sach-e, sach-ent	IMPERATIVE. sing. (2) sache pl. (1) sachez (2) sachez
pouv-oir, can, to be able. FUT. je pourrai.	pouv-ant pu	je peu-x,* tu peu-x, il peu-t,	n. pouv-ons v. pouv-ez ils peuv-ent	puiss-e, puiss-ions puiss-es, puiss-iez puiss-e, puiss-ent	* or—je puis; Interrog. always puis-je ?

ouvoir,
to move.
UT. je **mouvrai.**

ouvoir,
to rain.

oir,
to see.
UT. je **verrai.**

mouv-ant

mu

pleuv-ant
plu

voy-ant

vu

je **meu-s,**
tu **meu-s,**
il **meu-t,**

il **pleut,**

je **voi-s,**
tu **voi-s,**
il **voi-t,**

n. mouv-ons
v. mouv-ez
ils **meuv-ent**

—
—

n. **voy-ons**
v. **voy-ez**
ils voi-ent

meuv-e,
meuv-es,
meuv-e,
meuv-ent

je **mu-s**

il **plu-t**

je **vi-s**

émouvoir, to affect.
promouvoir, to promote.

pourvoir, to provide.
{ PRÉT. pourvu-
FUT. pourvoir.
prévoir, to foresee.
{ PRÉT. prévis,
FUT. prévoir

(c) I Verbs:—PAST PART., -is; PRETERITE, -is.

sse-oir,
to seat.
UT. j'**assiérai**
(or—j'**assoirai**).

surse-oir,
to supersede.

seoir, *to sit,*
to be becoming.
FUT. il **siéra.**

assey-ant
(as oy-ant)
assis

sursoy-ant

sursis

sey-ant

j' **assied-s,** n. **assey-ons**
tu **assied-s,** v. **assey-ez**
il **assied,** ils **assey-ent**
or—

j' **assoï-s,** n. **assey-ons**
tu **assoï-s,** v. **assey-ez**
il **assoï-t,** ils **assoï-ent**

je **sursoï-s,** n. **sursoy-ons**
tu **sursoï-s,** v. **sursoy-ez**
il **sursoï-t,** ils **sursoï-ent**

—
—
il **sied,** ils **sié-ent**

assey-ions
assey-iez
assey-ent

assey-ions, etc.

j' **assi-s**

je **sursi-s**

(wanting)

s'asseoir, (reflex.
to sit down:—
je m'assieds, etc.
tu t'assieds, etc.
je me suis assis, e

seoir, to sit, to be situ-
ated:—
PRES. PART.: **oéant,**
sitting.
PAST PART.: **sis, f.**
sise, situated.

FOURTH CONJUGATION.

(a) U Verbs:—PAST PART., -u; PRETERITE, -us.

Infinitive.	Participles.	Present Indicative.	Preterite.	Remarks, Compound Verbs.
249 (1) <i>connaître</i> , to know.	<i>connai-ss-ant</i> <i>conn-u</i>	<i>je connai-s, n. connai-ss-ons</i> <i>tu connai-s, v. connai-ss-es</i> <i>il connai-t, ils connai-ss-ent</i>	<i>je connu-s</i>	<i>paraître, to appear.</i> <i>disparaître, to disappear, etc.</i> Obs. The <i>i</i> takes a circumflex before a -t.
<i>paître</i> , to graze.	<i>pai-ss-ant</i> (wanting)	<i>je pai-s, n. pai-ss-ons</i>	(wanting)	<i>repâître, to feed, PRET. repus,</i> <i>P.P. repu.</i> <i>se repaître de, to feed on.</i>
<i>croître</i> , to grow.	<i>croi-ss-ant</i> <i>crû</i>	<i>je croi-s, n. croi-ss-ons</i> <i>tu croi-s, v. croi-ss-es</i> <i>il croi-t, ils croi-ss-ent</i>	<i>je crû-s</i>	<i>accroître, to increase.</i> <i>décroître, to decrease.</i>
<i>naître</i> , to be born.	<i>nai-ss-ant</i> <i>né</i>	<i>je nai-s, n. nai-ss-ons</i> <i>tu nai-s, v. nai-ss-es</i> <i>il nai-t, ils nai-ss-ent</i>	<i>je naqui-s</i>	<i>je suis né, I was born, etc.</i> <i>renaître { to be born again.</i> <i> { to revive (intrans.).</i>
250 (2) <i>plaire</i> , to please.	<i>plai-s-ant</i> <i>plu</i>	<i>je plai-s, n. plai-s-ons</i> <i>tu plai-s, v. plai-s-es</i> <i>il plai-t, ils plai-s-ent</i>	<i>je plu-s</i>	<i>déplaire, to displease.</i> <i>complaire.</i>
<i>lire</i> , to read.	<i>li-s-ant</i> <i>lu</i>	<i>je li-s, n. li-s-ons</i> <i>tu li-s, v. li-s-es</i> <i>il li-t, ils li-s-ent</i>	<i>je lu-s</i>	<i>élire, to elect.</i> <i>relire, to read again.</i>

taire,
to keep secret.

boire,
to drink.

croire,
to believe.

conclure,
to conclude.

251 (3) absoudre,
to absolve.

résoudre,
to resolve,
to change into.

moudre,
to grind.

coudre,
to sew.

tais-ant tú, f. tue	je tai-s, tu tai-s, il tai-t,	n. tai-s-ous v. tai-s-ez ils tai-s-ent	je tu-s
bu-v-ant bu	je boi-s, tu boi-s, il boi-t,	n. bu-v-ous v. bu-v-ez ils boi-v-ent	je bu-s
croi-ant cru	je croi-s, tu croi-s, il croi-t,	n. croi-ous v. croi-ez ils croi-ent	je cru-s
conclu-ant conclu	je conclu-s, tu conclu-s, il conclu-t,	n. conclu-ous v. conclu-ez ils conclu-ent	je conclu-s
absol-v-ant absous*	j' absou-s, tu absou-s, il absou-t,	n. absol-v-ous v. absol-v-ez ils absol-v-ent	je (wanting)
résol-v-ant résous,* résolu†	je résou-s, tu résou-s, il résou-t,	n. résol-v-ous v. résol-v-ez ils résol-v-ent	je résol-u-s
mou-l-ant mou-l-u	je mou-d-s, tu mou-d-s, il mou-d,	n. mou-l-ous v. mou-l-ez ils mou-l-ent	je moulu-s
coud-re, cou-s-ant cou-s-u	je coud-s, tu coud-s, il coud,	n. cou-s-ous v. cou-s-ez ils cou-s-ent	je cousi-s

se taire, *to be silent (hushed)*:
je me tais,
tu te tais,
il se tait, etc.

boire (intransitive), *to blot*.
PRES. SUBJ. boive-e, -es, -e;
bu-v-ions, -iez;
boiv-ent.

faire accroire, *to make believe*.
PRES. SUBJ. je croi-e, -es, -e,
n. croy-ions, -iez,
ils croi-ent.

*absous, f. absoute, *absolved*,
acquitted.
absolu (adj.), *absolute*.

*résous, *dissolved*.
résolu, *determined*.

émoudre, *to whet*.
rémoudre, *to whet again*.
remoudre, *to grind again*.

découdre, *to unsew, to rip*.
recoudre, *to sew again*.

(b) I Verbs :—PAST PART., -t; PRETERITE, -is.

Infinitive (Future if Irregular).	Participles.	Present Indicative.		Preterite.	Additions, Remarks, Compound Verbs.
viv-re, <i>to live.</i>	viv-ant vécu	je vi-s, tu vi-s, il vi-t,	n. viv-ons v. viv-ez ils viv-ent	je vécu-s	revivre, <i>to come to life again.</i> faire revivre, <i>to revive.</i>
252 (1) craind-re, <i>to fear.</i>	crai-gn-ant craint	je craîn-s, tu craîn-s, il craîn-t,	n. crai-gn-ons v. crai-gn-ez ils crai-gn-ent	je crai-gn-is	contraindre, <i>to constrain.</i> plaindre, <i>to pity.</i> se plaindre, <i>to complain.</i>
ceind-re, <i>to gird.</i>	cei-gn-ant ceint	je ceîn-s, tu ceîn-s, il ceîn-t,	n. cei-gn-ons v. cei-gn-ez ils cei-gn-ent	je cei-gn-is	atteindre, <i>to reach;</i> feindre, <i>to feign;</i> enfreindre, <i>to infringe;</i> peindre, <i>to paint;</i> éteindre, <i>to extinguish;</i> teindre, <i>to dye.</i>
joind-re, <i>to join.</i>	joi-gn-ant joint	je join-s, tu join-s, il join-t,	n. joi-gn-ons v. joi-gn-ez ils joi-gn-ent	je joi-gn-is	rejoindre, <i>to overtake.</i> poindre, <i>to prick;</i> to dawn. oindre, <i>to anoint.</i>
253 (2) condui-re, <i>to lead, to conduct.</i>	condui-s-ant conduit	je condui-s, tu condui-s, il condui-t,	n. condui-s-ons v. condui-s-ez ils condui-s-ent	je condui-s-is	Thus all verbs in -duire :— déduire, <i>to deduct;</i> introduire, <i>to introduce;</i> produire, <i>to produce;</i> réduire, <i>to reduce;</i> séduire, <i>to seduce;</i> traduire, <i>to translate.</i>

construire, <i>to construct,</i> <i>to build.</i>	construi-s-ant construit	je construi-s, n. construi-s-ons tu construi-s, v. construi-s-ez il construi-t, ils construi-s-ent	je construi-s-is je construi-s-is	détruire, <i>to destroy</i> ; instruire, <i>instruct.</i> nuire (P. P. nui), <i>to harm,</i> <i>hurt.</i> luire (P. P. lui, PRET. wanting <i>to shine.</i>
cuire, <i>to cook, to bake.</i>	cui-s-ant cuit	je cui-s, n. cui-s-ons tu cui-s, v. cui-s-ez il cui-t, ils cui-s-ent	je cui-s-is	
écrire, <i>to write.</i>	écri-v-ant écrit	j' écri-s, n. écri-v-ons tu écri-s, v. écri-v-ez il écri-t, ils écri-v-ent	j' écri-v-is	décrire, <i>to describe</i> ; inscrire, <i>inscribe.</i> prescrire, <i>to prescribe</i> ; proscri <i>to proscribe.</i> souscrire, <i>to subscribe.</i>
(3) dire, <i>to say.</i>	di-s-ant dit	je di-s, n. di-s-ons tu di-s, v. di-t-es il di-t, ils di-s-ent	je di-s	redire, <i>to say again</i> , v. redites. contredire, <i>to contradict.</i> } v. interdire, <i>to forbid.</i> } cont médiere, <i>to speak ill.</i> } dise prédire, <i>to predict.</i> } etc
faire, <i>to do.</i> FUT. je ferai.	fai-s-ant fait	je fai-s, n. fai-s-ons tu fai-s, v. fai-t-es il fai-t, ils font	je fai-s	PRES. SUBJ. fass-e, fass-ion fass-es, fass-iez, fass-e, fassent. contrefaire, <i>to feign</i> ; défaire, <i>to</i> <i>undo</i> ; refaire, <i>to do again</i> ; satisfaire, <i>to satisfy.</i>
suffire, <i>to suffice.</i>	suffi-s-ant suffi	je suffi-s, n. suffi-s-ons tu suffi-s, v. suffi-s-ez il suffi-t, ils suffi-s-ent	je suffi-s	confire, <i>to preserve</i> (<i>pickles, pre</i> <i>serve</i>).

Infinitive (Future if Irregular)	Participles.	Present Indicative.	Preterite.	Additions, Remarks, Compound Verbs.
traire , to <i>milk</i> .	tray-ant	je trai-s, n. tray-ons tu trai-s, v. tray-ez il trai-t, ils trai-ent	(<i>wanting</i>)	braire, to <i>bray</i> (3rd pers. only). extraire, to <i>extract</i> . soustraire, to <i>take away</i> , etc.
rire , to <i>laugh</i> .	ri-ant	je ri-s, n. ri-ons tu ri-s, v. ri-ez il ri-t, ils ri-ent	je ri-s	sourire, to <i>smile</i> .
255 (4) suivre , to <i>follow</i> .	sui-vant	je sui-s, n. suiv-ons tu sui-s, v. suiv-ez il sui-t, ils suiv-ent	je suiv-is	poursuivre, to <i>pursue</i> , to <i>prosecute</i> . s'ensuivre, to <i>follow</i> (intrans.).
mettre , to <i>put</i> , to <i>place</i> .	mett-ant	je met-s, n. mett-ons tu met-s, v. mett-ez il met, ils mett-ent	je mi-s	commettre, to <i>commit</i> . permettre, to <i>permit</i> . promettre, to <i>promise</i> , etc.
prendre , to <i>take</i> , to <i>catch</i> .	pren-ant	je prend-s, n. pren-ons tu prend-s, v. pren-ez il prend, ils prenn-ent	je pri-s	apprendre, to <i>learn</i> . comprendre, to <i>understand</i> . entreprendre, to <i>undertake</i> . dépendre, to <i>depend</i> . s'entreprendre de, to <i>be taken with</i> . reprandre, to <i>resume</i> , etc.
vaincre , to <i>conquer</i> .	vainqu-ant	je vainc-s, n. vainqu-ons tu vainc-s, v. vainqu-ez il vainc, ils vainqu-ent	je vainqu-is	Obs. qu , instead of c , to preserve the hard sound of c ; compare—public, fem. publique .

batt-re,
to beat.

batt-ant
batt-u

je bat-s,
tu bat-s,
il bat,

n. batt-ous
v. batt-ez
ils batt-ent

je batt-is

battre is conjugated *regula*
except in the *Pres. Indic. Si*

256

(c) The following are Defective:

bruil-re,
to rear, rustle.

bru-y-ant
bru-it

je brui-s,
tu brui-s,
il brui-t,

(no plural)

(wanting)

IMPERF. INDIC. : —bruyais,
bruissais, etc

clo-re,
to close.

(wanting)

je clo-s,
tu clo-s,
il clôt-t,

(no plural)

(wanting)

IMPERF. INDIC. : —bruyais,
bruissais, etc

FUT. je clôrai.

éclo-re,
to blow, to be
hatched.

(wanting)

il éclôt

ils éclo-s-ent

(wanting)

FUT. il éclôra.
ils éclôront.

fri-ro,
to fry.

(wanting)

je fri-s,
tu fri-s,
il frit,

(no plural)

(wanting)

The tenses which are wanting are
formed with **faire** :—
nous faisons frire, etc.

sourd-re,
to spring out.

(wanting)

— ,
— ,
il sourd,

—
—
ils sourd-ent

il sourd-it

PRONOUNS.

257

I.—CONJUNCTIVE PERSONAL PRONOUNS.

SINGULAR: 1st Person.

SUBJECT.		Je ne trompe personne. <i>I deceive no one.</i>
DIR. OBJ.	Vous	me trompez toujours. <i>You always deceive me.</i>
INDIR. OBJ.	Il	me donne son appui. <i>He gives his support to me.</i>

2nd Person.

SUBJECT.		Tu aimes tes amis. <i>Thou lovest thy friends.</i>
DIR. OBJ.	Elle	te salue. <i>She greets thee.</i>
INDIR. OBJ.	Elle	te répond par écrit. <i>She replies to thee in writing.</i>

3rd Person, Masculine.

SUBJECT.		Il raconte une histoire. <i>He is relating a story.</i>
DIR. OBJ.	Les amis	le respectent. <i>His friends respect him.</i>
INDIR. OBJ.	On	lui raconte une anecdote. <i>They relate an anecdote to him.</i>

3rd Person, Feminine.

SUBJECT.		Elle te pardonnera. <i>She will forgive thee.</i>
DIR. OBJ.	Les amies	la félicitent. <i>Her friends congratulate her.</i>
INDIR. OBJ.	Sa mère	lui donna un baiser. <i>Her mother gave a kiss to her.</i>

3rd Person; referring to a thing.

SUBJECT.		Il ¹ (elle ²) est très utile. <i>It is very useful.</i>
DIR. OBJ.	L'écolier	le (la) trouve très utile. <i>The pupil finds it very useful.</i>
INDIR. OBJ.	L'écolier s'	y accoutume. <i>The pupil accustoms himself to it.</i>
ATTRIBUTIVE.	Les élèves	en parlent souvent. <i>The pupils often speak of it.</i>

¹ Referring to, say (1) le travail, (2) la leçon.**PLURAL: 1st Person.**

SUBJECT.		Nous louons leur conduite. <i>We praise their conduct.</i>
DIR. OBJ.	Le maître	nous loue souvent. <i>The master often praises us.</i>
INDIR. OBJ.	L'orateur	nous parle. <i>The orator is speaking to us.</i>

2nd Person.

SUBJECT.		Vous apprenez la leçon. <i>You learn the lesson.</i>
DIR. OBJ.	Vos cousins	vous suivront. <i>Your cousins will follow you.</i>
INDIR. OBJ.	Le professeur	vous répliquera. <i>The professor will reply to you.</i>

3rd Person: Masculine and Feminine.

SUBJECT.		Ils (elles) estiment leur maître. <i>They esteem their master.</i>
DIR. OBJ.	Leur maître	les estime. <i>Their master esteems them.</i>
INDIR. OBJ.	Leur parents	leur écriront bientôt. <i>Their parents will soon write to them.</i>

258

Different uses of **y**, *there, thither, to it, at it*; **en**, *hence, of it, from it, some, any*; and **le**, *he, it* (predicative), so:—

- (1) Est-il à Paris?—Oui, il **y** est. *Is he in Paris?—Yes, he is there.*
 Allez-vous au bain?—*Are you going to the bath?—*
 Non, nous n'**y** allons pas. *No, we are not going there.*
 Vas-**y** aujourd'hui; *Go there to-day,*
 n'**y** va pas demain. *don't go there to-morrow.*
- (2) Avez-vous répondu à sa lettre?—*Have you replied to his letter?—*
 J'**y** ai répondu il y a huit jours. *I replied to it a week ago.*
Y comprenez-vous quelque chose?—*Do you understand anything about it?—*
 Non, je n'**y** comprends rien. *No, I understand nothing about it.*
 Renoncez-**y**! N'**y** renoncez pas! *Renounce (to) it! Don't renounce (to) it.*
- (3) Il vous trompera; attendez-vous-**y**! *He will deceive you; expect it!*
Y avez-vous réfléchi?—J'**y** ai réfléchi. *Have you considered it?—I have considered it.*
 Réfléchissez-**y** bien. *Consider it well (reflect upon it).*
 N'**y** pensez pas. *Do not think of it.*

Y is used with reference to Antecedents denoting *things*:—

- (1) Instead of **là** referring to a *place* mentioned before.
 (2) Instead of **à lui, à elle; à eux, à elles.**
 (3) Instead of **à ceci, à cela**, with reference to a preceding clause or phrase.

259

- (1) Viens-tu de Londres?—*Are you coming from London?—*
 Oui, j'**en** viens, mais j'**y** retournerai *Yes, I am coming from there,*
 dans quinze jours. *but I shall return there in a fortnight.*
- (2) Est-il content de son sort?—*Is he satisfied with his fate?—*
 Il **en** est content. *He is satisfied with it.*
 Qu'**en** dites-vous?—*What do you say about it?—*
 Je n'**en** sais rien. *I don't know anything about it.*
- (3) Il fut trompé sans qu'il s'**en** aperçût. *He was deceived without being aware of it.*
 Vous vous **en** repentirez. *You will repent of it.*
- (4) A-t-il de l'argent?—*Has he any money?—*
 Oui, il **en** a. *Yes, he has (some).*
 Avez-vous des plumes?—*Have you any pens?—*
 J'**en** ai de très bonnes. *Yes, I have some very good ones.*
En voici une meilleure. *Here is a better one.*
 Je vous **en** donnerai une autre. *I will give you another.*
 Combien d'églises **y** a-t-il dans cette ville?—*How many churches are there in this town?—There are seven.*
 Il **y** **en** a sept.
 Prenez-**en** un pen. N'**en** prenez pas. *Take some. Don't take any.*
- (5) Il a renoncé à ses passions.—*He has renounced his passions.—*
 Je l'**en** estime davantage. *I esteem him the more for it.*

En is used with reference to antecedents denoting a *thing* :—

- (1) Instead of **de là**, *from there, hence*, to denote the starting-point.
- (2) Instead of **de lui, d'elle**, *of it*; **d'eux, d'elles**, *of them*, etc., with Verbs and Adjectives requiring **de** before their complement.
- (3) Instead of **de ceci, de cela**, *of this, of that*, referring to a phrase or sentence mentioned before.
- (4) Instead of **du, de la, des**, *some, any, of them*, referring to a Noun-Antecedent used in a *partitive* sense.
- (5) Instead of **pour cela, pour cette raison**, *for that, on that account*.

260 Use and agreement of the Neutral **le** :—

- (1) Etes-vous le professeur de musique?— *Are you the music-master?*—
 Oui, monsieur, je **le** suis. *Yes, sir, I am he.*
 Etes-vous la directrice du collège?— *Are you the principal of the college?*—
 Oui, madame, je **la** suis. *Yes, madam, I am she.*
 Etes-vous les délégués de la commune?— *Are you the delegates of the commune?*—
 Nous **les** sommes. *We are.*
- (2) Es-tu malade, mon ami?— *Are you ill, my friend?*—
 Je **le** suis. *I am.*
 Etes-vous malades, mes amis?— *Are you ill, my friends?*—
 Nous **le** sommes. *We are.*
 Etes-vous directrice, madame?— *Are you a principal, madam?*—
 Je **le** suis. *I am.*
 Votre frère est revenu hier au soir.— *Your brother returned last night.*—
 Je **le** sais. *I know it.*

Le, the predicative form of the 3rd Person of the Personal Pronoun, (1) takes the Gender and Number of its Antecedent if this Antecedent is a *Noun* used definitely; but (2) remains unchanged if its Antecedent is an *Adjective*, a *Noun* used *Adjectively* or a *whole sentence*.

261 Relative position of Object-Pronouns :—

- (1) Auguste vous a-t-il prêté son dictionnaire?— *Has Augustus lent you his dictionary?*—
 Il **me le** prêtera demain. *He will lend it to me to-morrow.*
 Vous a-t-il montré sa grammaire?— *Has he shown you his grammar?*—
 Il **nous la** montrera ce soir. *He will show it to us this evening.*
 Charles vous a-t-il rendu vos photographies?— *Has Charles returned you your photographs?*—
 Il **me (nous) les** a rendus hier. *He (has) returned them to me (to us) yesterday.*
 Quand te rencontrera-t-il à la gare?— *When will he meet you at the station?*—
 Il **m'y** rencontrera à midi. *He will meet me there at noon.*
 L'épicier vous a-t-il envoyé du thé?— *Has the grocer sent you any tea?*—
 Il **m'en** a envoyé une livre. *He has sent me a pound of it.*

- 262 (2) Frédéric donnera-t-il son cerf-volant à Jean?— *Will Fred give his kite to John?*—

Il **le lui** a déjà donné. *He has already given it to him.*

Et lui donnera-t-il aussi sa plume?— *And will he also give him his pen?*—

Il **la lui** donnera sans doute. *He will give it him without doubt.*

Le concierge a-t-il montré les chambres à Jacques?— *Has the door-keeper shown the rooms to James?*—

Il **les lui** a montrées. *He has shown them to him.*

Renoncera-t-il à ce plaisir (cette faveur)?— *Will he renounce this pleasure (this favour)?*—

Il **se le (la)** refusera. *He will deny it to himself.*

From the above examples we see that a Verb may have two Pronoun-Objects:— one *direct* and the other *indirect*, in which case—

(1) The Pronouns of the *first* or *second* stand before those of the *third* person.

(2) If both are of the *third* person, the *Direct* Object-Pronoun stands before the *Indirect*.

Se, *himself*, *herself*, *itself*, *themselves*, however, always stands first, whether used as *Direct* or *Indirect* Object.

The above Rules give the following combinations:—

- 263 (1) Il **me le (me la, me les)** donnera. *He will give it (her, them) to me.*

Il **nous le (nous la, nous les)** montrera. *He will show it (her, them) to us.*

Il **te le (te la, te les)** prêtera. *He will lend it (her, them) to thee.*

Il **vous le (vous la, vous les)** enverra. *He will send it (her, them) to you.*

Il **m'y (nous y)** a précédé. *He has preceded me (us) there.*

Il **t'y (vous y)** a suivi. *He has followed thee (you) there.*

Il **m'en (nous en)** félicite. *He congratulates me (us) about it.*

Il **t'en (vous en)** fera voir. *He will show thee (you) some.*

Elle **se le (se la, se les)** réserve. *She reserves it (them) to herself.*

Elle **s'y** soumettra. *She will submit (herself) to it.*

Elle **s'en** est procuré. *She has procured some (for herself).*

- 264 (2) Je **le lui (le leur)** ai dit. *I have told it to him (to them).*
 Je **la lui (la leur)** ai promise. *I have promised it to him (to them).*
 Je **les lui (les leur)** ai envoyés. *I have sent them to him (to them).*
 Je **l'y (les y)** inviterai. *I shall invite him (them) to it.*
 Je **l'en (les en)** informai. *I informed him (them) of it.*
 Je **lui en (leur en)** ai parlé. *I have spoken to him (to them) about it.*
 Nous **y en** porterons. *We shall carry some there.*

- 265 Objective-Pronouns with a Verb in the *Imperative*:—

AFFIRMATIVE (Exception).

Donnez-**le moi**. *Give it to me.*

Conduisez-**nous y**. *Lead us there.*

Résignez-**vous y**. *Resign yourself to it.*

NEGATIVE (Rule).

Ne **me le** donnez pas. *Do not, etc.*

Ne **nous y** conduisez pas.

Ne **vous y** résignez pas.

With a Verb in the *Imperative Affirmative* the Object-Pronouns stand after the Verb, as in English, and in the same relative position as in English.

266 Objective-Pronouns with a Verb used—

INTERROGATIVELY OR NEGATIVELY.

- Me le** rendrez-vous bientôt?— *Shall you soon return it to me?—*
Je ne vous le rendrai que demain. *I shall not return it to you until to-morrow*
- Nous y** autorisez-vous?— *Do you authorize us to it?—*
Nous ne vous y autorisons pas. *We do not authorize you to it.*
Vous en servez-vous encore?— *Do you still make use of it?—*
Nous ne nous en servons plus. *We no longer make use of it.*
S'y accoutumera-t-il?— *Will he accustom himself to it?—*
Il ne s'y accoutumera jamais. *He will not accustom himself to it.*
Lui en avez-vous parlé?— *Have you spoken to him about it?—*
Je ne lui en ai pas encore parlé. *I have not yet spoken to him about it.*
Ne vous le fera-t-il pas savoir?— *Will he not let you know it?—*
Il ne nous le fera savoir que dans huit jours. *He will not let us know it until to-day week.*

267 DISJUNCTIVE PERSONAL PRONOUNS.

- (1) Qui a fait cela?—**Moi.** *Who has done that?—I.*
 Qui devra payer?—**Toi.** *Who will have to pay?—Thou.*
 Qui est-ce qui viendra?—**Lui.** *Who will come?—He.*
 Qui l'accompagnera?—**Elle.** *Who will accompany him?—She.*
 Qui veut du vin?—**Nous.** *Who wants wine?—We.*
 Qui traduira cette page?—**Vous.** *Who will translate this page?—You.*
 Qui nous conduira?—**Eux.** *Who will lead us?—They (m.).*
 Qui vous a dit cela?—**Elles.** *Who has told you that?—They (f.).*
- 268 (2) Il est plus avancé que **moi.** *He is more advanced than I.*
 Elle n'est pas si active que **toi.** *She is not so active as thou, etc.*
- 269 (3) **Moi**, qui suis innocent! *I, who am innocent!*
Lui, qui a tant travaillé! *He, who has worked so hard!*
- 270 (4) Mon frère, ma sœur, et **moi**, *My brother, sister, and myself,*
 (nous) sommes allés le trouver. *went to see him.*
 Ni **lui**, ni **moi**, ne pouvons le faire. *Neither he nor I can do it.*
- 271 (5) Ce n'est pas **moi** qui l'ai fait. *It is not I that have done it.*
 Sera-ce **lui** ou un autre? *Will it be he or another?*
- 272 (6) Celui qui n'est pas pour **moi** est contre **moi.** *He who is not for me is against me.*
 Je suis **chez moi** aujourd'hui. *I am at home to-day.*
 Tu seras **chez toi** demain. *Thou wilt be at home to-morrow.*
 Il serait **chez lui** s'il pleuvait. *He would be at home if it rained.*
 Elle a été **chez elle** toute la matinée. *She has been at home the whole morning.*
 Il n'y a pas de petit **chez soi** (Proverb). *Be it ever so humble, there is no place like home.*
 Restons **chez nous** cette après midi. *Let us stay at home this afternoon.*
 Serez-vous **chez vous** ce soir? *Shall you be at home this evening?*

Qu'ils restent **chez eux**, j'y consens. *Let them stay at home, I consent to it.*

Ces dames sont **chez elles** du matin au soir. *These ladies are at home from morning to night.*

Le moulin est **à moi**, *The mill is mine, as much so, at least, as*
tout aussi bien, du moins, que la Prusse est au roi. *Prussia is the king's.*

273 (7) Pense **à moi**!— *Think of me!*—

Je pense toujours **à toi**. *I always think of thee.*

Elle accourut **à lui**. *She hastened towards him.*

Nous songeons **à eux** jour et nuit. *We think of them day and night.*

Disjunctive Personal Pronouns are so called because they are used independently of (disjoined from) the Verb: they stand—

(1) Quite alone, in answer to a question; (2) as the second member of a comparison; (3) as the Antecedent of a *Relative Pronoun*; (4) as part of a *Composite Subject*; (5) as the *Predicative Complement* of the Impersonal phrases **c'est**, **ce sont**; (6) after all *Prepositions*; (7) with the Preposition **à** as the *Adverbial Complement* of a Verb of motion, and a few others; as, **accoutumer à**, *to accustom to*; **en appeler à**, *to appeal to*; **courir (accourir) à**, *to hasten to*; **penser à**, **songer à**, *to think of*; **renoncer à**, *to renounce*; **venir à**, *to come to*.

Obs.—**Aucun** n'est prophète **chez soi**. *No one is a prophet in his own country.*

Chacun travaille **pour soi**. *Every one works for himself.*

Soi is the disjunctive form of the Reflexive Pronoun **se**, and is used with reference to an Indefinite Subject.

274

II.—POSSESSIVE PRONOUNS.

(For Possessive Adjectives see §§ 43-44.)

{ Ton cheval est plus beau que **le mien**. *Your horse is finer than mine.*
Tes chevaux sont plus beaux que **les miens**. *Your horses are finer than mine.*
Ta maison est aussi belle que **la mienne**. *Your house is as fine as mine.*
Tes maisons sont aussi belles que **les miennes**. *Your houses are as fine as mine.*

{ Voilà mon verre; où est **le tien**? *There is my glass; where is thine?*
Voilà mes verres, où sont **les tiens**? *There are my glasses; where are thine?*
Voilà ma carte et **la tienne**. *There is my card and yours.*
Voilà mes cartes et **les tiennes**. *There are my cards and yours.*

{ Est-ce son ouvrage?—C'est **le sien**. *Is it his (her) work?—It is his (hers).*
Sont-ce ses ouvrages?—Ce sont **les siens**. *Are they his (her) works?—They are his (hers).*
Est-ce sa montre?—C'est **la sienne**. *Is this his (her) watch?—It is his (hers).*
Sont-ce ses montres?—Ce sont **les siennes**. *Are these his (her) watches?—They are his (hers).*

{ Votre succès est plus grand que **le nôtre**. } *Your success is (successes*
Vos succès sont plus grands que **les nôtres**. } *are) greater than ours.*
{ Votre faute est pire que **la nôtre**. } *Your mistake is (mistakes are)*
Vos fautes sont pires que **les nôtres**. } *worse than ours.*

{	Voici notre prix ; où est le vôtre ?	<i>Here is our prize ;</i>	}	<i>Where is (are)</i>
	Voici nos prix ; où sont les vôtres ?	<i>Here are our prizes ;</i>		<i>yours ?</i>
	Voici notre gravure ; où est la vôtre ?	<i>Here is our engraving ;</i>		<i>where</i>
	Voici nos gravures ; où sont les vôtres ?	<i>Here are our engravings ;</i>		<i>is yours ?</i>
				<i>where are yours ?</i>

Est-ce leur bateau ?—C'est **le leur**. *Is it their boat ?—It is theirs.*
 Sont-ce là leurs bateaux ?—*Are these their boats ?—*
 Ce sont **les leurs**. *They are.*
 Sera-ce leur tâche ?—*Will that be their task ?—*
 Ce sera **la leur**. *It will be theirs.*
 Seront-ce leurs tâches ?—*Will these be their tasks ?—*
 Ce seront **les leurs**. *They will.*

275 The *English Possessive Pronoun or Adjective* and the different ways of rendering it in French :—

- (a) **Vos** amis sont aussi **mes** amis. *Your friends are also my friends.*
 (b) Cet argent n'est pas **à moi**. *This money is not mine.*
 (c) Cela **me** fend **le** cœur. *It breaks my heart.*
 Elle **s'**est coupée **au** doigt. *She has cut her finger.*
 Il **s'**est fait couper **les** cheveux. *He has had his hair cut.*
 Vous **me** marchez sur **le** pied. *You tread upon my toes (foot).*
 (d) J'ai mal **à la** tête. *My head aches.*
 Il a **les** mains pleines. *He has his hands full.*
 Donnez-moi **la** main. *Give me your hand.*
 (e) Quelle belle ville ; j'**en** admire **la** *What a fine city ; I admire its*
 vieille cathédrale. *ancient cathedral.*
 J'aime ces côtes, **les** falaises **en** sont pittoresques. *I like these coasts,*
 their cliffs are picturesque.
 (f) Le désir **que nous** avons de vous plaire. *Our wish to please you.*

Obs.—Il n'est pas **de mes** amis. *He is not a friend of mine.*

The *English Possessive Adjective or Pronoun* is rendered—

- (a) By the *French Possessive* in cases not mentioned below.
 (b) By the *Personal Pronoun* with **à** if used as a *Predicative Complement* of the Verb **être**.
 (c) By *Conjunctive Personal or Reflexive Pronoun* + *Definite Article*, with reference to Nouns denoting *parts of the body or mental qualities*.
 (d) By the *Definite Article* alone, if no ambiguity can arise.
 (e) By **en** + *Definite Article*, if the Antecedent of the Possessive Pronoun is a *thing*.
 (f) By an *Adjective Clause*, if the Noun limited by the Possessive Pronoun has a Complement.

III.—DEMONSTRATIVE PRONOUNS AND ADJECTIVES.

276 (a) **Ce**, *this, these ; that, those ; it, they*.

- (1) Qui **est-ce** ?—**C'est** lui. *Who is it?—It is he.*
Ce sont mes seules récréations. *These are my only recreations.*
Ce sont là des questions impossibles. *These are questions impossible to solve.*
Sont-ce là vos belles promesses ? *Are these your fair promises ?*
- (2) Qui est cet homme ?— *Who is this man ?—*
C'est mon jardinier. *He is my gardener.*
 Qui sont ces messieurs ?— *Who are these gentlemen ?—*
Ce sont des Anglais. *They are Englishmen.*
C'est à vous à parler. *It is for you to speak.*
C'est votre affaire. *It is your business.*
- (3) **C'est** se moquer du monde que de parler ainsi. *It is joking to speak thus.*
C'est un beau jardin que le vôtre. *A fine garden yours is.*
 Le vrai moyen d'être trompés **c'est** *The best way to be deceived is to fancy*
 de nous croire plus fins que les autres. *ourselves more cunning than others.*

Ce, the Neutral (indeclinable) *Pronoun* is used as the Subject of the Verb **être**—

(1) *Demonstratively* : answering to *this, that ; these, those* ; also as a *Personal Pronoun* answering to *he, she, it ; they*.

(2) *Impersonally* : instead of **il**, when the Complement of the Verb is a *Noun, Pronoun* or *Infinitive*.

(3) *Redundantly* : either as a grammatical Subject of **être**, when for the sake of stress the Predicative Complement is placed before the real Subject ; in the example above, for instance, the real Subject is **parler**, i.e. *To speak (speaking) thus is a derision* ;

Or to recapitulate a preceding Substantive Clause used as *Subject* or as a *Predicate Complement*.

277 (I) When to use **ce** and when **il** :—

- | | |
|--|---|
| C'est un Allemand. <i>He is a German.</i> | Il est Allemand. <i>He is German.</i> |
| Ce sont des Allemands. <i>They are Germans.</i> | Ils sont Allemands. <i>They are Germans.</i> |
| C'est ce médecin. <i>It is this physician.</i> | Il est médecin. <i>He is a physician.</i> |
| C'est ma mère. <i>It is my mother.</i> | Elle est mère. <i>She is a mother.</i> |
| C'est un homme qui est capable de tout. | <i>He is a man who is capable of anything</i> |
| Il est homme à faire cela. | <i>He is capable of doing that.</i> |

If the Complement of **être** is a *Noun*, use **ce**, unless that *Noun* is used *Adjectively*, in which case **il** is employed.

(2) Vous avez tort, **c'est** évident. **Il** est évident que vous avez tort.

If the Complement of **être** is an *Adjective*, then use **ce**, if the *Adjective* refers to a preceding statement : **il**, if the *Adjective* refers to a following statement.

278 (b) Ceci and cela, *this* and *that*.

(1) Ceci est bon, et cela est mauvais. *This is good, and that is bad.*

Ceci est soie, cela est laine. *This is silk, that is wool.*

(2) Dites ceci de ma part à votre ami : *Tell your friend this from me :*
 "qu'il se tienne tranquille." *"Let him be quiet."*

Que votre ami se tienne tranquille; *Your friend had better*
 dites-lui cela de ma part. *be quiet; tell him that from me.*

Ceci and **cela** are used—

(1) To denote *things* simply pointed to, but not mentioned (whilst **celui** denotes something mentioned before).

(2) To refer to a *statement*, *quotation*, etc.; { **ceci**, if the statement follows;
cela, if it precedes.

279 (c) Ce poisson-là est plus frais que celui-ci (m. s.). } *That fish (water) is*
 Cette eau-là est plus fraîche que celle-ci (f. s.). } *fresher than this.*

Ces arbres-là sont plus hauts que ceux-ci (m. pl.). } *These trees (moun-*
 Ces montagnes sont plus hautes que celles-ci (f. pl.). } *tains) are higher*
than these.

Ce poisson-ci est moins frais que celui-là. *This fish is not so fresh as that.*

Homère et Virgile sont de grands poètes : *Homer and Virgil are great poets :*
celui-ci était Romain, **celui-là** Grec. *the latter was a Roman,*
the former a Greek.

280 (d) Le port du Havre est plus grand que celui de Dieppe. *The port of Havre is larger than that of Dieppe.*

Votre traduction est plus facile que celle que je viens de finir. *Your translation is easier than the one I have just finished.*

Celui qui est content est heureux. *He who is content is happy.*

Celle qui aura fini la première sera récompensée. *She who has done first will get a reward.*

The difference in the use of **celui**, with or without **ci** or **là**, is this—

Celui-ci, points to a nearer object : *this*
Celui-là, points to a more distant object : *that* } not followed by a Complement.

Celui, refers back to a Noun mentioned before and is followed by a Complement, whether it be an Attribute or an Adjective Clause.

Ceux qui persévèrent réussiront. *Those (they) who persevere will succeed.*

Celles qui arriveront les premières seront servies les premières. *Those (they) who come first will be first served.*

IV.—RELATIVE PRONOUNS.

281 (a) Relative Pronouns referring to *Persons* :—

<i>Singular.</i>						
SUBJ.	L'homme	{ qui vous demande.	The man	{ who wants you.		
„	La femme		The woman			
DIR. OBJ.	L'homme	{ que vous demandez.	The man	{ whom you want.		
„	La femme		The woman			
IND. OBJ.	L'homme	{ à qui (auquel)	The man	{ to whom		
„	La femme		The woman			
<i>I have spoken.</i>						
ATTRIB.	L'homme	{ de qui (dont) je parlais.	The man	{ of whom I		
„	La femme		The woman			
„	L'homme	{ avec qui je suis venu.	The man	{ with whom I		
„	La femme		The woman			
POSSESS.	L'homme	{ dont l'enfant est malade.	The man	{ whose child		
„	La femme		The woman			
<i>is ill.</i>						
<i>So in the Plural:—</i>						
SUBJ.	Les hommes (femmes)	qui vous demandent.	The men (women)	who inquire after you. etc.		

282 (b) Relative Pronouns referring to *Things* :—

<i>Singular.</i>							
SUBJ.	Un jardin	} qui coûte cher.	A garden	} which (that) is expensive.			
„	Une maison		A house				
DIR. OBJ.	Le jardin	} que j'ai acheté(e).	The garden	} which I have bought.			
„	La maison		The house				
IND. OBJ.	Un jardin (m.)	} auquel	} j'attache un	} A garden } to which			
„	Une maison (f.)				} à laquelle	} grand prix.	} A house } I attach great value.
ATTRIB.	Le jardin (m.)	} dont (duquel) je parlais.	The garden	} of which			
„	La mai on (f.)		} dont (de laquelle) } je parlais.		The house	} I was speaking.	
„	Le jardin par lequel j'ai passé.				The garden through which I passed.		
POSSESS.	Le jardin	} dont les arbres sont si beaux.	The garden the trees of which are so fine.				
„	La maison		} dont la façade est pittoresque.	The house the front of which is picturesque.			
<i>Plural.</i>							
SUBJ.	Les jardins	} qui m'appartiennent.	The gardens	} which (that) belong to me.			
„	Les maisons		The houses				
DIR. OBJ.	Des jardins	} que je désire vendre.	Gardens	} which I want to sell.			
„	Des maisons		Houses				
IND. OBJ.	Des jardins (m.)	} auxquels	} je tiens.	} Gardens } to which I attach great value.			
„	Des maisons (f.)				} auxquelles	} Houses }	
ATTRIB.	Les jardins (m.)	} dont (desquels) je parlais.	The gardens	} of which I was speaking.			
„	Les maisons (f.)		} dont (desquelles)		The houses		
POSSESS.	Des jardins	} dont l'entretien est		Gardens } the maintenance of			
„	Des maisons		} dont très coûteux.	Houses } which is expensive.			

From the above examples it will be seen that Relative Pronouns referring to Persons differ from those referring to things when they are governed by a *Preposition*, in which case **qui** is not used of things:—

L'homme **sur qui** (**sur lequel**) je comptais.
Le secours **sur lequel** je comptais.

*The man on whom I relied.
The help on which I relied.*

283 (c) Lequel, laquelle ; lesquels, lesquelles ; *who, which, that.*

1. Le mari de la voisine, **lequel** est malade. *The neighbour's husband who is ill.*

La femme du voisin, **laquelle** est malade. *The neighbour's wife who is ill.*

Les devoirs des écoliers, **lesquels** sont faciles. *The pupil's exercises which are easy.*

Les tâches des élèves, **lesquelles** sont aisées. *The pupils' lessons which are easy.*

2. Le travail **auquel** je me voue. } *The labour (labours) to which I devote myself.*
Les travaux **auxquels** je me consacre. }
L'œuvre à **laquelle** je contribue. } *The work (works) to which I contribute.*
Les œuvres **auxquelles** je contribue. }

Le lit **sur lequel** il se concha. *The bed on which he lay down.*

Les succès **sur lesquels** il comptait. *The successes on which he reckoned.*

La ville **pour laquelle** il est parti. *The town for which he left.*

Les contrées **par lesquelles** ils ont passé. *The districts through which they passed.*

3. Le plan de la réussite **duquel** tout dépend. *The plan on the success of which all depends.*

Les plans pour la réussite **desquels** je fais des vœux. *The plans for the success of which I make vows.*

L'entreprise sur le succès **de laquelle** je compte. *The undertaking on the success of which I rely.*

Les entreprises au succès **desquelles** j'ai contribué. *The undertakings to the success of which I have contributed.*

Lequel, lesquels, laquelle, lesquelles, must be used instead of **qui, que**—

(1) To avoid any doubt that might arise as to the Antecedent to which the relative refers ; thus in—'Solomon fils de David **qui** fut roi d'Israël' **qui** may refer to Solomon or David whilst **lequel** would only refer to the former.

(2) After any *Preposition*, when the Relative refers to a *thing* (if the Antecedent denotes a person either may be used) see (b).

Duquel, desquels, de laquelle, desquelles must be used —

(3) Instead of **dont** when the Noun on which the Relative depends is *preceded by a Preposition*.

Obs. 1. Prenez **lequel** vous voudrez. *Take which you like.*

N.B.—With **à** and **de** the Definite Article contained in **lequel** coalesces just as it does when standing alone.

Obs. 2. L'homme **dont** je parle. *The man I am speaking of.*
L'homme **que** je vois. *The man I see.*

In English a Relative Pronoun used as Direct or Indirect Object may be omitted, but *not in French* ; nor may the Preposition governing a Relative Pronoun stand at the end of the sentence as is the case in English.

- 284 Le temps **où** nous vivons. *The times in which we live.*
 Au moment **où** je vous parle. *At the moment at which I am speaking to you.*
 Les endroits **par où** nous passons. *The places through which we are passing.*
 Le but **où** il tend. *The aim to which he tends.*
 Le mauvais pas **d'où** il s'est tiré. *The scrape out of which he has got.*

Où, *where*, is often used as a Relative Pronoun instead of **dans lequel**, **auquel**, **vers lequel**, and after other Prepositions.

- 285 L'écuyer **dont** je suis content. *The pupil with whom I am satisfied.*
 C'est un accident **dont** je suis fâché. *It is an accident for which I am sorry.*
 La famille **dont** il sort. *The family from which he descends.*
 Le succès **dont** ils se réjouissent. *The success at which they rejoice.*
 La manière **dont** il s'y prend. *The manner in which he sets about it.*

As **dont** is virtually **de qui**, it follows that it is used with any *Noun*, *Adjective* or *Verb* the complement of which is preceded by **de**. The same rule holds good with respect to **en** (§ 259); compare —

Es-tu content **de** cet élève?—C'est un élève **dont** je suis content.—J'**en** suis content.
 Est-il fâché **de** cet accident?—C'est un accident **dont** il est fâché—Il **en** est fâché.
 Se réjouit-il **de** ton succès?—C'est un succès **dont** il se réjouit.—Il s'**en** réjouit.

SUBJ. L'ami **dont** le conseil est précieux. *The friend whose advice is precious.*

DIR. OBJ. L'ami **dont** je suis le conseil. *The friend whose advice I follow.*

INDIR. OBJ. L'ami **au conseil duquel** je me soumetts. *The friend to whose advice I submit.*

After *whose* the Direct Object is placed before the Verb in English, whilst in French it keeps its usual place after the Verb and retains the Definite Article.

286 (d) Relative Pronouns used (1) *absolutely*, or (2) with sentences for Antecedents:—

- (1) SUBJ. Voilà **ce qui** m'inquiète. *That is what makes me uneasy.*
 DIR. OBJ. Voilà **ce que** je ne comprends pas. *That is what I do not understand.*

PREDICATE. Je sais **ce que** vous êtes. *I know what you are.*

IND. OBJ. C'est **ce à quoi** vous devez vous appliquer. *That is what you must devote yourself to.*

ATTRIB. C'est **ce dont** je me plains. *That is what I complain of.*

- (2) SUBJ. Ils sont revenus, **ce qui** n'est pas étonnant. *They have come back, which is not astonishing.*

DIR. OBJ. La banque a failli, **ce que** j'avais prévu. *The bank has failed, (a fact) which I had anticipated.*

ATTRIB. Il a fait fruit sec, **ce dont** je ne m'étonne pas. *He has been plucked, at which (lit. of which) I am not surprised.*

IND. OBJ. La guerre est déclarée, **ce à quoi** je m'attendais. *War has been declared, just as (lit. to which) I expected.*

„ Vous croyez le connaître, **en quoi** vous vous trompez. *You think you know him, in which you are mistaken.*

„ Nous fûmes plusieurs lieues, **après quoi** nous nous reposâmes. *We walked several leagues, after which we rested.*

When a Relative Pronoun refers to (1) **voilà**, **voici**, to *Indefinite Pronouns*, or (2) to *whole sentences*, then the above absolute forms must be used.

289 VI.—INDEFINITE PRONOUNS AND ADJECTIVES.

- (1) **On** dit qu'elle est morte. *One says (they say; it is said, I am told) she is dead.*

On me l'a dit ce matin. *They told me so (I heard so) this morning.*

Est-il vrai qu'**on** me demande? *Is it true that I am wanted?*

A-t-**on** sonné?— *Has there been a ring?—*

Non, **on** frappe. *No, there is a knock.*

Si l'**on** nous entendait! *Suppose anybody should hear us!*

- 290 (2) SUBST. **Chacun** (f. **chacune**) a ses défauts. *Every one (everybody) has his faults.*

ADJ. { **Chaque** homme a ses défauts. *Every man has his faults.*
A **chaque** jour suffit sa peine. *Sufficient unto the day is the evil thereof.*

Ces ananas coûtent deux francs **chacun**. *These pine-apples cost two francs each.*

Ces oranges reviennent à deux sous **chacune**. *These oranges come to a penny each.*

Ils ont payé **chacun** leur écot. *They have each paid their share.*

Donnez-leur à **chacun** leur part. *Give them each their share.*

Ils apportèrent des offrandes au temple, **chacun** selon ses moyens. *They brought offerings to the temple, each according to his means.*

On se retira **chacun** chez soi. *They all retired home.*

Mettez ces livres **chacun** à sa place. *Put these books (each) in their proper places.*

- 291 (3) SUBS. **Tout** ce que vous voudrez. *Anything you like.*
Je vous obéirai en **tout**. *I shall obey you in everything.*

ADJ. **Tous** tant que nous sommes. *As many as we are.*

Tout homme est mortel. *Every man is mortal.*

Tous les jours cela recommence. *Every day it begins again.*

Toute la famille est aux eaux. *The whole family are at a watering-place.*

Toutes les nations de la terre. *All the nations in the world.*

Tous les deux (**tous deux**) viendront. *Both will come.*

Je vous aime de **tout** mon cœur. *I love you with all my heart.*

Tous les deux jours le bateau part pour Anvers. *Every other day the boat leaves for Antwerp.*

ADV. Nous sommes **tout** yeux, **tout** oreilles. *We are all eyes, all ears.*

Elle est **toute** émerveillée (**toute** contente). *She is quite amazed (satisfied).*

- 292 (4) **Personne** n'est-il venu? *Has nobody (no one) come?*

Non, **personne** n'est venu. *No, nobody has come.*

Ne le dites à **personne**. *Don't tell it to anybody.*

Je doute que **personne** le sache. *I doubt if anybody knows it.*

Y a-t-il **personne** d'assez hardi? *Is there anybody bold enough?*

Pas un ne le croit. *Nobody believes it.*

- 293 (5) SUBJ. **Rien** n'est plus nécessaire. *Nothing is more necessary.*
 OBJ. Il **ne** fait **rien** du tout. *He does nothing at all.*
 Cela **ne** fait **rien**. *That does not signify (matter).*
 Y a-t-il **rien** de si beau? *Is there anything so fine?*
 N'y a-t-il **rien** de nouveau? *Is there nothing new?*
 Qui vous reproche **rien**? *Who reproaches you with anything?*
 Vit-on jamais **rien** de pareil? *Has one ever seen anything like it?*
- 294 (6) ADJ. Adressez-vous à **quelque** autre personne. *Apply to some other person.*
 Il vous en coûtera **quelques** écus. *It will cost you a few crowns.*
 Il y a **quelque** temps. *Some time ago.*
 Dans **quelques** années. *In a few years.*
 ADV. Il peut avoir **quelque** quarante ans. *He may be about (some) forty years old.*
- 295 (7) S'il vous manque **quelque chose**, *If you want anything,*
 je vous le donnerai. *I will give it to you.*
Quelque chose m'a été dit. *I have been told something.*
 Il lui est arrivé **quelque chose** de fâcheux. *Something awkward has happened to him.*
 A **quelque chose** malheur est bon. (lit. *For something ill luck is good.*) *It is an ill wind that blows nobody any good.*
- 296 (8) ADJ. **Quelque** sujet de vous plaindre *Whatever subject for complaining*
 que vous ayez. *you may have.*
Quelques difficultés que vous *Whatever difficulties you may*
 éprouviez. *experience.*
- 297 (9) ADV. **Quelque** puissant qu'il soit. *However powerful he may be.*
Quelque puissants qu'ils soient. *However powerful they may be.*
Quelque belle qu'elle puisse être. *Beautiful though she be.*
Quelque bien qu'il se conduise. *However well he may behave.*
- 298 (10) ADJ. **Quel que** soit votre engagement. *Whatever your engagement may be.*
Quelle que soit leur intention. *Whatever their intention may be.*
Quels que soient vos desseins. *Whatever your designs may be.*
Quelles que soient leurs vues. *Whatever their views may be.*
- 299 (11) SUBST. Il y a **quelqu'un** à la porte. *There is somebody at the door.*
Quelqu'un (personne) m'a-t-il demandé? *Has any one inquired after me?*
 Voulez-vous des citrons (des oranges)?— *Do you want lemons (oranges)?*
 Oui, donnez-m'en **quelques-uns** (**quelques-unes**). *Yes, give me a few.*

- 300** (12) ADJ. Une ligne **quelconque** étant donnée. *Given a certain line.*
 Deux points **quelconques** étant donnés. *Any two points being given.*
 Il n'y a raison **quelconque** qui puisse l'y obliger. *There is no reason whatsoever that can compel him to it.*
- (13) SUBST. **Quiconque** n'observa pas cette loi, sera puni. *Whosoever shall not observe that law will be punished.*
 Je le protégerai contre **quiconque** l'attaquera. *I shall protect him against whosoever shall attack him.*
- (14) SUBST. **Qui que ce soit** qui a it fait cela, *Whoever he be who has done that, he is a clever man.*
 c'est un habile homme.
 Je n'y ai trouvé **qui que ce soit**. *I did not find anybody.*
- (15) SUBST. **Quoi** (= quelque chose) **que** vous fassiez. *Whatever you do.*
- 301** (16) ADJ. Il faut appeler un **autre** médecin. *You must send for some other doctor.*
 Revenez une **autre** fois. *Come back again another time.*
 Souvent il est gai, **d'autres** fois il est triste. *Often he is gay, at other times he is sad.*
Autres temps, **autres** mœurs. *Manners change with the times.*
 J'ai encore deux **autres** enfants. *I have yet two other children.*
- PRON. Je garde ce cheval et je vous cède **l'autre**. *I keep this horse and let you have the other.*
 L'un vaut **l'autre**. *There is not much to choose between the two.*
 Il paya deux de ses créanciers, *He paid two of his creditors,*
 mais il ne donna rien **aux autres**. *but gave nothing to the others.*
 Votre habit est usé, *Your coat is worn out,*
 il faut en acheter un **autre**. *you must buy another.*
Autre (or **autre chose**) est promettre, *It is one thing to*
autre (or **autre chose**) est donner. *promise, and another to perform.*
Tout autre que lui ne s'en serait *Any other man would not*
 pas si bien tiré. *have come off so well.*
Quel autre s'en serait avisé? *Who else would have thought of it?*
- 302** (17) ADJ. **L'une et l'autre** saison est favorable. *Both seasons are favourable.*
- PRON. **L'un et l'autre** sont venus. *Both have come.*
 Je veux **l'un et l'autre**.
 Je veux **les uns et les autres**. } *I want them both.*
- 303** (18) PRON. **Ni l'un ni l'autre** ne viendra (viendront). *Neither will come.*
 Ils ne sont morts **ni l'un ni l'autre**. *Neither is dead.*

- 304 (19)** **L'un ou l'autre** sera élu. *One of the two will be elected.*
 Il est chez **l'un ou chez l'autre**. *He is staying with one or the other.*
- 305 (20)** Ces deux auteurs se louent **l'un l'autre**. *These two authors praise each other.*
 Ces commères médisent **l'une de l'autre**. *These gossips speak ill of one another.*
 Ces époux paraissent faits **l'un pour l'autre**. *This couple seems to be made for one another.*
 Aimez-vous **les uns les autres**. *Love one another.*
 Ils sont dupes **les uns des autres**. *They are the dupes of one another.*
 Ils se succédaient **les uns aux autres**. *They succeed each other.*
 Ces objets coûtent tant **l'un dans l'autre**. *These things cost so much on an average.*
- 306 (21)** **Nous autres** Français ne sommes pas *We Frenchmen are not*
 si patients que **vous autres** Anglais. *so patient as you Englishmen.*
 Cette ville est **un autre** Paris. *This town is a second Paris.*
 Il faut, **comme dit l'autre**, souffrir *One must, as the saying*
 ce qu'on ne peut éviter. *goes, put up with what cannot be avoided.*
- 307 (22)** ADJ. **Un tel** homme ; **de tels** hommes. *Such a man ; such men.*
Une telle occasion ; *Such an opportunity ;*
de telles occasions. *such opportunities.*
Tel fut le résultat. *Such was the result.*
Tel maître, **tel** valet. *Like master, like man.*
- SUBST. **Tel** menace qui tremble. *Many a man threatens who is afraid.*
 Monsieur **un tel** ; Madame **une telle**. *Mr. (Mrs.) so and so.*
- 308 (23)** ADJ. **Le même** sujet ; les **mêmes** sujets. *The same subject (subjects).*
 Moi-même, toi-même, *Myself, thyself.*
 lui-même, elle-même, etc. *himself, herself, etc.*
 Cet homme est la valeur **même**. *This man is valour itself.*
- ADV. Je vous dirai **même**. *Nay, I must even tell you.*
 Ses élèves, ses enfants **même**, *His pupils, his very children,*
 l'ont abandonné. *have forsaken him.*
 Quand **même** il serait venu. *Even though he had come.*
 Les plus sages **même** peuvent se tromper. *Even the wisest are liable to be mistaken.*
 Faites **de même**. *Do likewise.*
- 309 (24)** ADJ. **Maint** homme (**mainte** femme). *Many a man (woman).*
Maintes fois je le lui ai dit. *Many times did I tell him so.*

ADVERBS.

I. ADVERBS CLASSIFIED ACCORDING TO THEIR *meaning*.310 (a) Adverbs of *Time* :—

Est-il déjà arrivé?— *Has he already arrived?*—

Non, il n'est pas encore arrivé, mais il arrivera demain ou après-demain. *No, he has not, but he will arrive to-morrow or the day after to-morrow.*

Où étiez-vous donc hier (au) soir?— *Where were you then last night?*

À la maison. *At home.*

Et avant-hier?— *And the day before yesterday?*—

Au théâtre. *In the theatre.*

C'est aujourd'hui la foire. *To-day is the fair.*

Autrefois il y faisait bien beau, mais maintenant je ne m'y plais plus. *Formerly it was very pleasant there, but now I don't like the place.*

311 (b) Adverbs of *Place* :—

Par où passerez-vous, par ici ou par là? *Which way shall you go, this way or that way?*

D'où venez-vous comme ça?— *Where are you coming from?*—

Je viens de chez moi. *I come from home.*

Je le croyais dedans, il est dehors. *I thought he was in, he is out.*

Il a mis son domestique dehors. *He has turned his servant out of doors.*

On m'a mis dedans. *They have let me in (deceived me).*

Votre maison me plaît mieux en dedans qu'en dehors. *Your house pleases me better inside than outside.*

Voyez sur la table, cherchez dessus et dessous. *Look on the table, search on it and below it.*

Passez par-dessous. *Pass underneath.*

Les enfants de l'âge de deux ans et au-dessous. *Children of two years and under.*

Il y a quelque piège là-dessous. *There is some snare underneath.*

Y est-il?— *Is he there?*—

Il n'est ni dessus ni dessous. *It is neither on it nor below it.*

Il avait un habit court et un manteau par-dessus. *He had a short coat and a cloak over it.*

Au-dessus, étaient écrits ces mots. *Above, the following words were written.*

Pourquoi toujours revenir là-dessus? *Why always return to that subject?*

Comme nous l'avons dit ci-dessus. *As we have mentioned above.*

Est-il derrière ou devant?— *Is he before or behind?*—

Il est bien loin. *He is a long way off.*

For Adverbs of *Quantity*, see § 41.

312 (c) Adverbs of *Manner or Quality*:—

Comment vous portez-vous?— *How do you do?*

Je me porte **très bien**, **comme** vous voyez. *I am very well, as you see.*

J'en suis **fort** aise. *I am very glad of it.*

Il est venu **tout exprès**, **plutôt** *He has come on purpose, rather*
que de vous laisser dans l'incertitude. *than leave you in uncertainty.*

Il aurait dû venir **plus tôt**. *He ought to have come sooner.*

Il est **tant** soit **peu** égoïste. *He is rather selfish.*

Il a obtenu le premier prix!— *He has won the first prize!—*

Ah, **vraiment**? *Has he?*

313 (d) Adverbs of *Manner derived regularly from Adjectives*:—

(1) Cette plante est très **rare**. *This plant is very rare.*

On trouve cette plante très **rarement**. *One very rarely finds this plant.*

Sa conduite a été **sage**. *His conduct has been good.*

Il s'est conduit **sagement**. *He has behaved well.*

(2) Il a le parler **franc**. *His words are candid (He is plain spoken).*

Il parle **franchement**. *He speaks candidly.*

C'est un hazard **heureux** (une chance **heureuse**). *It is a fortunate chance.*

Heureusement il rencontra son ami. *Fortunately he met his friend.*

(3) Le renard est **prudent**. *The fox is cautious.*

Il s'y prend **prudemment**. *He sets about it cautiously.*

Adverbs are formed by—

(1) adding **-ment** to Adjectives ending in a *vowel*.

(2) adding **-ment** to the *feminine* form of Adjectives ending in a *consonant*.

(3) changing into **-mment** the ending **-nt** of Adjectives in **-ant**, or **-ent** (this is to assimilate **-nt** to **m**).

For the historical origin of this formation of Adverbs by means of **-ment**, see Appendix.

314 *Anomalies*. 1. Aveuglément, *blindly*; commodément, *comfortably*; conformément, *conformably*; énormément, *enormously*; immensément, *immensely*; opiniâtrément, *obstinately*; uniformément, *uniformly*.

The above Adverbs change the *e* mute of the Adjective (aveugle, commode, etc.) into *é*.

2. Communément, *commonly*; confusément, *confusedly*; expressément, *expressly*; importunément, *importunately*; obscurément, *obscurely*; précisément, *precisely*; profondément, *profoundly*; profusément, *profusely*.

The above change the *feminine* ending *e* of the Adjective (commune, confuse, etc.) into *é*.

3. Assidûment, *assiduously*; crûment, *crudely*; dûment, *duly*; gaîment, *gaily*.

The above take a circumflex on the final vowel of the Adjective.

4. Lentement, *slowly*; présentement, *presently*; véhémentement, *vehemently*.

The above in **-ent** do not change **-nt** into **m**.

Obs.—Adj. gentil, Adv. = gentiment; bref and brief, Adv. brièvement.

Positive.

Adj. Son écriture est **bonne**.
His writing is good.

Adv. Elle écrit **bien**.
She writes well.

Adj. Sa prononciation est **mauvaise**.
His pronunciation is bad.

Adv. Il prononce **mal**.
He pronounces badly.

Adj. Le remède est **mauvais**.
The remedy is bad.

Adv. Ils se conduisent **mal**.
They behave badly.

Adj. Cette somme est **petite**.
This sum is small.

Adv. Il parle **peu**.
He speaks but little.

Adj. Ce cheval est **petit**.
This horse is small.

Adv. Il travaille **beaucoup**.
He works much (hard).

J'ai **beaucoup** d'argent.
I have much money.

Comparative.

La vôtre est **melleure**.
Yours is better.

Vous écrivez **mieux**.
You write better.

La vôtre est **plus mauvaise**.
Yours is worse.

Il prononce **plus mal**.
He pronounces worse.

Il est **pire** que le mal.
It is worse than the disease.

Ils sont **pis** que jamais ensemble.
They are on worse terms than ever.

Elle est **moindre** que l'autre.
It is less than the other.

Il parle **moins** que vous.
He speaks less than you.

Il est **plus petit** que le mien.
It is smaller than mine.

Elle travaille **plus** que personne.
She works harder than anybody.

Il en a **plus** que moi.
He has more than I.

Il en a **davantage**.
He has more.

Superlative.

Celle-là est la **melleure**.
That is the best.

Charles écrit le **mieux**.
Charles writes best.

La sienne est la **plus mauvaise**.
His is the worst.

Elle prononce le **plus mal**.
She pronounces worst.

C'est le **pire** de tous.
It is the worst of all.

C'est la **moindre** de toutes.
It is the least of all.

Il parle le **moins** de tous.
He speaks least of all.

C'est le **plus petit**.
It is the smallest.

C'est lui qui travaille le **plus**.
It is he who works the most.

C'est lui qui en a le **plus**.
He has the most.

316 (c) Adverbs of *Affirmation* and *Negation*¹ :—(1) Used *Disjunctively*, i.e., independently of a Verb :—Es-tu malade?—**Oui** (je crois **que oui**). *Are you ill?—Yes (I think so).*Tu n'es pas malade, n'est-ce pas?— *You are not ill, are you?—***Si** (je te dis **que si**).^{*} *Yes, I am (I tell you I am).*

Vous payera-t-il?—

*Will he pay you?—***Non** (je crois **que non**).*No (I think not).*Es-tu prêt?—**Point du tout**. *Are you ready?—Not at all.*J'ai faim ; et toi?—**Pas moi**. *I am hungry ; are you?—Not I.*^{*} In answer to a *negative* question.(2) Used *Conjunctively*, i.e., qualifying a Verb expressed or understood, see § 12.317 Use of **ne** in French where no negation is required in English :—(1) Je crains qu'il **ne** vienne. *I fear he is coming.*Evitez qu'on **ne** vous voie. *Mind they don't see you.*Je ne doute pas qu'il **ne** le sache. *I doubt not but he knows it.*Il n'y a personne qui **ne** le croie. *There is nobody but believes it.*Hâtez-vous, de crainte qu'on **ne** vous voie. *Make haste, lest he should see you.*If the principal clause contains an expression denoting *Fear, Prevention, Doubt, or Denial*, the Verb in the dependent clause takes **ne**. That a negative idea is latent can easily be seen by inverting the sentence :—*I fear he will come, being virtually the same as—I hope he will not come.*(2) Il est plus riche que vous **ne** croyez. *He is richer than you think, i.e. You do not think him so rich as he is.*Elle est tout autre que vous **ne** vous imaginez. *She is quite different from what you think, i.e. You do not take her for what she is.*¹ In order fully to understand the use of French negations it is necessary to know how they originated :—

“Pour donner plus de force à l'expression de nos jugements, nous les accompagnons volontiers d'une comparaison ('pauvre comme **Job**,' 'fort comme un **lion**,' etc.) ou d'une estimation ; 'cet objet ne vaut pas un **sou**.' Les Latins disaient de même : 'ne pas valoir un **as**, une **plumè**, une **noix**, un **hilum**.' De là l'expression **ne-hilum** qui est devenu **nihi**. Les locutions adverbiales qui servent en français à exprimer la négation sont au nombre de six : **pas**, **point**, **mie**, **goutte**, **personne**, **rien** :—**Pas** (du lat. *passus*)—Ne point faire un pas. **Point** (du lat. *punctum*)—Je ne vois point. **Mie** (du lat. *mica*—Nullaque *mica salis*). **Goutte** (du lat. *gutta*, employé aussi au sens négatif par les Latins)—Je n'y vois goutte. **Personne** (du lat. *persona*), joint à la négation 'ne', prend le sens de 'nemo.' **Rien** (du lat. *rem*) était substantif dans l'ancien français : la 'riens' (chose) que j'ai vue est fort belle. Joint à une négation il signifie 'nihi'—Je 'ne' fais 'rien'... Terminons par l'observation générale qu'à l'origine les locutions adverbiales *pas, mie, goutte, point, etc.*, furent employées d'une manière sensible, c'est à dire placées dans une comparaison où elles avaient une valeur propre : Je ne marche pas, je ne vois point, je ne mange," etc.

BRACHET.

318 Use of **ne** without **pas** or **point** :—

- (1)
- Rien ne**
- le satisfait.
- Nothing satisfies him.*

Je **n'**ai absolument **rien** à dire. *I have absolutely nothing to say.*Nous **ne** le voyons **plus**. *We don't see him now.***Ni** nous **non plus**. *Nor we either.*Nous **ne** le voyons **pas non plus**. *We don't see him either.***Ne** le dites à âme qui vive ! *Don't tell it to anybody* (lit. to any living soul).Je **ne** le dirai à qui que ce soit. *I shall not tell it to anybody.*

In accordance with the principle laid down above, i.e. that **pas** and **point** are not originally real negations, but only *expletives* to strengthen the real negation **ne**, the latter must be used without **pas** or **point**, when a negative expletive is already supplied as above.

- (2) Il
- ne**
- cesse de pleuvoir.
- It does not leave off raining.*

Elle **ne** sait que faire. *She does not know what to do.***Ne** bougez d'ici. *Don't stir.*Je **ne** puis vous répondre. *I cannot reply to you.*Il **n'**a garde de le faire. *He takes good care not to do it.*Je **n'**oserais. *I dare not.*With the above Verbs **pas** or **point** may be suppressed.Obs.—**Point** d'argent, **point** de Suisse. *No money, no Switzer.***Pas** de fumée sans feu. *No smoke without fire.*Qui le fera ?—**Pas** moi, **ni** lui **non plus**. *Who will do it? Not I, nor he either.*

As **ne** can only be used with verbs, it must be omitted when the Verb of a Sentence is understood.

319 *Adjectives used Adverbially* :—Sentir bon, *to smell nice* ;sentir mauvais, *to smell bad*.Parler haut, *to speak loud* ;parler bas, *to speak low*.Parler clair, *to speak plainly* ;voir clair, *to see distinctly*.Acheter cher, *to buy dear* ;vendre cher, *to sell dear*.Tenir ferme, *to hold firmly* ;tenir bon, *to hold out*.Chanter juste, *to sing in tune* ;chanter faux, *to sing out of tune*.

320 II. ADVERBIAL PHRASES.

The *accessory circumstances* of an action may also be expressed by a Noun qualified by some attribute adjunct either *with* or *without* a Preposition :—

(For *Adverbial Phrases* formed by means of Prepositions : **à**, **de**, **dans**, etc., see §§ 335-343-345.)

321 (a) Answering to the questions *when? how long? how far?* as,

Il arriva **le lendemain**. *He arrived on the following day.*

Elle viendra **lundi, le 15 courant**. *She will come on Monday, the 15 inst.*

Nous y restâmes **huit jours**. *We stayed there for a week.*

Quand on a travaillé **toute la journée**, *When one has worked all day,*
il est juste qu'on se délasse **le soir**. *it is right to have some recreation in*
the evening.

La nuit tous les chats sont gris (*Proverb*). *In the dark all cats are grey.*

L'an 1099 la ville de Jérusalem fut *In the year 1099 Jerusalem was*
emportée d'assaut par les Croisés. *taken by storm by the Crusaders.*

Je l'ai vu **plusieurs fois**. *I saw him several times.*

Il continua son chemin **l'espace de dix milles**. *He continued his way for*
a distance of ten miles.

322 (b) Answering to the questions *how much? what price?* as,

J'ai vendu mon cheval **quinze cents francs**. *I have sold my horse for*
1500 francs.

Cela m'a coûté **mille livres**. *That has cost me a thousand pounds.*

J'estime cette maison **deux mille livres**. *I value this house at two*
thousand pounds.

323 (c) Answering to the questions *how? in what manner?* as,

Il se tenait là **les bras croisés**. *There he stood with folded arms.*

Le domestique lui parlait **chapeau bas**. *The servant spoke to him with his*
hat off.

Dites-moi donc, **la main sur la conscience**, *Tell me upon your conscience*
ce que vous en pensez. *what you think of it.*

Je ne songe à vous que **les larmes aux yeux**. *I can only think of you with*
tears in my eyes.

Diogène se promenait en plein jour, *Diogenes used to walk in broad daylight*
une lanterne à la main. *with a lantern in his hand.*

Je l'écoutai **le cœur palpitant**. *I listened to him my heart throbbing.*

Lui mort, ses fils se partagèrent le royaume. *He being dead, his sons*
divided the kingdom among themselves.

Il donna **tête baissée** dans les ennemis. *He rushed head foremost among*
the enemy.

PREPOSITIONS.

324 De, of, from (also—with, at, by, for).

(a) De depending on a Noun:—

1. In ATTRIBUTIVE Relation to denote the *origin, extraction, quality, quantity*, etc., answering the questions *whence? where... from? what kind (sort) of?* :—

Le marbre **de** Carrare est très pur. *The marble of Carrara is very pure.*

Le fromage **de** Hollande est fort. *Dutch cheese is strong.*

Les vins **de** France sont estimés. *French wines are valued.*

Une montre **d'**argent. *A silver watch.*

Molière était un poète **de** génie. *Molière was a poet of genius.*

Un verre **d'**eau fraîche est bien agréable. *A glass of fresh water is very pleasant.*

Voici une douzaine **de** tasses à thé. *Here are a dozen tea-cups.*

C'est un champ **de** quarante arpents. *It is a field of forty acres.*

Le premier **des** élèves sera récompensé. *The first of the pupils will be rewarded.*

Le premier banquier **de** la ville. *The first banker in the town.*

Une **des** histoires les plus surprenantes. } *One of the most surprising stories.*

Une histoire **des** plus surprenantes. }

L'art **d'**accomoder les restes. *The art of cooking remains.*

325 2. In APPPOSITION:—

La ville **de** Paris est bien administrée. *The city of Paris is well administered.*

Un coquin **de** domestique. *A rascal of a servant.*

Le titre **de** roi est souvent un vain son. *The title of a king is often an empty sound.*

C'était au mois **de** Juillet. *It was in the month of July.*

326 3. In POSSESSIVE (*Genitive*) Relation, answering the question *whose? of whom? of what?* :—

L'ardoise **de** l'écolier a coûté un franc. *The pupil's slate has cost a franc.*

La porte **du** jardin est ouverte. *The garden door is open.*

L'amour **d'**une mère est inaltérable (*Subjective*). *A mother's love is unalterable.*

L'amour **du** gain est une passion (*Objective*). *The love of gain is a passion.*

La crainte **de** votre ami est mal fondée (*Subj.*). *The fear of your friend is ill-founded.*

La crainte **de** la mort est pire que la mort (*Obj.*). *The fear of death is worse than death.*

327 (b) De depending on a VERB or ADJECTIVE:—

1. Indicating *origin, extraction, starting-point*, and the like; as,

D'où venez-vous?— *Where do you come from?*—

Je viens **de** chez moi. *I am coming from home.*

Le français dérive **du** latin. *French is derived from Latin.*

Eliacin sortit **du** sang des rois. *Eliacin sprang from royal blood.*

Ces vers sont **d'**Homère. *These verses are from Homer.*

Mazarin était originaire **d'**Italie. *Mazarin was a native of Italy.*

- 328 2. Indicating *separation, privation, want*: and the like, etc.: as,

Leurs corps furent privés de sépulture. *Their bodies were left unburied.*
 Il ne sait pas distinguer un chou d'un navet. *He cannot distinguish a cabbage from a turnip.*
 Je ne saurais me passer de vin. *I cannot do without wine.*

- 329 3. Indicating the cause of *feelings or emotions*, as—*pleasure, joy, sorrow, fear, anger*, and the like: as,

Je suis fâché de votre contretemps. *I am sorry for your disappointment.*
 Je me réjouis de votre succès. *I rejoice at your success.*
 Il s'étonne de leur opiniâtreté. *He is astonished at their obstinacy.*
 Ayez pitié de ce pauvre enfant. *Have pity on this poor child.*
 Vous vous affligez d'une chose *You grieve at a thing*
 dont vous devriez vous réjouir. *at which you ought to rejoice.*
 Il est honteux de sa basse origine. *He is ashamed of his low extraction.*
 Repentez-vous de votre faute. *Repent of your fault.*
 Elle rougit de honte. *She blushed for shame.*

- 330 4. Indicating *recognition, praise, accusation*: as,

On l'honora du titre de saint. *They honoured him with the title of saint.*
 Il fut accusé du crime de lèse-majesté. *He was charged with the crime of high treason.*
 Son maître le loue de sa persévérance. *His master praises him for his perseverance.*
 Je vous remercie de votre bonté. *I thank you for your kindness.*

- 331 5. Indicating the manner *in which*, the instrument *with which*, something is done: as,

Ulysse s'arma d'un pieu. *Ulysses armed himself with a stake.*
 Elle joue du violon. *She plays the violin.*

- 332 6. Indicating *providing, filling, covering, adorning*, and the like: as,

Ils remplirent la carafe d'eau fraîche. *They filled the decanter with fresh water.*
 Les Alpes sont couvertes de neige *The Alps are covered with snow*
 même en été, *even in summer.*
 Ces sauvages se nourrissent de poisson. *These savages feed (live) on fish.*
 Les arcs de triomphe étaient ornés de drapeaux. *The triumphal arches were adorned with banners.*

- 333 7. Indicating *perception, recollection, discussion* (including a great many *reflexive Verbs*); as,

Vous apercevez-vous de votre erreur?—*Are you aware of your mistake?—*
 Je m'en aperçois très bien. *I am fully aware of it.*
 Te souviens-tu encore de notre tour en Suisse? *Do you still remember our trip in Switzerland?*
 Elle ne se doute de rien. *She suspects nothing.*

334 8. Indicating in *respect of what* something is done ; as,

Ils se sont trompés **de** chemin. *They have mistaken their way.*
 Elle trembla **de** tout son corps. *She trembled all over her body.*
 Avez-vous changé d'avis? *Have you changed your mind?*
 Il y va **de** ma vie. *My life is at stake.*

Obs.—Il est aimé **de** tout le monde. *He is beloved by everybody.*
 Il fut tué **par** la populace. *He was killed by the mob.*

After a Verb in the Passive Voice **de** is generally used when the Verb denotes a *mental* action, **par** when it denotes a *physical* action.

335 (c) **De** used in Adverbial Phrases of *manner, time, quite* independently of the preceding Verb or Adjective :—

Je l'aime **de** tout mon cœur. *I love him with all my heart.*
 Il y va **de** bonne foi. *He acts in good faith.*
 J'entrerai **de** gré ou **de** force. *I shall enter by fair means or foul.*
De cette manière vous ne risquez rien. *In this manner you risk nothing.*
 Il arriva **de** grand matin. *He arrived early in the morning.*
 Nous partîmes **de** nuit. *We started by night.*
 Il ne m'a pas quitté **de** tout le jour. *He never left me all day long.*

336 **À, to, at, in, for** (also—*from, by, on*) :—

(a) **A** depending on a *Noun* ; in attributive relation,

1. To denote the *purpose, fitness, or destination* ; as,

Qui a inventé la poudre **à** canon? *Who (has) invented gunpowder?*
 Où est la boîte **aux** lettres? *Where is the letter-box?*
 Y a-t-il ici près une boîte **à** lettres? *Is there a letter-box near here?*
 Voici le moulin **à** café. *Here is the coffee-mill.*
 Vous fant-il du papier **à** lettres? *Do you want letter-paper?*
 J'ai fait emplette d'une douzaine de tasses **à** thé. *I have purchased a dozen
teacups.*
 Un pot **à** lait. *A milk-pot.*
 Le pot **au** lait. *The pot in which the milk is kept.*
 La route de Genève **à** Lausanne. *The road from Geneva to Lausanne.*
 Son dévouement **au** roi fut exemplaire. *His devotion to the king was
exemplary.*
 Voici la salle **à** manger, *Here is the dining-room,*
 et voilà les chambres **à** coucher. *and there are the bed-rooms.*
 Un conte **à** dormir debout. *A tale that would send you to sleep.*
 C'est un ouvrage **à** recommencer. *It is a work to be begun again.*
 Une maison **à** vendre ou **à** louer. *A house to sell or to let.*

- 337 2. To denote the *characteristic feature, manner, instrument* ; as,

J'admire cet enfant **aux** cheveux blonds. *I admire this fair-haired child.*
 L'histoire de l'homme **au** masque de fer est mystérieuse. *The story of the man with the iron mask is mysterious.*
 Les moulins à vent sont très nombreux en Hollande. *Windmills are very common in Holland.*
 Au bal d'hier j'avais un costume **à** la grecque. *In yesterday's ball I was dressed in the Greek fashion.*
 C'est un homme **à** prétentions. *He is a pretentious man.*
 J'aime le chocolat **à** la vanille. *I like chocolate flavoured with vanilla.*
 Nous jouons **aux** échecs (but—**du** piano, § 331). *We are playing at chess.*

- 338 3. To denote *possession* emphatically ; as,

Il a une maison **à** lui. *He has a house of his own.*
 Les poètes du 16^e siècle ont un style **à** eux. *The poets of the 16th century have a style of their own.*

- 339 (b) **À** depending on a *Verb* or *Adjective* :—

1. To denote the *Indirect Object* after Verbs of *giving, adding, teaching, telling, showing*, and the like ; answering the questions—*to whom ? for whom ?* as,

Elle a dévoué sa vie **à** ses enfants. *She has devoted her life to her children.*
 J'ai adressé ma pétition **au** ministre. *I have addressed my petition to the minister.*
 Il donne son bien **aux** pauvres. *She gives her own to the poor.*
 Elle enseigne les langues **à** ses élèves. *She teaches languages to her pupils.*

- 340 2. To denote the *Complement* after *Intransitive Verbs* and *Adjectives* denoting *fitness, likeness*, etc. ; as,

Avez-vous répondu **à** sa lettre ? *Have you replied to his letter ?*
 Les enfants reconnaissants obéissent **à** leurs parents. *Grateful children obey their parents.*
 Elle ressemble **à** sa grand'mère. *She resembles her grandmother.*
 Trop fumer nuit **à** la santé. *Smoking too much is injurious to health.*
 La reine Christine renonça **au** trône. *Queen C. renounced the throne.*
 Louis quatorze succéda **à** Louis treize. *Louis XIV. succeeded Louis XIII.*
 Ne vous fiez pas **à** cet homme. *Don't trust this man.*
 L'avocat conseilla **à** son client de céder. *The lawyer advised his client to yield.*
 Cette couleur plaît **aux** yeux. *This colour is pleasing to the eyes.*
 Songez **à** vos affaires. *Mind your business.*
 La copie est conforme **à** l'original. *The copy is conformable to the original.*
 Ce vieux Juif est âpre **au** gain. *This old Jew is greedy for gain.*

- 341 3. To denote the *Indirect Object* after Verbs of *taking, asking, removing, borrowing, wanting*, and the like; answering the questions *from whom? from what?* as,

On a enlevé le père à ses enfants. *These children have been deprived of their father.*
 Il demanda de l'argent à mon père. *He asked his father for money.*
 Le marchand de Venise emprunta de l'argent au Juif Shylock. *The merchant of Venice borrowed money of the Jew Shylock.*
 Il faut beaucoup d'argent à ce prodigue. *This spendthrift wants lots of money.*

- 342 4. To denote the *Possessor* after the Verbs *être, appartenir*; as,

Le moulin est à moi, tout aussi bien, *The mill is mine, as much so;*
 du moins, que la Prusse est au roi. *at least, as Prussia is the king's.*

- 343 (c) A used to form *Adverbial phrases* independently of the preceding Verb or Adjective:—

1. Answering the questions *how? wherewith?* as,

Il lui parla à la dérobée. *He spoke to him (to her) secretly.*
 On voit bien que cela a été fait à la hâte. *It is easy to see that this has been done in haste.*
 C'est bien à regret que nous renonçons à cette place. *It is much to our regret that we renounce this situation.*
 Avez-vous fait cela à dessein?— *Have you done that on purpose?—*
 Au contraire, monsieur. *On the contrary, sir.*
 Le canon était chargé à mitraille. *The cannon was loaded with grapeshot.*
 Cela est dessiné à la plume. *That is a pen-and-ink sketch.*
 Elle travaille à l'aiguille. *She is doing needlework.*
 Irez-vous à pied ou à cheval? *Shall you walk or ride?*
 Cela se vend à la livre. *That is sold by the pound.*

- 344 2. Answering questions *when? on what occasion?* as,

Au commencement je n'y voyais goutte. *At first I could not see at all.*
 A la fin je m'impatientai. *At last I lost patience.*
 Je partirai à l'instant. *I shall start instantly.*
 Nous nous levons à cinq heures du matin. *We rise at five o'clock in the morning.*
 A ces mots elle se mit à pleurer. *At these words she began to cry.*
 A son arrivée il fut bien accueilli. *On his arrival he was well received.*

- 345 3. Answering the questions *where? where to? whither? how far?* before names of *places* (but *not countries*, for which see **en** and **dans** § 346); as,

Il est à la maison; elle est à l'église. *He is at home; she is at church.*
 C'est à dix lieues d'ici. *It is ten leagues off.*
 Mon oncle est à la campagne. *My uncle is in the country.*
 Il fut trouvé au bord du chemin. *He was found by the roadside.*
 Il est assis à côté de vous. *He is seated beside you.*

346 Dans and en; in, inside, at.

Dans in a *determinate* sense (*with a determinate adj.*):—

(a) With regard to *place*, answering to the question *where?* as,

Il demeure **dans la** France méridionale.

He lives in Southern France.

Nous avons beaucoup vu **dans notre** voyage.

We have seen much in our journey.

C'est **dans la** guerre de Crimée qu'il fut blessé.

It is in the Crimean war that he was wounded.

Dans la ville de Paris.

Inside the city of Paris.

Thiers fut enfermé **dans la** prison de St. Mazas.

Thiers was shut up in the prison of St. Mazas.

Dans cette bataille il y eut un grand carnage.

In this battle there was a great slaughter.

Il est **dans votre** secret.

He is in your secret.

Dans sa fureur il ne ménagea rien.

In his fury he spared nobody.

En in a *general* sense (*without a determinate adj.*):—

Il demeure **en** France.

He lives in France.

Ils sont **en** voyage.

They are on a journey.

Ces tribus sont toujours **en** guerre.

These tribes are always at war.

Je crois que nous dînerons **en** ville.

I think we shall dine out.

Blanqui passa presque toute sa vie **en** prison.

Blanqui passed nearly all his life in prison.

Les troupes étaient rangées **en** bataille.

The troops were drawn up in battle array.

Dites-le-lui **en** secret.

Tell it him in secret.

Le taureau harcelé entra **en** fureur.

The goaded bull became furious.

348 (b) With regard to *time*, answering to the question *when? how long?* as,

Cela arriva **dans la** même année.

That happened in the same year.

Je finirai ce travail **dans** quinze jours.

I shall finish my work within a fortnight.

Dans huit jours.

In a week.

Victor Hugo est né **en** 1802.

Victor Hugo was born in 1802.

Je finirai ce travail **en** quinze jours.

It will take me a fortnight to complete this work.

D'aujourd'hui **en** huit jours.

To-day week.

Obs. 1. En must be used in preference to dans after diviser, changer :—

Il faut diviser cela **en** trois parties. *You must divide that into three parts.*
 La femme de Lot fut changée **en** sel. *Lot's wife was changed into salt.*

Obs. 2. Il m'a parlé en maître. He spoke to me as one having authority.

Il la traita **en** esclave. *He treated her as a slave.*

Je vous conseille **en** ami. *I advise you as a friend.*

349 Dans, in, inside, within :—

Le parc du Régent est **dans** Londres
 (**dans** la ville de L.).

Regent's Park is inside London.

Dans chaque maison il y a une
 cuisine.

In every house there is a kitchen.

Il y a deux cents lits **dans** cet
 hôpital.

There are 200 beds in this hospital.

351 Avant, before, with regard to time or order :—

Je me lève **avant** six heures.

I rise before six o'clock.

Je le désire **avant** tout.

I desire it before everything.

353 Après, after (time or order) :—

Il arriva **après** nous.

He arrived after us.

355 Entre, between, among :—

Soit dit **entre** nous.

Be it said between ourselves.

Ces animaux s'**entre**-déchirent.

These animals devour each other.

357 Sur, on, upon, over (from, towards) :—

Le château est bâti **sur** le rocher.

The castle is built on the rock.

Frankfort est situé **sur** le Main.

Frankfort is situated on the Main.

L'armée est **sur** pied.

The army is on foot.

L'aigle planait **sur** la vallée.

The eagle was hovering over the valley.

350 A, at, in, present at :—

Mon ami est-il **à** Londres ?—Il n'est
 plus **à** la ville, il est **à** la campagne.

*Is my friend in L. ?—He is no longer
 in town ; he is in the country.*

Est-il **à** la maison ?—Non, il n'y est
 pas.

Is he at home ?—No, he is not.

Le poète Gilbert mourut **à** l'hôpital.

The poet Gilbert died in a hospital.

352 Devant, before, with regard to place :—

La fontaine est **devant** l'hôtel de
 ville.

*The fountain is in front of the
 town-hall.*

Allez droit **devant** vous.

Go straight before you.

354 Derrière, behind (place) :—

L'écurie est **derrière** la maison.

The stable is behind the house.

356 Parmi, among, in the midst of :—

J'ai trouvé ce billet **parmi** mes
 papiers.

I found this note among my papers.

L'ivraie est mêlée **parmi** le bon
 grain.

The tares are mixed with the wheat.

358 Au-dessus de, above, beyond, upwards of :—

C'est **au-dessus** de nos forces.

It is above our strength.

Les élèves de douze ans et **au-dessus**.

The pupils of 12 years and upwards.

359 Par-dessus, over :—

Mettez cela **par-dessus**.

Put that over it.

Cet appartement donne **sur** le jardin.
This suite of rooms looks upon the garden.
 La terre se tourne **sur** elle-même.
The earth revolves on its axis.
 Ne jugez pas **sur** les apparences.
Don't judge from appearances.

361 Sous, under (in, before):—

Il s'assit **sous** un arbre.
He sat down under a tree.
 Les taupes vivent **sous** la terre.
Moles live under the earth.
 Cela se passa **sous** le règne de Henri IV.
That happened in the reign of Henry IV.
 C'est défendu **sous** peine de la vie.
It is forbidden on pain of death (lit. of life).
 Cela s'est passé **sous** nos yeux.
That happened before our eyes.

364 Vers, towards, about:—

Tournez-vous **vers** moi.
Turn towards me.
 Elle leva les mains **vers** le ciel.
She raised her hands towards heaven.
 Il mourut **vers** la fin du siècle dernier.
He died towards the end of last century.
 Les hirondelles arrivent **vers** le printemps.
The swallows arrive towards spring.

367 Près, proche (de), near, close:—
 Sa maison est **près** du chemin de fer.

His house is near the railway.
 Ambassadeur de France **près** le saint siège.
Ambassador of France to the Holy See.
 Il demeure à Passy, **près** Paris.
He lives in Passy, near Paris.
 Il est bien **près** de midi.
It is very near twelve o'clock.

360 De-dessus, from the top of:—
 Enlevez la poussière **de-dessus** ces livres.
Remove the dust from these books.

362 Au-dessous (de), dessous, below, beneath, under:—
 J'ai cherché inutilement dessus et **dessous** le lit.

I looked in vain on the bed and under it.
 Sa taille est **au-dessous** de la taille ordinaire.
He is undersized.

Cet emploi est **au-dessous** de lui.
This office is beneath him.
 Obs.—On a tiré cela **de dessous** la table.
They dragged that from beneath the table.

363 Par-dessous, under, underneath:—

Il avait un cilice **par-dessous** ses vêtements.
He had a hair-shirt under his garments.

365 Envers, towards (as regards feeling):—

Il est charitable **envers** les pauvres.
He is charitable to the poor.

366 Contre, against, contrary to:—
 Marchons **contre** l'ennemi.
Let us march against the enemy.
 Cela est **contre** son habitude.
That is contrary to his habit.

368 Auprès de, near, with, to:—
 La rivière passe **auprès** de cette ville.

The river flows near that town.
 L'ambassadeur de sa Majesté **auprès** du roi de Prusse.
Ambassador of his Majesty to the King of Prussia.
 Il a libre accès **auprès** du prince.
He has free access to the prince.
 Votre mal n'est rien **auprès** du sien.
Your complaint is nothing to his.

Il est allé **loger proche** le (proche du) palais.
He has taken up his abode near the palace.

369 Depuis, *since, from* (time and place) :—

Il n'a pas mangé **depuis** hier.
He has not eaten anything since yesterday.

La France s'étend de l'est à l'ouest, **depuis** les Vosges jusqu'à l'Océan.
France extends in the direction of east to west, from the Vosges as far as the Ocean.

371 Par, *by, through, out of* :—

Je passerai **par** Calais.
I shall pass through Calais.
Par où s'en est-il allé ?—**Par** ici.
Which way has he gone?—This way.

Par bonheur le train s'arrêta à temps.
Fortunately the train stopped in time.
 Où allez-vous **par** cette pluie-là ?
Where are you going in this rain ?
 Il a fait cela **par** crainte.
He did that through fear.

Le courrier arrive deux fois **par** semaine.
The mail arrives twice a week.

373 Voici, *here is, here are* :—

Voici le percepteur (les percepteurs).
Here is the tax collector (here are the tax collectors).

Nous **voici** quatre.
Now there are four of us.

Je vous apporte l'ordre **que** **voici**.
I bring you this order here.

Me **voici** ; que voulez-vous ?
Here I am ; what do you want ?

Nous **voici** à la fin de l'hiver.
Now we are at the end of winter.

Voici venir le printemps.
Now the spring is coming.

Voici de quoi se composait son bagage.
This is what his luggage consisted of.

Il m'a noirci **auprès** du ministre.
He has traduced me in the opinion of the minister.

370 Dès, *from = to start from* :—

Dès aujourd'hui le train de Paris arrivera à huit heures.

From to-day the Paris train will arrive at eight o'clock.

Je vis bien **dès** lors où il voulait en venir.

I saw well from that time what he was driving at.

372 A travers, **au travers** de, *across, athwart, through* :—

Ils allèrent **à travers** (les) champs.
They went through the fields.

Il se fit jour **au travers** des ennemis.
He cut his way through the enemies.

On voit le jour **au travers** des vitres.

One can see the daylight through the window-panes.

Je vois clair **au travers** de toutes ses finesses.

I can see through all his cunning schemes.

374 Voilà, *there is, there are* :—

Voilà l'homme que vous demandez.
There is the man you want.

Ah, **vous voilà** déjà de retour !
Oh, here you are again !

Les beaux sentiments **que** **voilà** !
Fine sentiments these are !

Vous voulez de l'argent ; **en voilà**.
You want money ; here is some.

Le **voilà** qui arrive.
There he comes.

Voilà qu'on sonne !
There ! some one is ringing.

Du pain et du lait, **voilà** son déjeuner de tous les jours.
Bread and milk, that is his breakfast every day.

CONJUNCTIONS.

375 I.—*Co-ordinative, i.e.* Conjunctions which link words or *Co-ordinate (Independent) Clauses* :—

Et le riche **et** le pauvre, **et** le faible **et** le fort, *Both the rich and poor, both the weak and strong,*
 Vont tous également des douleurs à la mort. *Hasten alike from sufferings to death.*

Il **ne** faut être **ni** prodigue **ni** avare. *One must be neither prodigal nor avaricious.*
 Personne **ne** peut-il nous voir **ni** nous entendre? *Can anybody either see or hear us?*

Ni lui **ni** son frère ne sont coupables. *Neither he nor his brother is guilty.*
 Il passa cinq jours entiers **sans** manger **ni** boire. *He spent five whole days without either eating or drinking.*

Ils ne savaient lequel ils devaient admirer davantage: **ou** un roi de Suède qui à l'âge de vingt-deux ans, donnait la couronne de Pologne, **ou** le prince qui la refusait. *They did not know which most to admire: whether (either) a king of Sweden who at the age of twenty-two gave away the crown of Poland, or the prince who refused it.*

Ainsi que le soleil dissipe les nuages, **ainsi** la vérité détruit le mensonge. *Just as the sun dispels the clouds, thus truth defeats falsehood.*
Non-seulement il n'est pas savant, **mais** il est très ignorant. *Not only is he not learned, but he is very ignorant.*

Tant en paix **qu'**en guerre. *Both in peace and war.*
 On disait qu'il ne viendrait pas, **cependant** le voici. *It was said he was not coming, yet here he is.*

Il est encore très jeune, et **néanmoins** il est fort sage. *He is still very young, and yet he is very well behaved.*

Tantôt il veut une chose, **tantôt** il en veut une autre. *Sometimes he wants one thing, another time he wants something else.*

Plus la haine est injuste, **plus** elle est cruelle. *The more unjust hate is, the more cruel it is.*

376 II.—*Subordinative, i.e.* Conjunctions which link *Subordinate (Dependent) Clauses* with the Principal Sentence :—

(a) With the following Verb in the *Indicative* or *Conditional*; as,

1. Je ne sais pas **si** elle viendra. *I do not know whether she will come.*

Je ne savais pas **si** elle viendrait. *I did not know whether she would come.*

Si elle arrive pendant mon absence, dites-lui d'attendre. *If she arrives during my absence, tell her to wait.*

Il y a deux ans **que** (= depuis que) je ne suis venu en France. *I have not been to France for two years.*

Quand je le voudrais, je ne le pourrais pas, } *Though (even if) I would I could not do it.*
 or, Je le voudrais **que** je ne le pourrais pas, }

Quand il viendra, remettez lui ce billet. *When he comes, deliver him this note.*

J'en jugerai **lorsque** je serai mieux informé. *I shall decide on it when I am better informed.*

Il avait le secret de plaire **lors même** qu'il contredisait. *He had the secret of pleasing, even when he contradicted.*

- 377 2. **A peine** fûmes-nous arrivés,
que l'orage éclata.
 Il est prodigue, **aussi** est-il
 criblé de dettes.
Peut-être ne viendra-t-il pas.
 S'il n'a pas réussi, **toujours**
 a-t-il fait son devoir.
 S'il n'est pas riche, **du moins**
 est-t-il à son aise.
- Hardly had we arrived
 when the storm burst out.
 He is prodigal, consequently he is
 over head and ears in debt.
 Perhaps he won't come.
 Though he has not succeeded, at any rate
 he has done his duty.
 Though he be not rich, at least
 he is in easy circumstances.*

After the above Adverbial Conjunctions, as also after **encore**, *even then*; **aussi bien**, *a plus forte raison*, *with still more reason*; **tout au plus**, *at most*; the Verb is placed *before* the Subject.

- 378 3. Les hommes se jugent mal, *Men misjudge each other,*
parce qu'ils se méconnaissent. *because they do not know each other.*
Puisque vous le voulez, faites-le donc ! *Since you wish it, do it then.*
 Je ferai **comme** vous dites. *I shall do as you say.*
 Il faut battre le fer **pendant** *One must strike the iron while*
(tandis) qu'il est chaud. *it is hot.*
 J'en userai avec lui, **selon qu'il** *I shall treat him according as*
 en usera avec moi. *he treats me.*
 Il s'amuse, **tandis que** nous travaillons. *He amuses himself whilst we*
on the contrary are working.
 Il vous ressemble, **si ce n'est** *He bears a strong likeness to you, only*
qu'il est plus petit. *he is shorter.*
 Je ne saurais vous accorder cette permission, *I cannot grant you this*
attendu que mes ordres s'y opposent. *permission,*
inasmuch as it is contrary to
my instructions.
 Ne vous gênez pas, restez ici *Make yourself at home, and stay here*
tant que vous voudrez. *as long as you like.*

- 379 (b) With the following Verb in the *Subjunctive*, see § 91 ; as,
- Je vous le dis **afin que** vous le sachiez. *I tell you in order that you may know it.*
- Approchez **que** (= afin que) je vous parle. *Come nearer in order that I may speak to you.*
- On le fera **quoique** vous en disiez. *It shall be done whatever you may say.*
- Je vous le dis **quoique** vous le sachiez déjà. *I tell it to you though you know it already.*
- Quoi que ce soit** qu'elle dise, *Whatever she may say,*
elle ne me persuadera pas. *she will not persuade me.*
- En cas qu'**elle soit malade, *In case she should be ill,*
remettez la lettre au domestique. *deliver the letter to the servant.*
- Encore qu'**il soit jeune, il ne laisse *Young though he be, he is nevertheless*
pas d'être fort sage. *very well behaved.*
- J'y consens, **pourvu que** vous fassiez *I consent to it, provided you take*
les premières démarches. *the first steps.*
- Romulus disparut **sans** qu'on sût *Romulus disappeared without it*
jamais de quelle manière il avait péri. *ever being known how he had perished.*
- Bien qu'**il soit pauvre, il est content. *Although he is poor he is content.*

- Que sert d'amasser à **moins qu'**
on ne jouisse? *What is the good of hoarding unless
one enjoys one's fortune?*
- Pour peu que** vous m'aimiez,
ne me parlez plus de cette affaire. *If you love me ever so little,
don't talk to me any more about this
business.*
- Où que** vous soyez, j'irai vous rejoindre. *Wherever you be, I shall join you.*
- Voltaire mourut **avant que** la
révolution française éclatât. *Voltaire died before the
French Revolution broke out.*
- Cachez-vous, **de crainte qu'**il ne vous trouve. *Hide yourself, lest he
should find you.*
- Malgré qu'**il en ait, nous savons son secret. *In spite of him we know
his secret.*
- Cachez-lui votre dessein, **de peur**
(**de crainte**) **qu'**il ne le traverse. *Conceal your design from him,
lest he should thwart it.*
- Amusez-vous à lire **en attendant qu'**il vienne. *Amuse yourself with
reading until he comes.*

380 (c) With the Verb in the *Indicative* to denote an accomplished fact, or in the *Subjunctive* to denote a contingency ; as,

- Que** cela soit, je n'en disconviens pas. *That this is so I do not dispute.*
- S'il** est malade et **qu'**il soit empêché de venir... *If he is ill and prevented
from coming...*
- Il a travaillé **de façon que** son
maître est satisfait de lui. *He worked so that his master
is satisfied with him.*
- Qu'**il travaille **de façon que** son maître soit satisfait de lui. *Let him work
so that his master may be satisfied with him.*
- Vous écrivez **de manière qu'**on
ne peut déchiffrer votre écriture. *You write so that one
cannot decipher your writing.*
- Écrivez donc **de manière qu'**on puisse le lire. *Do write so that one
may read it.*

381 (d) With the Verb in the *Infinitive* ; as,

- Il le fais **afin de** vous obliger. *I do it to oblige you.*
- Il est assez riche **pour** se passer cette fantaisie. *He is rich enough to gratify
this fancy.*
- Réfléchissez toujours **avant d'agir**. *Always reflect before acting.*
- À moins d'être** fou il n'est pas
possible de raisonner ainsi. *It is not possible to argue
thus, unless one be a fool.*
- Agissez, **au lieu de** vous amuser à des riens. *Act instead of trifling
away your time.*
- Après** avoir déposé la couronne,
Charles quint se retira dans un couvent. *After having resigned the crown,
Charles V. withdrew to a convent.*
- La garnison se rendit **sans** coup férir. *The garrison surrendered without
striking a blow.*
- Taisez vous **de crainte de** l'offenser. *Do be silent, lest you should
offend him.*
- Loin de** me remercier il m'a dit des injures. *So far from thanking me he
insulted me.*
- Faute d'avoir** été prévenu à temps, je ne pourrai m'y rendre. *For want of having been informed in time,
I shall not be able to go there.*
- Je mourrai **plutôt que** de le souffrir. *I will rather die than submit to it.*
- Je le ferai **de manière** à le satisfaire. *I shall do it so as to satisfy him.*

382 **Que** does duty either as a *Conjunction*, an *Adverb*, or as a *Relative Pronoun* in so many different ways that it calls for separate treatment :—

1. Il dit **que** c'est vrai. *He says (that) it is true.*
 Je suis certain **qu'**il viendra. *I am sure (that) he will come.*
 Le fripon **qu'**il était, m'emporta mille francs. *The rascal that he was,*
he ran away with a thousand francs of mine.
 L'homme **que** j'ai vu. *The man (that) I have seen.*

Que used as a *Conjunction* to link a *Dependent Substantive Clause*, or as a *Relat. Pron.* to link a *Dependent Adjective Clause*, to its *Principal Clause* may not be omitted in French.

- 383** 2. Il est **plus** riche **que** vous. *He is richer than you.*
 Il est **aussi** riche **que** vous. *He is as rich as you.*
 Un homme **tel que** lui (see § 307). *Such a man as he.*
- 384** 3. Il **ne** fait **que** boire et manger. *He does nothing but eat and drink.*
 Je **ne** veux **que** le voir. *I only want to see it.*
 Il **ne** fait **qu'**aller et venir. *He does nothing but run hither and thither.*
 Il **ne** fait **que** de sortir. *He has but just gone out.*
Qu'il vienne ou non, cela m'est égal. *Whether he comes or not, it is all one to me.*
- 385** 4. **Que** (= **combien**) de fois je suis venu ici! *How many times I have come here!*
Que (= **combien**) de services il m'a rendus! *What services he has rendered me!*
Que n'attendez-vous? (= **pourquoi** n'attendez-vous pas?) *Why don't you wait?*
Que (= **pourquoi**) tardez-vous? *Why do you delay?*
Que (= **à quoi**) sert de se flatter? *What is the good of flattering one's self?*
 Le jour **que** (= **où**) cela est arrivé. *The day on which that happened.*
 A peine eus-je pris la parole, **qu'** *Hardly had I begun to speak,*
 (= **lorsqu'**) il m'interrompit. *when he interrupted me.*
 Je n'eus pas plus tôt dit cela **que** *I had no sooner said that than*
 (= **avant que**) je m'en repentis. *I repented.*
 Voilà bien longtemps **que** (= **depuis que**) *It is now long since*
 je ne lui ai parlé. *I spoke to him.*
 L'hiver **qu'** (= **pendant lequel**) il fit si froid. *That winter when it was so cold.*
- 386** 5. **Comme** il était tard et **qu'** (= **comme**) *As it was late and as they were*
 on craignait la chute du jour, on partit. *afraid of nightfall, they started.*
S'il vient et **qu'**il veuille rester, *If he comes and (if) he should*
 dites-lui que je n'y suis pas. *want to stay, tell him I am not in.*

In like manner **que** is also used instead of other Conjunctions (see § 3) to avoid their repetition in two or more consecutive clauses.

- 387 6. Il ne fait point de voyage **qu'** (= **sans qu'**) *He never takes a journey but*
 il ne lui arrive quelque accident. *some accident happens to him.*
 Retirez-vous **qu'** (= **de crainte qu'**) *Withdraw, lest*
 il **ne** vous maltraite. *he should ill-treat you.*
 Il **ne** peut **rien** résulter de vos projets *Nothing can come out of your*
que (= **excepté**) des malheurs. *projects but misfortunes.*

Que is used, for the sake of brevity, instead of other Conjunctions; as, **quand**, **si**, and all those compounded with **que**, as, **lorsque**, **depuis que**, etc.

- 388 7. C'est une belle chose **que** de garder le *It is a fine thing to keep a*
 secret (= Garder le secret est une belle chose). *secret.*
 Ce sont des qualités nécessaires pour *Gentleness and firmness are indispens-*
 régner **que** la douceur et la fermeté *able qualities for reigning.*
 (= La douceur et la fermeté sont
 des qualités nécessaires).

Que is used *redundantly* (generally as a correlative to **c'est**, **ce sont**, see § 276) before the *logical* subject when the latter is placed at the end of the sentence, for the sake of giving more prominence to the *Predicate*. In this respect **que** may be said to stand for a colon:

C'est une belle chose : garder le secret.

APPENDIX.

389

GENDER OF NOUNS.

The Gender of a Noun may be ascertained either (a) by its meaning, (b) by its derivation, or (c) by its termination.

(a) GENDER DETERMINED BY THE Meaning.

Masculine :—

- (1) The names of **Males, Months, Seasons, Days, Winds, Trees, Metals, and Mountains** ;
- (2) **Countries, Towns, and Rivers** not ending in e mute ;
- (3) **Other Parts of Speech** used substantively :—
un homme, *man* ; le mai, *May* ;
le printemps, *spring* ; le lundi,
Monday ; l'aiglon, *north-*
wind ; le poirier, *pear tree* ;
le fer, *iron* ; le Vésuve, *Vesuvius*.
le Danemark, Paris, le Pô ;
le boire et le manger, *eating and drinking*.

PRINCIPAL EXCEPTIONS :—

- to (4) le courage, l'égoïsme, le vice.
- to (5) le Bengale, le Hanovre, le Mexique, le Péloponnèse ; le*
Caire, le* Hâvre ; le Danube,
l'Ebre, l'Euphrate, le Gange,
le Rhône, le Tage, le Tibre.

* A few names of *towns*, quite exceptionally, take the Definite Article.

Feminine :—

- (4) The names of **Females, Virtues and Vices, Flowers and Fruits, Holy days** ;
- (5) **Countries, Towns, and Rivers** ending in e mute :—
la femme, *woman* ; la charité,
charity ; l'avarice, *avarice* ; la
luxure, *lust* ; la tulipe, *tulip* ;
la poire, *pear* ; la St. Jean,
St. John's (Midsummer) Day.
la France, Constantinople, la
Seine.

PRINCIPAL EXCEPTIONS :—

- to (1) la caution, *security* ; la connaissance, *acquaintance* ; la dupe,
dupe ; la flûte, *flute-player* ; la
pratique, *customer* ; la recrue,
recruit ; la sentinelle, *sentinel* ;
la victime, *victim* ; une aubé-
pine, *hawthorn* ; l'ébène, *ebony* ;
l'épine, *spine* ; la vigne, *vine* ;
la yeuse, *holm-oak* ; la bise,
north-wind ; la brise, *breeze* ;
la mousson, *monsoon*.

390

(b) GENDER ASCERTAINED BY Derivation.

Masculine :—Nouns derived from Latin **Masculine*** and **Neuter†** Nouns :—le poète, le livre, l'exemple, le corps, le lac, etc.

(N.B. Nearly 92 per cent. of French Nouns have the same Gender as in Latin—reckoning French Masc. as the substitute for Latin Neuter. See Dawson and Fry's *French Genders*.)

Feminine :—Nouns derived from Latin **Feminine** Nouns :—la justice, la voix, la main, la face.

PRINCIPAL EXCEPTIONS:—

391

* Among Nouns in **-eur** derived from Latin Masculine Nouns ending in **-or**, only **l'honneur, le labeur, les pleurs** remain Masculine in French, all the others have become **Feminine**, as, —la faveur, la chaleur, la fleur, etc.

† A certain number of Nouns in **-e** (about 120), although derived from Latin **Neuter** Nouns, are **Feminine** in French. This anomaly has been attributed to their frequent occurrence in the plural, the endings—**a, ia**—of which caused them erroneously to be assimilated to the Feminine Nouns of the First Latin Declension:—

l'amande (amygdalum)	<i>almond.</i>	la grenouille (ranunculum)	<i>frog.</i>
l'arme (pl. arma)	<i>arms.</i>	la feuille (pl. folia)	<i>leaf.</i>
l'armoire (armarium)	<i>wardrobe.</i>	la graine (granum)	<i>seed.</i>
la bible (pl. biblia)	<i>Bible.</i>	l'horloge (horologium)	<i>clock.</i>
la cervelle (cerebellum)	<i>brains.</i>	l'huile (oleum)	<i>oil.</i>
la cymbale (cymbalum)	<i>cymbal.</i>	l'idole (idolum)	<i>idol.</i>
la date (datum)	<i>date.</i>	la joie (pl. gaudia)	<i>joy.</i>
la dette (debitum)	<i>debt.</i>	la jument (jumentum)	<i>mare.</i>
l'enseigne (pl. insignia)	<i>ensign.</i>	la lèvre (labrum)	<i>lip.</i>
l'encre (encaustum)	<i>ink.</i>	la merveille (pl. mirabilia)	<i>marvel.</i>
les entrailles (pl. interanea)	<i>entrails.</i>	l'orge (hordeum)	<i>barley.</i>
l'écritoire (scriptorium)	<i>inkstand.</i>	la pointe (punctum)	<i>point.</i>
l'épitaphe (epitaphium)	<i>epitaph.</i>	la promesse (promissum)	<i>promise.</i>
l'épithète (epithetum)	<i>epithet.</i>	la réponse (responsum)	<i>answer.</i>
l'étable (stabulum)	<i>stables.</i>	la vitre (vitrum)	<i>pane.</i>
l'étude (studium)	<i>study.</i>	la pêche (persicum)	<i>peach, etc.</i>

392

(C) GENDER DETERMINED BY THE Termination.

Masculine:—Nouns ending in—

(6) a sounded vowel or diphthong—
a, é, i, o, u, ou, etc.

(7) **b, c, d, g, h, l, p, q, z** (without exception); **f, m, n, r, s, t** (with exceptions).

(8) **-aire** (L. arius, arium); **-ment** (L. mentum); **-age** (L. aticum); **-ége** (L. egium); **-isme, -asme, -iste** (L. ismus, asmus); **-cle** (L. culus, culum), **-ôme, -ème**.

L'opéra, *opera*; le cri, *cry*; le thé, *tea*; le numéro, *number*; l'écu, *shield* (*dollar*); le bateau, *boat*; l'essai, *trial*; le jeu, *game*; etc.

Le suc, *sap*; le fard, *paint*; le joug, *yoke*; le sol, *soil*; le cap, *cape*; le nez, *nose*.

Le suif, *tallow*; l'essaim, *warmth*; l'examen, *examination*; le jour, *day*; le tas, *heap*; le toit, *roof*.

Le dictionnaire, *dictionary*; le serment, *oath*, le voyage, *journey*; le cortège, *procession*; le schisme, *schism*; l'article, *article*; etc.

Feminine:—Nouns ending in—

(9) **e** **mute** preceded by vowel or diphthong;

-lle, -gne, -sse, -ine;
-ance, -ence, -ace, -ade;
-ude, -une, -ure;
-ière, -oire.

(10) **-lon, -son, -çon, -x.**

(11) **-eur, -té, tié** (if abstract).

La rosée, *dew*; la raie, *streak*; la pluie, *rain*, etc.;

la bataille, *battle*; la campagne, *country*; la crosse, *crozier*; la cuisine, *kitchen*;

la constance, *constancy*; la science, *science*; la place, *place*; la salade, *salad*; l'étude, *study*; la lune, *moon*; la culture, *culture*;

la cafetière, *coffee-house*; la mémoire, *memory*.

La nation, *nation*; la maison, *house*; la leçon, *lesson*; la voix, *voice*.

La peur, *fear*; la pitié, *piety*; la pitié, *piety*.

PRINCIPAL EXCEPTIONS:—

to (9) l'amphibie (ἀμφίβιος), *amphibi-an*; le génie (L. genius), *genius*; l'incendie (L. incendium), *conflagration*; l'apogée (ἀπόγειον), *apogee* (*zenith*); l'élysée (elysium), *elysium*; le lycée (λύκειον), *grammar-school*; le musée (museum), *museum*; le trophée (tropæum), *trophy*; le foie (ficatum), *liver*; le parapluie, *umbrella*.

Le libelle, *libel*; le boutte-selle, *signal to mount*; le violoncelle, *violin-cello*; le silence (L. silentium), *silence*; l'espace (L. spatium), *space*; le grade (L. gradus), *grade*; le prélude, *prelude*; le mercure, *quick-silver*; le murmure, *murmur*; l'augure (L. augurium), *augury*; le parjure (L. perjurium), *perjury*; le cimetière (L. cœmeterium), *cemetery*; le derrière, *back*; le boire, *drinking*; le déboire, *mortification*; le grimoire, *gratuity*; l'ivoire (L. adj. eburneum), *ivory*; le pou-boire, *conjuring-book*; and those derived from Latin nouns ending in **erium, orium**.

to (10) **Concrete nouns in ion**:—le bastion, *bastion*; le million, *million*; le scorpion, *scorpion*. Diminutives in **on**:—l'oison, *gosling*, etc.; le hameçon, *fish-hook*; le poison, *poison*; le poisson, *fish*; le soupçon, *suspicion*; le tison, *firebrand*.

to (11) all in **eur** denoting trades, professions:—le ramoneur,

chimney-sweep, etc.; also:—le bonheur, *happiness*; le malheur, *unhappiness*; l'honneur, *honour*; le cœur, *heart*; le chœur, *choir*; l'équateur, *equator*; les pleurs, *tears*. The following **Concrete nouns in té**:—le comité, *committee*; le comté, *county*; le côté, *side*; l'arrêté, *resolution*; l'été, *summer*; le pâté, *pie*; le traité, *treaty*.

to (6) **Abstract nouns in té, tié**, see (11); la villa, *villa*; la merci, *mercy*; la fourmi, *ant*; l'après-midi, *afternoon*; la foi, *faith*; la loi, *law*; la paroi, *wall*; l'eau, *water*; la peau, *skin*; la glu, *glue*; la tribu, *tribe*; la vertu, *virtue*.

to (7) La clef, *key*; la nef, *nave*; la soif, *thirst*; la faim, *hunger*; la fin, *end*; la main, *hand*; la chair, *flesh*; la cuiller, *spoon*; la cour, *court-yard*; la tour, *tower*; la mer, *sea*; la brebis, *ewe*; la fois, *times*; l'oasis, *oasis*; la souris, *mouse*; la vis, *screw*.

to (8) L'affaire, *affair*; la chaire, *flesh*; la circulaire, *circular*; la grammaire, *grammar*; la jument, *mare*.

Those in **age** not derived from the Latin -aticum:—

la cage (L. cavea), *cage*; l'image (L. imago), *image*; la page (L. pagina), *page*; la plage, (L. plaga), *shore*; la rage, (L. rabies), *rage*.

N.B. Of the 10,000 words ending in **e mute** no less than 3,000 are *masculine*; it is therefore a very unsafe rule to go by the mere ending of **e mute** to determine the gender.

394 NOUNS WITH TWO GENDERS, ACCORDING TO THEIR MEANING OR DERIVATION.

	Masculine.	Feminine.
aide	<i>assistant</i>	<i>assistance.</i>
aigle	<i>eagle</i>	<i>standard.</i>
amour	<i>love (sing.), cupid (sing. and plur.)</i>	<i>love (plur.).</i>
aune	<i>alder (L. alnus)</i>	<i>elt (L. ulna).</i>
barbe	<i>barb</i>	<i>beard.</i>
câpre	<i>privateer (capere)</i>	<i>caper (capparis).</i>
carpe	<i>root of the hand (carpus)</i>	<i>carp (carpa).</i>
cartouche	<i>scroll</i>	<i>cartridge.</i>
chose	<i>quelque chose, something</i>	<i>thing.</i>
coche	<i>fly-boat : coach</i>	<i>sow ; notch.</i>
cornette	<i>cornet</i>	<i>mob-cap.</i>
couleur	<i>particular shade of a colour, as— un ruban couleur de feu— flame-coloured</i>	<i>colour, in general.</i>
couple	<i>pair (male and female)</i>	<i>couple, brace.</i>
crêpe	<i>crape (crispus)</i>	<i>pancake.</i>
critique	<i>critic (criticus)</i>	<i>criticism (critica, i.e. ars).</i>
delice	<i>delight (sing.) (delicium)</i>	<i>delight (plur.) (deliciæ).</i>
enseigne	<i>ensign</i>	<i>colours ; signboard (in-signia).</i>
exemple	<i>example, in a general sense</i>	<i>writing copy.</i>
faux	<i>forgery (falsus)</i>	<i>scythe (falcem).</i>
forêt	<i>drill, gimlet = le foret</i>	<i>forest.</i>
foudre (fulgur)	<i>thunderbolt, used figuratively for a great warrior, orator ; vat</i>	<i>thunderbolt, lit. lightning.</i>
fourbe	<i>knave</i>	<i>knavery.</i>
garde	<i>keeper, guardian</i>	<i>watch, nurse ; hilt.</i>
greffe	<i>record-(clerk's) office (graphium)</i>	<i>graft.</i>
guide	<i>guide</i>	<i>reins (plur.).</i>
hymne	<i>lyric poem</i>	<i>hymn (church service).</i>
lis (s sounded)	<i>lily</i>	<i>la fleur de lys.</i>
livre	<i>book (liber)</i>	<i>pound, £ (libra).</i>
manche	<i>handle (manicuum)</i>	<i>sleeve (manica), Channel.</i>
manœuvre	<i>artisan, labourer</i>	<i>seamanship, rigging.</i>
mémoire	<i>memorandum, bill, memoir</i>	<i>memory.</i>
merci	<i>thanks</i>	<i>mercy, pity.</i>
mode	<i>mood, manner, mode</i>	<i>fashion.</i>
mort	<i>dead body, deceased.</i>	<i>death.</i>
moule (musculus)	<i>mould, cast (modulus)</i>	<i>cockle, mussel.</i>
mousse	<i>cabin-boy (Ital. mozzo)</i>	<i>moss, (Germ. moos) froth.</i>

	Masculine.	Feminine.
œuvre (§ 391)	<i>collected works of an engraver or of a musician; le grand—, philosopher's stone</i>	<i>work, deed, in general.</i>
office	<i>office, business</i> (officium)	<i>larder, pantry, servants' hall</i>
orge	—mondé, <i>peeled barley</i> ; —perlé, <i>pearl barley</i>	<i>barley, in general.</i>
orgue	<i>organ</i> (sing.)	<i>organ</i> (plur.).
page	<i>page, attendant</i>	<i>page of a book</i> (pagina).
paillasse	<i>clown</i>	<i>palliasse, mattress.</i>
palme	<i>hand-breadth</i> (palmus)	<i>palm</i> (palma).
Pâques	<i>Easter</i>	<i>passover</i> ; Pâques fleuries, <i>Palm Sunday.</i>
parallèle	<i>comparison</i> (parallelon)	<i>parallel line</i> (parallela).
pendule	<i>pendulum</i>	<i>clock.</i>
période	<i>highest pitch</i> ; dernier —, <i>close</i>	<i>period of time, epoch.</i>
personne	<i>no (any) body</i> (Pron.)	<i>person</i> (Noun).
physique	<i>bodily constitution</i>	<i>natural philosophy.</i>
pique	<i>spade</i> (at cards)	<i>pike, pique.</i>
pivoine	<i>bull-finch</i>	<i>peony.</i>
plane	<i>plane-tree</i>	<i>plane</i> (carpenter's).
platine	<i>platina</i>	<i>lock-plate.</i>
poêle (patella)	<i>stove, pall</i> (pensile)	<i>frying-pan.</i>
poste	<i>post, duty, station</i>	<i>post-office, post.</i>
pourpre	<i>purple</i> (hue)	<i>purple</i> (dye); —robe, <i>royal dignity.</i>
prétexte	<i>pretext</i> (prætextum)	<i>toga</i> (Roman gown) (prætexta, i.e. toga).
relâche	<i>relaxation</i>	<i>anchorage.</i>
remise	<i>fly</i> (coach)	<i>coach-house, remittance, delay.</i>
solde	<i>balance</i> (of an account)	<i>soldier's pay.</i>
somme	<i>sleep, nap</i> (somnus)	<i>sum</i> (summa).
souris	<i>smile</i> (from sourire)	<i>mouse</i> (soricem).
statuaire	<i>statuary</i> (artist)	<i>statuary</i> (art of —).
teneur	<i>holder</i>	<i>tenor, purport.</i>
tour	<i>tour, turn</i> (fr. tourner)	<i>tower</i> (turre).
triomphe	<i>triumph</i>	<i>trump.</i>
trompette	<i>trumpeter</i>	<i>trumpet.</i>
vague	<i>space, vagueness</i> (vagus)	<i>wave</i> (O. Germ. wâc).
vapeur	<i>steamer</i>	<i>steam</i>
vase	<i>vessel, vase</i> (vas)	<i>slime, mud</i> (O. Germ. waso).
voile	<i>veil</i> (velum)	<i>sail</i> (pl. vela, § 391).

Obs.—A few Nouns are of **Common Gender**:—adversaire, artiste, auteur, camarade, écrivain (writer), élève (pupil), enfant,² esclave, patriote, peintre, pensionnaire (boarder), poète, pupille (ward), témoin (witness), etc.

² *Plural always Masculine.*

395 NOUNS WITH A DIFFERENT MEANING IN THE SINGULAR AND THE PLURAL.

l'aboi	<i>bark, barking.</i>	les abois (aux a-bois)	<i>at bay.</i>
l'arme	<i>arm, weapon.</i>	les armes	<i>coat of arms, bearings.</i>
l'arrêt	<i>decree, judgment.</i>	les arrêts	<i>arrest.</i>
l'assise	<i>layer, stratum.</i>	les assises	<i>assizes.</i>
l'auspice	<i>augury.</i>	les auspices	<i>auspices.</i>
la (bonne) grâce	<i>gracefulness.</i>	les bonnes grâces	<i>good graces, favour.</i>
le ciseau	<i>chisel.</i>	les ciseaux	<i>the scissors.</i>
la défense	<i>defence.</i>	les défenses	<i>tusks.</i>
le denier	<i>farthing.</i>	les deniers	<i>funds.</i>
l'enfer	<i>hell.</i>	les enfers	<i>infernal regions.</i>
l'esprit	<i>spirit, ghost, mind.</i>	les esprits	<i>senses, spirits.</i>
l'état	<i>state, condition.</i>	les états (généraux, etc.)	<i>parliament, states-general.</i>
le faste	<i>pomp, show.</i>	les fastes	<i>annals, records.</i>
le fer	<i>iron.</i>	les fers	<i>fetters, chains.</i>
le gage	<i>pledge, pawn.</i>	les gages	<i>wages.</i>
la grâce	<i>grace, mercy.</i>	les grâces	<i>Graces (mythol.).</i>
l'honneur	<i>honour.</i>	les honneurs	<i>dignities, honours.</i>
l'instance	<i>instance (law), law-suit.</i>	les instances (avec instance)	<i>entreaties.</i>
le jour	<i>day.</i>	les jours	<i>most earnestly.</i>
la lettre	<i>letter.</i>	les lettres	<i>life.</i>
la lumière	<i>sight.</i>	les lumières	<i>literature.</i>
la lunette	<i>telescope.</i>	les lunettes	<i>intelligence, knowledge.</i>
la mesure	<i>measure.</i>	les mesures	<i>spectacles.</i>
le neveu	<i>nephew.</i>	les neveux	<i>measures.</i>
le papier	<i>paper.</i>	les papiers	<i>descendants.</i>
la poursuite	<i>pursuit.</i>	les poursuites	<i>documents, passport.</i>
la pratique	<i>practice.</i>	les pratiques	<i>proceedings (law).</i>
la tablette	<i>shelf.</i>	les tablettes	<i>intrigues, observations.</i>
la troupe	<i>band, drove.</i>	les troupes	<i>writing-tablets.</i>
la vacance	<i>vacancy.</i>	les vacances	<i>troops, forces.</i>
la veille	<i>watch, vigil, eve.</i>	les veilles	<i>vacations.</i>
			<i>night labours.</i>

Many of these Nouns have also in the Plural the same Meaning as in the Singular.

les alentours	<i>neighbourhood.</i>	les fonts	<i>font.</i>
les ancêtres	<i>ancestors.</i>	les frais	<i>expenses.</i>
les aguets	<i>watch.</i>	les gens	<i>people.</i>
les annales	<i>annals, records.</i>	les hardes	<i>hoards.</i>
les archives	<i>archives, record-offices.</i>	les intestins	<i>entrails.</i>
les armoiries	<i>coat of arms.</i>	les mœurs	<i>manners, morals.</i>
les arrhes	<i>earnest-money.</i>	les mouchettes	<i>snuffers.</i>
les atours	<i>attire.</i>	les pénates	<i>household gods.</i>
les balayures	<i>sweepings.</i>	les pierreries	<i>jewels.</i>
les confins	<i>borders.</i>	les pleurs	<i>tears.</i>
les décombres	<i>rubbish.</i>	les proches	<i>relatives.</i>
les dépens	<i>cost, expense, charge.</i>	les ténèbres	<i>darkness.</i>
les environs	<i>environs.</i>	les thermes	<i>hot springs, baths.</i>
les entrefaites	<i>interval.</i>	les vêpres	<i>vespers.</i>
		les vivres	<i>provisions, victuals.</i>

Besides many words ending in **-ailles**, as—

fiançailles, betrothal ; *les entrailles, entrails* ; *tenailles, pincers*, etc.

397

FEMININE OF ADJECTIVES.

As a rule, **Adjectives** derived from—

Latin Adj. of *three* endings, have *two* endings in French ;

„ *two* „ *one* ending „ : as,

m. and n. calidus, um, = *m. chaud* ; *f. calida* = *chaude*.

m. f. and n. utilis, e, = *m. and f. utile*.

The seemingly irregular formations of the Feminine—

f = **ve**, **x** = **se**, **c** = **che**, **s** = **sse**, **t** = **tte**, **n** = **gne**, are very easily explained by reference to Latin :—

<i>Masculine.</i>	<i>Latin.</i>	<i>Feminine.</i>
vif	vivus	vive
bref	brevis	brève
amoureux	amorosus	amoureuse
doux	dulcis	douce
roux	russus	rousse
épais	spissus	épaisse
las	lassus	lasse
(but <i>m. ras</i> ,	<i>L. rasmus</i> ,	<i>f. rase</i>)
absous	absolutus	absoute
net	nitidus	nette*
		(* d assimilated to t)
secret	secretus	secrète
nul	nullus	nulle
favori	favoritus	favorite
malin	malignus	maligne
beau	bellus	belle
fou	follis	folle
jumeau	gemellus	jumelle
public	publicus	{ qu stands here as an equivalent of hard c (gu for hard g), to indicate that c and g (which before e always sound soft) re- tain their hard sound before e .
ture	turque	
long	longue	

398 GENERAL PRINCIPLE UNDERLYING THE USE OF THE SUBJUNCTIVE IN FRENCH.

Both the Indicative and Subjunctive may be used in Dependent Clauses ; as,

Il est **certain** qu'il le **sait**.

Il **importe** qu'il le **sache**.

The adoption of one or the other depends entirely on the meaning conveyed by the *Principal* Sentence :

We put the Verb in the Dependent Clause—

in the *Indicative* Mood, if the Principal Sentence implies (*indicates*) that the action expressed in the dependent clause is a *matter of fact* ;^{*}

in the *Subjunctive* Mood, if the Principal Sentence implies that the action expressed in the dependent clause is merely *conceived in the mind* of the speaker.

As the term *Subjunctive* implies, the action is represented as being *subjoined to* (lit. under the yoke of) some leading thought contained in the Principal Sentence—be it a *wish*, an *emotion*, a *doubt*, or any *notion* as distinguished from *fact*.

Thus in the sentence :—*Je sais qu'il viendra*, *I know that he will come*, the fact of his coming is indicated absolutely and without any mental reservation, hence the use of the *Indicative* form of Conjugation for the Verb *indicating* that fact.

But in the sentence—

Son père **veut** qu'il **vienn**e ;

His father wishes that he should come ;

the contingency (eventual fact) of his coming is, *in the speaker's mind*, subjoined to the *will* of another (his father).

Again, if I say—

Je regrette qu'il **vienn**e ;
Je doute qu'il **vienn**e ;

I am sorry he should come ;
I doubt if he will come ;

his coming is described as being subject of a *feeling* (i.e. sorrow, doubt) ; hence the use of the *Subjunctive* form of conjugation for the Verb describing an action as under the influence of a preponderating *conception*.

* The fact itself may be true or not, but anyhow it is stated as true.

399 VERBS WHICH IN ENGLISH REQUIRE A PREPOSITION BEFORE THEIR NOUN-COMPLEMENT, BUT NOT IN FRENCH; as,

J'attends le train. I am waiting for the train.

accepter	<i>to accept of.</i>
acheter	<i>to buy for.</i>
admettre	<i>to admit of.</i>
approuver	<i>to approve of.</i>
attendre	<i>to wait for.</i>
chercher	<i>to look for.</i>
demander	<i>to ask for.</i>
désirer	<i>to wish for.</i>
écouter	<i>to listen to.</i>
endurer	<i>to bear with.</i>
payer	<i>to pay for.</i>
prier	<i>to beg of.</i>
regarder	<i>to look upon.</i>
remettre	<i>to put off.</i>
rencontrer	<i>to meet with.</i>
résoudre	<i>to resolve upon.</i>
souhaiter	<i>to wish for.</i>
vendre	<i>to sell for.</i>

400 VERBS WHICH IN ENGLISH REQUIRE NO PREPOSITION BEFORE THEIR NOUN-OBJECT, BUT TAKING *de* IN FRENCH; as,

Il jouit d'une bonne santé. He enjoys good health.

s'approcher de	<i>to approach.</i>
changer de	<i>to change.</i>
se défier de	<i>to mistrust.</i>
se méfier de	
se démettre de	<i>to give up.</i>
disconvenir de	<i>to disown.</i>
douter de	<i>to doubt.</i>
jouir de	<i>to enjoy.</i>
manquer de	<i>to want, to fail.</i>
se servir de	<i>to use.</i>
se souvenir de	<i>to remember.</i>
se venger de	<i>to avenge.</i>
manquer à	<i>to be wanting in</i>
(also with <i>de</i> ,	<i>respect.</i>

§ 403)

401 VERBS WHICH IN ENGLISH REQUIRE NO PREPOSITION BEFORE THEIR NOUN-OBJECT, BUT TAKING *à* IN FRENCH; as,

Il obéit à ses parents. He obeys his parents.

attenter à	<i>to attempt.</i>
convenir à	<i>to suit.</i>
défendre à	<i>to forbid.</i>
dire à	<i>to tell.</i>
se fier à	<i>to hurt.</i>
importer à	<i>to concern.</i>
obéir à	<i>to obey.</i>
ordonner à	<i>to order.</i>
permettre à	<i>to allow.</i>
persuader à	<i>to persuade.</i>
renoncer à	<i>to renounce.</i>
répondre à	<i>to answer.</i>
reprocher à	<i>to reproach.</i>
résister à	<i>to resist.</i>
ressembler à	<i>to resemble.</i>
succéder à	<i>to succeed.</i>
toucher à	<i>to touch.</i>

402 VERBS WHICH IN FRENCH REQUIRE THEIR VERB-COMPLEMENT WITH *à* IN THE INFINITIVE, BUT TAKING A DIFFERENT PREPOSITION WITH THE PRES. PART. IN ENGLISH (§ 110); as,

Il aime à lire. He is fond of reading.

s'accorder à	<i>to agree in.</i>
aimer à	<i>to be fond of.</i>
s'amuser à	<i>to amuse oneself with.</i>
consister à	<i>to consist in.</i>
se déterminer à	<i>to resolve upon.</i>
exceller à	<i>to excel in.</i>
exercer à	<i>to exercise in.</i>
gagner à	<i>to gain by.</i>
s'obstiner à	<i>to persist in.</i>
oublier à (de)	<i>to forget how.</i>
parvenir à	<i>to succeed in.</i>
penser à	<i>to think of.</i>
perdre à	<i>to lose in.</i>
persévérer à	<i>to persevere in.</i>
se plaire à	<i>to delight in.</i>
réussir à	<i>to succeed in.</i>
songer à	<i>to think of.</i>
viser à	<i>to aim at.</i>

403 VERBS WHICH IN FRENCH REQUIRE THEIR VERB-COMPLEMENT WITH **de** AND THE INFINITIVE, but taking a different Preposition in English (§ 108) ; as,

Je l'empêcherai **de venir**. *I shall prevent him from coming.*

s'affliger de	<i>to be grieved at.</i>
appréhender de	<i>to apprehend in.</i>
avertir de	<i>to warn against.</i>
brûler de	<i>to long to.</i>
cesser de	<i>to cease to.</i>
charger de	<i>to charge to.</i>
commander de	<i>to command to.</i>
conjuré de	<i>to conjure to.</i>
conseiller de	<i>to advise to.</i>
se contenter de	<i>to be content with.</i>
craindre de	<i>to fear to.</i>
dédaigner de	<i>to disdain to.</i>
défendre de	<i>to forbid to.</i>
défier de	<i>to defy to.</i>
se dépêcher de	<i>to make haste to.</i>
différer de	<i>to defer to.</i>
dire de	<i>to tell to.</i>
discontinuer de	<i>to cease to.</i>
se dispenser de	<i>to dispense with.</i>
dissuader de	<i>to dissuade from.</i>
empêcher de	<i>to prevent from.</i>
entreprendre de	<i>to undertake to.</i>
essayer de	<i>to try to.</i>
s'étonner de	<i>to be astonished with.</i>
éviter de	<i>to avoid to.</i>
excuser de	<i>to excuse for.</i>
feindre de	<i>to pretend to.</i>
féliciter de	<i>to congratulate on.</i>
finir de	<i>to cease from.</i>

se flatter de	<i>to flatter oneself in.</i>
frémir de	<i>to shudder at.</i>
se garder de	<i>to take care not to.</i>
se glorifier de	<i>to glory in.</i>
gronder de	<i>to scold for.</i>
se hâter de	<i>to hasten to.</i>
jurer de	<i>to swear to.</i>
manquer de	<i>to fail to.</i>
menacer de	<i>to threaten to.</i>
mériter de	<i>to deserve to.</i>
négliger de	<i>to neglect to.</i>
offrir de	<i>to offer to.</i>
omettre de	<i>to omit to.</i>
ordonner de	<i>to order to.</i>
oublier de	<i>to forget to.</i>
pardonner de	<i>to forgive for.</i>
permettre de	<i>to permit to.</i>
persuader de	<i>to persuade to.</i>
prescrire de	<i>to prescribe to.</i>
presser de	<i>to urge to.</i>
prier de	<i>to request to.</i>
promettre de	<i>to promise to.</i>
proposer de	<i>to propose to.</i>
recommander de	<i>to recommend.</i>
refuser de	<i>to refuse to.</i>
regretter de	<i>to regret to.</i>
se réjouir de	<i>to rejoice in.</i>
remercier de	<i>to thank for.</i>
reprocher de	<i>to reproach for.</i>
répondre de	<i>to resolve to.</i>
rire de	<i>to laugh at.</i>
risquer de	<i>to run the risk of.</i>
rongir de	<i>to blush to.</i>
sommer de	<i>to summon to.</i>
soupçonner de	<i>to suspect of.</i>
supplier de	<i>to entreat to.</i>
tenter de	<i>to attempt to.</i>

404 AGREEMENT OF THE PARTICIPLE PERFECT WITH ITS OBJECT.

SPECIAL RULES.—(a) The Past Participle of *Transitive* Verbs conjugated with **avoir**, and of *Reflexive* Verbs, agrees in Gender and Number with its *preceding Direct Object*.¹

Obj. → P.P.—Agreement :

(1)

Voici **le** livre, l'avez-vous **lu** ?
Voici **la** lettre, l'avez-vous **lue** ?
Voici **les** livres, les as-tu **lus** ?
Voici **les** lettres, les as-tu **lues** ?
Elles **se** sont **lavées** (*repenties*).

(2)

Voici le livre **que** j'ai **lu**.
Voici la lettre **que** j'ai **lue**.
Voici les livres **que** j'ai **lus**.
Voici les lettres **que** j'ai **lues**.

(3)

Quelles lettres a-t-il **reçues** ?
Combien de lettres a-t-il **reçues** ?
Que de lettres il a **reçues** !

P.P. → Obj.—No Agreement :

Non, je n'ai pas **lu** le livre.
Je n'ai pas encore **lu** la lettre.
Je crois avoir **lu** les livres.
Oui, ce matin j'ai **lu** les lettres.

Vous avez fait des fautes **dont** vos ennemis ont **profité**. (See § 97, b.)

Il a **reçu** les lettres de son ami.
Il a **reçu** trois lettres.
Il a **reçu** beaucoup de lettres.

Pourrais-je jamais oublier **la confiance** et **l'amitié** que vous m'avez témoignées ?

405 (b) The Past Participle agrees with its *Direct* Object only ; it *never* agrees with an *Indirect* (Remoter) Object :—

Direct Object—Agreement :

Elles **nous** (**vous, les**) ont suivis.
Elles **se** sont dévouées.
Elles **se** sont montrées généreuses.
J'abandonne toutes les espérances **que** j'avais conçues.

Indirect Object—No Agreement :

Elles nous (**vous, leur**) ont répondu.
Elles se sont procuré un billet.
Elles se sont arrogé ce droit.
Il a élevé plus de monuments que d'autres n'en ont détruit.

Anomalous Cases.—The above Rules admit of no exception ; the seeming anomalies only arise from peculiarly constructed sentences in which the real Object is not easily discernible :—

¹ An Object may precede the Verb in the following cases only :—

(1) as a Conjunctive Personal or a Reflexive Pronoun : **me, te, le, la ; nous, vous, les**.

(2) as a Relative or Interrogative Pronoun : **que, lequel, laquelle**, etc.

(3) as a Noun qualified by—**quel, combien de, que de**.

406 (c) A Past Participle followed by an Infinitive—

(1) *agrees* if the preceding Object is really the Object of the Past Participle, and not of the Infinitive; as,

Je les ai **vus** frapper.
I saw them striking.

Les acteurs que j'ai **entendus** chanter.

The actors I heard sing.

Je les (*i.e.* les enfants) ai **laissés** manger. *I have allowed them to eat.*

Les hommes n'ont jamais plus admiré les singes que quand ils **les** ont **vus** imiter les actions humaines.

Compare also—

Les lettres **que** j'ai **commencées**.

Les questions **que** j'ai **résolues**.

(2) *does not agree* with the preceding Object if this latter is the Object of the Infinitive, or of the Infinitive and Past Participle combined; as,

Je les ai **vu** frapper.

I saw them struck, i.e. I saw (some one) strike them.

Les airs que j'ai **entendu** chanter.

The tunes I have heard sung.

Les acteurs que j'ai **entendu** siffler.

Je les (*i.e.* pommes) ai **laissé** manger. *I have allowed them to be eaten.*

J'approuve les changements que vous avez **jugé à propos de faire**.

(‘Changements’ is the Object of **faire**, and not of **jugé**.)

407 (d) The Past Participle of **faire**, followed by an Infinitive, never agrees, because it forms with this Infinitive one Verbal Phrase on which alone the Object depends:—

Je les ai **fait descendre**.

I have made (caused) what?—Their coming down.

Les livres que j'ai **fait relier**.

I have made (ordered) what?—The binding of books.

Louis XIV. a protégé les arts que François I^{er} avait **fait naître**.

Louis the Fourteenth patronized the arts which Francis the First had introduced.

408 (e) A Past Participle followed by a Substantive Clause remains unchanged, because this Clause is its real Object; as,

La lettre que j'ai **présumé que vous recevriez** est enfin arrivée.

I have surmised what?—That you would receive a letter.

It follows that a Past Participle, preceded and followed by **que**, never agrees.

Obs. 1 to (d) and (e). An Infinitive or a Substantive Clause (understood) may be the implied object of a Verb (especially **dû, vu, voulu, pu, su**), in which case no agreement of the Past Participle can take place:—

Nous ne vous avons pas rendu tous les bons offices que nous aurions **voulu**¹ mais seulement ceux que nous avons **pu**.¹

¹ **Rendre** understood.

Obs. 2. Thus also a Past Participle preceded by the Neutral Relative Pronoun *le* referring to a *Verb*, *Adjective*, or to a *whole Clause*, remains unchanged ; as,

L'armée se battit mieux que le czar ne l'avait **espéré** (*le* = qu'elle ne se battrait).

La famine arriva comme Joseph l'avait **prédit** (*le* = cela).

Cette contrée est plus riche en produits que je ne l'avais **imaginé**.

- 409** (f) The Past Participle of *Impersonal Verbs* remains unchanged, because they are really *Intransitive*, and their Noun-Complement is logically their *Subject* and not their *Object* ; as,

La grande sécheresse qu'il a **fait**.¹

Que de travaux il a **fallu** pour endiguer ce fleuve !

The great drought that has prevailed.

What work it has required to embank this river !

- 410** (g) The Past Participle of a Verb, the completion of which answers the questions *how long?* *how much?* etc., and which is virtually an *Adverbial Phrase*, remains unchanged ; as,

Les trois années que j'ai **vécu** à Paris. *The three years I have spent in Paris.*

Les efforts que ce travail lui a **coûté**. *The efforts that this work has cost.*

Obs. The agreement with a Noun qualified by *le peu de* depends on the meaning :—

Le peu d'affection que vous m'avez **témoigné**. *The want of affection that you have shown*

Le peu d'affection que vous m'avez **témoignée**. *What little affection you have shown me.*

¹ **Faire** is here used idiomatically, as an equivalent of **être**.

FORMATION OF ADVERBS.

“We are told by French Grammarians that in order to form adverbs we have to add the termination **-ment**. Thus from **bon** we form **bonnement** ; from **vrai**, *true*, **vraiment**. This termination does not exist in Latin. But we meet in Latin with expressions such as **bonâ mente**, *in good faith*. We read in Ovid ‘*Insistam forti mente*,’ *I shall insist with a strong mind or will, I shall insist strongly* ; in French ‘*J’insisterai fortement*.’ Therefore, what has happened in the growth of Latin, or in the change of Latin into French, is simply this : in phrases such as **forti mente**, the last word was no longer felt as a distinct word, and it lost at the same time its distinct pronunciation. **Mente**, the ablative of **mens**, was changed into **ment**, and was preserved as a merely formal element, as the termination of adverbs, even in cases where a recollection of the original meaning of **mente** (*with a mind*) would have rendered its employment perfectly impossible. If we say in French that a hammer falls **lourdement**, we little suspect that we ascribe to a piece of iron a heavy mind. . . .”

MAX MÜLLER, *Science of Language*, I, 2nd section.

INDEX.

N.B.—The Numbers refer to Sections.

- à**, contr. with **le**, **les**, 27—30 ; with
Infin. 109—110 ; uses of, 336—45,
350
a, **an**, 38—39 ; = **par**, 371
able, to be, 228—29 ; 247
about, adv. 294 ; prep. 364
above, 358
absolu, **absoudre**, 251
according as, 378
Accusative, 14—15 ; 22 ; 257—66 ;
281—2 ; 286—8
acquérir, 239
across, 372
Adjectives, Determinat. 21 ; Possess.
43—44 ; Demonstr. 45—46 ; of
quality, 48 ; fem. of, 48—56 ; com-
parison, 57—61 ; used adv. 319
Adjectival relation expr. by **de**, 324 ;
by **à**, 336—8
Adjectival phrases, 35
Adverbs of quant. 41—42 ; classif.
310—14 ; expr. by **à**, 343—5
Adverbial phrases, 35
Affirmation, Adv. of, 316
àfin de, with Infin. 381
àfin que, with Subj. 91 ; 96 ; 379
after, conj. = **après** with Infin.
111—2 ; 140 ; prep. 353
against = **contre**, **envers**, 366
à, how expressed, 236
s'agir de, to be at stake, 207
ainsi, 375
all, 38 ; 291
aller, 212—5 ; **s'en aller**, 216—22 ;
y aller, 324
already, 310
although, 91 ; 96 ; 379
among, 355—6
Anterior Past, 133—141
another, 301
any, partitive, 40—2 ; 300
anybody, 292—3 ; 300 ; any one, 299
any more, 12—13
anything, 291—93 ; 295
à peine, 140
apercevoir, 247
appartenir à, 342
appeler, 195
Apposition, 39 ; with **de**, 324
après, prep., 353 ; conj. with Inf.,
111—2 ; 381
après que, conj. with Anterior, 140
aptness, expr. by **à**, 336
Article, Def., 21—35 ; Indef., 38—
39 ; Partit., 40—42
asseoir, 248
assez de, 41—42
as = **comme**, 368 ; = **que**, 383 ; 386
as a, 348 ; as soon as, 140
assaillir, 240
at = **de**, 329 ; = **à**, 337 ; 344—5 ;
347 ; 350
athwart, 372
attendant que, **en**, 379
au, **aux**, 27—8 ; 30 ; 321
aussi...que, 383
aussitôt que, with Past Ant., 140
au-dessous de, 362
au-dessus, 311 ; **au-dessus de**,
358
auprès de, 368
aussi, adv., 58 ; conj., 377
autant de, 41—42
autre, 301—6

- autrefois**, 310
 Auxiliary Verbs, 5—6; used to form comp. tenses, 116—188; synopt. table, 189—90.
avant, 351
avant de, conj. with Inf., 111—2; 381
avant que, conj. with Subj., 91; 379
avoir, froid, faim, etc., 69; comp. tenses formed with, 118; conjug., 189; see also Aux. Verbs; **y avoir**, 123; idioms, 236
 aware of, to be, 230; 247
 bad, badly, compared; 315
bas, used adverbially, 319
battre, 255
 to be, expr. by **avoir**, 69; expr. by **faire**, 234
 be it that, 96
beaucoup de, 41—42
beaucoup, compared, 378
 before, adv., 311; prep., 351—2; 361; conj., 91; 96; 112; 379, 381
 because, 378
 behind, adv., 311; prep., 354
 believe, to, 231; 250
 below, adv., 311
 beneath, prep., 362—3
bénir, 196
 beside, prep., 345
 best, better, 315
 between, prep., 355
 beyond, prep., 358
bien que, with Subj., 91; 379
boire, 250
bon, compared, 315; used adverbially, 319
 borrowing, verbs of, take à, 341
 both, 38; 291; 302; 375
bouillir, 238
braire, 254
 broad, how, 65
bruire, 256
 but, adv., 317; but just, 384: but = **que ne**; 388
 by = **par** with Inf.; 111—12; = **de**, 335; = **à**, 345; = **par**, 371; by the pound, 343
 can, 228—9; 247
 care, to take, 318
cas que, en, with Subj., 96
 case, in, 96; 379
 cause to be done, to, 232
ce, ces, cet, cette, dem. adj., 45—47; 276—7; dem. pron., 277
ce...ci...là, 45—46
ce qui, 286
ceci, cela, 278
celui-ci, -là, 278
chacun, chaque, 290
ceindre, 252
cent, 62
cependant, 375
cesser, 318 (2)
 chance to, to, 221 (*d'*)
 change one's mind, to, 324
 characteristic feature = **à**, 337
cher, used adverbially, 319
chez, 372
ci-dessus, 311
clair, used adverbially, 319
clorre, 256
 cold, to be, 69
combien, 41—42
 come, to, 221
comme and **comment**, comp., 312
 Comparison of Adj., 57, 61; of Adj. and Adv., 315
 Complement with **de**, 327—34; with **à**, 339
 Compound Tenses, with **avoir**, 118; with **être**, 126, 129; see also Table of Contents
concevoir, 247
conclure, 250
 Conditional Pres., 82—86; Perf., 152—162
conduire, 253
 Conjugation, see Table of Contents
 Conjunctions, 375—88; requiring the Subj., 96; requiring the Past Anterior, 140
connaître, 249
conquérir, 239
 consequently, 377
construire, 253
contre, 366
contraindre, 252
 contrary to, 366
condre, 251

- courir**, 244
couvrir, 241
craindre, 252
crainte de, **de**, with Inf., 381;
crainte que, **de**, with Subj., 96;
 379
croire, 231; 250
croître, 249
cueillir, 240
cuire, 253
- dans**, 346—8
 dark, in the, 321
 Dative case = **à**, 339—42
davantage, 61; 315
 Dates, how expr., 361
de, coalescing with **le**, **les**, 23—6;
 30; 35; after Superl., 61 (7); after
 Numerals, 65; with Inf. 106—8;
 324—35
dedans, 253
déduire, 253
 deep, how, 65
dehors, 311
déjà, 310
demain, 310
 Demonstrative Adj., 45—47; Pron.,
 276—80
depuis, 369; **depuis que**, 123
derrière, adv., 311; prep., 354
des, contr. of **de** + **les**, 23—6; 30
dès, prep., 370; **dès que**, conj.,
 140
 Destination, expr. by **à**, 336
dessous, 311; 362
dessus, 311; **de dessus**, 360
détruire, 253
devant, adv., 31; prep., 352
devoir, 222
 Dimensions, how expressed, 65
dire, 254
 Distance, how expressed, 321
do, to, 232—5; 254
dont, 281—6
 doors, out of, 311
dormir, 238
 Doubt, V. of, with **de**, 317; with
 Subj., 90
du, contr. of **de** + **le**, 23—26; 30
-duire, v. in, 253
- each, 290; each other, 38; 305; 355
échoir, 246
éclore, 256
écrire, 253
 either, 303; 318; 375
elle, disj. pron., 269—73
 Emotions, V. of, with **de**, 329
en, pron., 259; 263—6; **en** and **le**
 = **son**, 275; **en**, prep., 347—8
encore que, conj., 379
enfreindre, 252
 enough, 41—42
entre, 355
envers, 365
et...et, 375
espérer, 195
essayer, **essuyer**, 195
être, 190; in comp. tenses, 118;
 129; **être à**, 342
eux, disj. pr., 267—73
 even, 309; even when, 376
 evening, in the, 321
 ever so little, 379
 every one, 290; every other, 291
 everything, 291
exprès, 312
 Extraction, expr. by **de**, 324—7
- far from, so, 381
façon que, **de**, 96; 380
faillir, 245
faire, 232—4; 254; with Inf., 235
fait, **il**, 206; 234
falloir, with Subj., 93; 223; 246
 fashion, in the, = **à la**, 337
faut, **il**, 223—5; 246
faute de, 381
faux, used adverbially, 319
 fear of, for, 111—12
 fearing, V. of, with **ne** and Subj.,
 317; with **de** and Inf., 329
ferme, used adverbially, 319
 feeling, V. of, with **de**, 329
feindre, 252
 Feminine of Adj., 48—55
férir, 245
 few, 294; 299
 fitness, expr. by **à**, 336
fleurir, 196
 following day, on the, 321
 for, prep., = **de**, 329—30; = **à**, 340

formerly, 310
fort, adv., 312
frîre, 256
 from = **de**, 327—35; 357; 360; 369—70
 front of, in, 352
fuir, 238
 Future, Pres., 77—81; Perf., 142—151

get done, to, 236
 Genitive, expr. by **de**, 324—6
gésir, 245
 Giving, v. of, with **à**, 339
 go away, to, 216—20
 good, compared, 315
guère...ne, 12—13

h, when silent and when aspirate, 21, Obs.
haïr, 196
 hardly, 140; 377; hardly ever, 12
haut, used adverbially, 319
 have, to, Syn. table, 189; to have to, 222; to have just, 221 (*a*)
 he = **il**, 257; **lui**, 267
 hear from, to, 236
 her, 14—17; 20; 257—66; hers, 43—44
 here, 373
hier au soir, 310
 high, how, 65
 him, 14—17; 20; 257—66
 his, 274—5
 how, 385; how much, how long, how far? 321—2
 home, 311; 372
 however, adv., 257; conj. with Subj., 92
 hungry, to be, 69

I = **je**, 257; = **moi**, 267
 if, 380, 385; if ever so little, 96
il, 257; comp. with **ce**, 277; **il y a**, 208—11
 Imperative, 20; 96—101
 Imperfect, Indic., 66—70; Subj., 92—96
 Impersonal Verbs, 206—11

in, prep., = **de**, 326—33; 335; = **à**, 345; = **dans** or **en**, 346—50; = **sous**, 361; used adverbially, 311
 inasmuch as, 378
 indebted, to be, 322
 Indefinite Pronouns, 289—309
 Indefinite Past, 71—76
 Indirect Obj. with **à**, 339; 41
 Infinitive, Pres., 1, 102; Perf., 182—5; pure, 103—5; with **de**, 100—8; with **à**, 109—10; with other prep., 111. After **aller**, 215; **venir**, 221; **devoir**, 222; **falloir**, 224; **vouloir**, 226; **pouvoir**, 228; **savoir**, 230; **croire**, 231; **faire**, 235
 inside, adv., 311; prep., 346
 instead of, 381
instruire, 253
 Instrument, expr. by **de**, 331; by **à**, 337
 Interrogative, constr., 7—10; 17—18; Interrogative-Negat. constr., 13, 19
 Interrogative Pron., 287—8
 into, 348, Obs.
introduire, 253
 Irregular Verbs, 212—56
 it, pers. pr., subject, 257—9; obj., 14—17; 257—66; impers., 206—11; demonstr., 276
 itself, 309
 inversion of Verb and Subj., 377

jamais, 12—13
jeter, 195
joindre, 252
 Joy, V. expressing, with **de**, 329
jour, **journée**, 321
 just as...thus, 374
juste, used adverbially, 319

know, to, 230; 347

la, def. art. and pron., see **le**
là-dessous, **là-dessus**, 311
 last night, 310
le, **la**, **les**, def. art., 21—35; = indef. art. in English, 39 (3)

le, la, les, pers. pron., 14—15 ;
17—18 ; 20 ; 257—66
least, 315 ; at least, 377
lendemain, le, 321
lequel, laquelle, etc., relat. pron.,
282—5 ; interrog. pron., 287
less, 41 ; 315
lest, 96 ; 317 ; 379 ; 381 ; 388
leur, poss. adj., 3 ; 43 ; **le leur**,
poss. pron., 274
leur, pers. pron., 16 ; 257—66
little, adv., 41 ; 315
lieu de, au, 381
like...like..., 307
likewise, 309
lire, 250
loin de, 381
long, how, 65 ; as long as, 378
look, to, 236
lors même, 376
lorsque, with Past Ant., 140 ; 376
lui, conj. pers. pron., 16 ; 20 ; 257 ;
262 ; 264 ; 266
lui, disj. pers. pron., 267—273
luire, 253

maintenant, 310
make, to, 232—5 ; 254
mal, compared, 315
malgré que, 96 ; **malgré qu'il en**
ait, 379
manière à, de, with Inf., 111—2
manière que, de, with Indic. or
Subj., 380
manner, expr. by **de**, 331, 335 ; by
à, 337
many, 41
mauvais, compared, 315
may, 228—9 ; 247
me, 14—16 ; 257—66
meilleur, 60 ; comp. 315
même, 308
mener, 195
mentir, 238
mettre, 255
midst of, in the, 356
mien, le, 274—5
mieux, 315
mille, 62
mind, to, 317 ; 340
mine, 274—5

my, 3 ; 43—44
moi, conj. pers. pron., 20 ; 265 ; disj.,
267—73
moindre, 61 ; 315
moins, 58—59 ; 61 ; 315 ; — **de**,
41—42 ; **au** —, 377
moins de, à, 381 ; — **que ne**, 96 ;
379
months, names of, 64
more, 12 ; 41 ; —, most, 315 ; the
—...the —, 375
moudre, 251
mourir, 244
mouvoir, 247
much, 41—42 ; comp. 315
must, 223—5 ; 246

naître, 249
ne, 317—8 ; **ne...pas, point**, etc.,
11—13 ; **ne...que**, 12 ; 384
né, 249
néanmoins, 375
near, 368
necessary, to be, 246
Negation, Adv. of, 316—18
Negative Conjugat, 11—14 ; 130—
132
neither, 303 ; 318
never, 12—13
nevertheless, 379
ni l'un ni l'autre, 303
ni...ni, 375
no, 38 ; 41—42 ; — longer, 12—13 ;
— sooner, 140
nobody, 12 ; 292—3
non, 316 ; — **seulement**, 375
nor, 318
not, 11—13 ; 38 ; 316—8 ; — anything,
12 ; — either, 318 ; — now, 12—
13 ; 318 ; — only, 375 ; — yet, 310
nothing, 12 ; 293 ; 318 ; — but, 384 ;
388
notre, 3 ; 43—44
nôtre, le, 274
Nouns, see Table of Contents ; compd.
n. 336
nous, conj. pers. pron., 15—16 ; 257
—66 ; disj. pron., 267—73
now is (are), 373
nuire, 253
Numbers, Numerals, 62—65

- Object, -Pronoun, 14—20, 339—41;
-Noun, 22; 27
obliged, to be, 222
of, 24—26; 30—31; 35; 257—9;
324—35
off, 311; 345
offrir, 241
oindre, 252
on, indef. pr., 289
on, prep. = **de**, 329; 332; = **à**,
343—4; = **en**, 347; = **sur**, 357;
385
one, 62; -thing...another, 301; -an-
other, 38; 305
only, 378; 384
order to, in, 111—112; -that, 91—96;
379
order to be done, to, 232
Origin, expr. by **de**, 324—7
other, 301; 305
où, adv., 311; used relatively, 284;
où...que, 379
ou, conj., 375
ought to, 222
oui, 316
ouïr, 245
our, poss. adj., 3; 43—44
ours, poss. pr., 274—5
out, outside, adv., 311
out of, prep., 371
ouvrir, 241
over, 311; 357—9
owe, to, 222
own, of my, 338—9
- paitre**, 249
par, = **a**, 39; with Inf., 111; 371
par dessous, 366; **par dessus**, 359;
par où, 371
paraître, 249
parce que, 378
parmi, 359
Participle, Pres., 1; 113—15; Perf.,
124—5; 133—41; 186—8
partir, 238
pas, **ne**, 11—13; 316—18; **pas de**,
41—42; **pas encore**, 310
pas si (aussi), 59; **pas plutôt que**,
140; **pas un**, 292
Passive Voice, 197—8
Past Anterior, 135—8; 140; Past
Indef. 71—76; 117—23
- peine**, **à**, 377
peindre, 252
pendant, 378
Perception, V. of, with **de**, 333
percevoir, 247
perhaps, 377
Personal Pron., conj., 14—20; 257—
66; disj., 267—73
personne...ne, 12; 292
peu, **de**, 41—42; comp., 315
peur de, **de**, with Inf., 111—12
peur que ne, **de**, with Subj., 379
peut-être, 377
pire, **pis**, 60; 315
placer, 195
plaindre, 252
plaire, 250
play, to, 331; at, 337
pleasure, V. expr., with **de**, 329
pleut, see Impers. V.
pleuvor, 247
Pluperfect Indic., 133—41; Subj.,
173—81
Plural of Nouns, 36—37; of Nouns
and Adj., 48—59; 62
plus...ne, 12; **-de**, 41—42; 57—61;
315. **plus tôt**, **plutôt**, 312;
plus ... plus, 375; **plus ... que**,
383
plutôt, 312, **-que de**, 381
poindre, 252
point, **ne**, 12—13; 316—18; **-de**,
41—42
Possession, expr. by **de**, 326; by **à**,
338
Possessive, Adj., 3; 43—44; expr.
by Per. Pron., 338; 342; Pron.,
274—5
pour, 111—12; 381
pour pen que, 379
pouvoir, 228—9; 247
pourvoir, 247
pourvu que, 91; 379
Praise, V. of, with **de**, 330
prendre, 255
Present, Indic., 2—20; Condit., 82—
86; Subj. 87—91; Perf. 123—32;
Part., see Part...
près de, 367
Preterite, 71—75, 123
Prevention, V. expr., with **ne**, 317
prévoir, 247

Privation, V. of, with **de**, 328
proche, 367
produire, 253
Pronouns, see Table of Contents
provided that, 91; 96; 379
Providing, V. of, with **de**, 332
puisque, 378
purpose, on, 312
Purpose, expr. by **à**, 336

Quality, expr. by **de**, 324
quand, with Past Ant., 140; 376
quantity, adv. of, 41—42; expr. by
de, 324
quatre-vingts, 62
que, relat. pr., 281—6; interr. pr.,
287
que, conj., 376—88
qu'est-ce qui? 287
quel, interr. pr., 39, 288
quel...que, 96
quelconque, 300
quelque, 294; -chose, 295; quel-
qu'un, 299
quelque...que, 296—7
quérir, 239
qui, relat. pr., 281—6; interr. pr.,
287—8
quiconque, 300; **qui que ce soit**,
300
quite, 291
quoi, relat. pr., 286; interr. pr., 287
quoi que ce soit, 379
quoi que, 300
quoique, 91, 379

rate, at any, 377
rather, 312; -than, 381
Recollecting, V. of, with **de**, 333
recevoir, 247
Reciprocal Verbs, 204
Recognition, V. of, with **de**, 330
redire, 254
Reflexive Verbs, 199—205
Relative Pron., 281—6
Remembering, V. of, 333
répartir, 238
repentir, sc, 238
résoudre, 251
résolu, 51

Respect of, in, expr. by **de**, 334
ressortir, 238
rire, 254
rien...ne, 12; 293
right, to be, 69

saillir, 240
same, 308
sans, with Inf., 112; 381; **sans**
que, with Subj., 96; 379; **sans**
...ni, 375
savoir, 230; 247
se, refl. pr., 262—6
séduire, 253
selon, 378
sentir, 238
seoir, 248
Separation, expr. by **de**, 328
Sequence of Tenses, 92
servir, 238
several times, 329
should, expr. by Condit., 82—86;
expr. by Subj., 87—93; expr. by
devoir, 222
Showing, V. of, with **à**, 339
si = whether, conj. with Condit.,
84; 376
si, adv., = so; = yes, 316
si ce n'est, 379
sien, le, 274
signify, 293
since, prep., 369; conj., 378; 305
sis, **sise**, 348
sleepy, to be, 69
so, adv. of affirm., 316; so as to,
111—12; 381; so that, 91; 96;
380; so and so, 307; so far from,
381
soi, 273
soit que, 96
some, 38; used partitively, 40—42;
some other, 296
somebody, 299; something, 295
sometimes...another time, 375
sooner, 312; no, —than, 385
sorte que, **de**, with Subj., 91; 96
sortir, 238
souffrir, 241
sourdre, 256
sous, 361
souscrire, 253

sovereigns, names of, 64
 spite of, in, 379
 stake, to be at, 324
 starting point, expr. by **de**, 65
 strong, how, 65
 Subjunctive Mood, 61; 87—96; 163
 —181; 224—5; 227. See also
 Table of Contents.
 such, 307
suffire, 254
suiivre, 255
 Superlative, 57—61; 315
 supposing that, 96
sur, 357
surseoir, 248
 Synoptical Tables of Conjug., 189—
 256

taire, 250
 Taking, V. of, with **à**, 341
 tell, how, 65
tandis que, 378
tant de, 41—42; **tant que**, 375;
 378
tant soit peu, 312
tantôt...tantôt, 375
te, 15—16; 257—66
 Teaching, V. of, with **à**, 339
teindre, 252
 Telling, V. of, with **à**, 339
tel, 307; **tel...que**, 383
tenir, 243
 Tenses, Formation of, 191
 than, 383—4
 that, relat. pr., 281—6; dem. pr.
 278—80; conj. 382
 the, 21—24
 thee, 15—17; 19; 257—66
 theirs, 43—44; 274—5
 them, 15—20; 257—66
 there, = **voilà**, 373—4
 they, = **ils**, **elles**, 257; = **eux**,
elles, 267; 276; 289
 thine, 274
 think, to, 231; 250
 thirsty, to be, 69
 this, these, 276; 278—80; 373
 those, 276; 278—80
 thou, = **tu**, 257; = **toi**, 267
 though, 91; 96; 296; 379; even
 though, 376

through, 371—2
 thy, 43—44
tien, **le**, 274
 time, expr. by **de**, 335
toi, disj. pr., 267—73
 to, 376—8; = in order to, 381;
 = **envers**, 305
 to-day, 310
 to-morrow, 310
toujours, 377
tout, 291
 towards, 364—5; 375
traduire, 253
traire, 254
à travers, **au travers de**, 372
tressaillir, 240
trop de, 41—42
tû, Past Part of **taire**, 250

un, **une**, 38—39
l'un et l'autre, 302
l'un ou l'autre, 304
l'un l'autre, 305
 under, adv., 311; prep., 361—3
 underneath, 311
 unless, 96; 112; 379; 381
 until, 96; 379
 upon, 375
 upwards, 358
 us, 15—20; 257—66

vaincre, 255
valoir, 246
venir, 221; 243
vers, 264
 very, 309; 312
vêtir, 242
vivre, 251
voici, 373
voilà, 374; **voilà que**, 123
voir, 247
vôtre, **le**, 274
vouloir, 226—7; 246
vous, conj. pr., 15—16; 257—66;
 disj. pr., 267—73

want, to, 223—7; 246—7
 want, expr. by **de**, 328; for want of,
 381

- wanting, V. of, 341
 warm, to be, 69
 way, this, 371; which, 311; 371
 we, conj., 257; disj., 267; emphat., 306
 weather, 206
 week, 221
 what, relat. pr., 286; interr. pr., 39; 287—8; 385
 what manner, in, 323
 whatever, 296—8; 300; 379; whatsoever, 300
 when, 140; 376; 385
 wherever, 379
 wherewith, 343
 whether, 84; 384
 which, relat. pr., 281—86; interr. 287—8; which way, 311
 while, whilst, 378
 who, whom, whose, relat. pr., 281—6; interr. 287
 who else, 303
 whoever, whosoever, 300
 whole, 291
 why, 385
 will, to be willing, 226—7; 246
 wish, to, 226—7; 246
 with, 323; = *chez*, 44; = *de*, 330—2; 335; = *à*, 337, 343
 within, 348
 without, 96; 111—12; 379; 381; to do without, 328
 worse, 315
 y, 258; 263—6
 year, in the, 321
 yet, 375
 you, conj. pr., 15—20; 257; 263—6; disj. pr., 267—72
 yours, 43—44; 274—5

THE END.

November, 1881.

A CATALOGUE
OF
EDUCATIONAL BOOKS,
PUBLISHED BY
MACMILLAN AND CO.,
BEDFORD STREET, STRAND, LONDON.

ELEMENTARY CLASSICS.

18mo, eighteenpence each.

A Series of CLASSICAL READING BOOKS, selected from the best Greek and Latin authors, with short introductions, and full elementary Notes at the end, designed for the use of the Lower Forms of Public Schools, of Private Preparatory Schools, of Candidates for University Local Examinations, and of beginners generally.

The following are ready or in preparation :—

VIRGIL. THE FIFTH ÆNEID. THE FUNERAL GAMES.

Edited by Rev. A. CALVERT, M.A., late Fellow of St. John's College, Cambridge. [Ready.]

HORACE. THE FIRST BOOK OF THE ODES. Edited by T. E. PAGE, M.A., late Fellow of St. John's College, Cambridge, and Assistant-Master at the Charterhouse. [Ready.]

THE SECOND BOOK OF THE ODES. By the same Editor. [Ready.]

OVID. SELECTIONS. Edited by E. S. SHUCKBURGH, M.A., late Fellow of Emmanuel College, Cambridge, and Assistant-Master at Eton. [Ready.]

CÆSAR. THE SECOND AND THIRD CAMPAIGNS OF THE GALLIC WAR. Edited by W. G. RUTHERFORD, M.A., Balliol College, Oxford, and Assistant-Master at St. Paul's School. [Ready.]

10,000. II. 81.

CÆSAR. *SCENES FROM THE FIFTH AND SIXTH BOOKS OF THE GALLIC WAR.* Selected and Edited by C. COLBECK, M.A., Fellow of Trinity College, Cambridge, and Assistant-Master at Harrow. [Ready.]

THUCYDIDES, Book IV. Ch. 1-41. *THE CAPTURE OF SPHACTERIA.* Edited by C. E. GRAVES, M.A., Classical Lecturer and late Fellow of St. John's College, Cambridge. [Ready.]

HERODOTUS Selections from Books VII. and VIII. *THE EXPEDITION OF XERXES.* Edited by A. H. COOKE, B.A., Fellow of King's College, Cambridge. [Ready.]

THE GREEK ELEGIAC POETS. Selected and Edited by Rev. HERBERT KYNASTON, M.A., Principal of Cheltenham College, and formerly Fellow of St. John's College, Cambridge. [Ready.]

HOMER'S ILIAD. Book XVIII. *THE ARMS OF ACHILLES.* Edited by S. R. JAMES, B.A., Scholar of Trinity College, Cambridge, and Assistant-Master at Eton. [In preparation.]

LIVY. THE HANNIBALIAN WAR. Being part of the 21st and 22nd books of Livy, adapted for the use of beginners. By G. C. MACAULAY, M.A., Assistant-Master at Rugby, formerly Fellow of Trinity College, Cambridge. [Ready.]

VERGIL. THE SECOND GEORGIC. Edited by Rev. J. H. SKRINE, M.A., late Fellow of Merton College, Oxford, and Assistant-Master at Uppingham. [Ready.]

HORACE. SELECTIONS FROM THE EPISTLES AND SATIRES. Edited by Rev. W. J. F. V. BAKER, B.A., Fellow of St. John's College, Cambridge, and Assistant-Master at Marlborough. [Ready.]

PLATO. EUTHYPHRO AND MENEXENUS. Edited by C. E. GRAVES, M.A. [Ready.]

LIVY. THE LAST TWO KINGS OF MACÆDON. SCENES FROM THE LAST DECADE OF LIVY. Selected and Edited by F. H. RAWLINS, M.A., Fellow of King's College, Cambridge, and Assistant-Master at Eton. [In preparation.]

HORACE. *THE THIRD AND FOURTH BOOKS OF THE ODES.* Edited (each book separate) by T. E. PAGE, M.A. *[In preparation.]*

HORACE. *SELECT EPODES AND ARS POETICA.* Edited by Rev. H. A. DALTON, M.A., late Student of Christ Church, Oxford. *[In preparation.]*

MACMILLAN'S CLASSICAL SERIES FOR COLLEGES AND SCHOOLS.

Being select portions of Greek and Latin authors, edited with Introductions and Notes at the end, by eminent scholars. The series is designed to supply first-rate text-books for the higher forms of Schools, having in view also the needs of Candidates for public examinations at the Universities and elsewhere.

The following volumes are ready :—

ÆSCHYLUS—PERSÆ. Edited by A. O. PRICKARD, M.A., Fellow and Tutor of New College, Oxford. With Map. 3s. 6d.

CATULLUS—SELECT POEMS. Edited by F. P. SIMPSON, B.A., late Scholar of Balliol College, Oxford. New and revised Edition. 5s.

CICERO—THE SECOND PHILIPPIC ORATION. From the German of Karl Halm. Edited, with Corrections and Additions, by JOHN E. B. MAYOR, Professor of Latin in the University of Cambridge, and Fellow of St. John's College. New edition, revised. 5s.

THE CATILINE ORATIONS. From the German of Karl Halm. Edited, with Additions, by A. S. WILKINS, M.A., Professor of Latin at the Owens College, Manchester. New edition. 3s. 6d.

THE ACADEMICA. Edited by JAMES REID, M.A., Fellow of Caius College, Cambridge. 4s. 6d.

PRO LEGE MANILIA. Edited after HALM by Prof. A. S. WILKINS, M.A. 3s. 6d.

PRO ROSCIO AMERINO. Edited after HALM. By E. H. DONKIN, M.A., late Scholar of Lincoln College, Oxford, Assistant-Master at Uppingham. 4s. 6d.

DEMOSTHENES—THE ORATION ON THE CROWN.

Edited by B. DRAKE, M.A., late Fellow of King's College, Cambridge. Sixth and revised edition. 4s. 6d.

ADVERSUS LEPTINEM. Edited by Rev. J. R. KING, M.A., Fellow and Tutor of Oriel College, Oxford. 4s. 6d.

EURIPIDES—HIPPOLYTUS. Edited by J. P. MAHAFFY, M.A., Fellow and Professor of Ancient History in Trinity College, Dublin, and J. B. BURY, Scholar of Trinity College, Dublin. Fcap. 8vo. 3s. 6d.

HOMER'S ILIAD—THE STORY OF ACHILLES. Edited by the late J. H. PRATT, M.A., and WALTER LEAF, M.A., Fellows of Trinity College, Cambridge. Fcap. 8vo. 6s.

HOMER'S ODYSSEY—THE NARRATIVE OF ODYSSEUS, Books IX.—XII. Edited by JOHN E. B. MAYOR, M.A. Part I. 3s.

JUVENAL—SELECT SATIRES. Edited by JOHN E. B. MAYOR, Fellow of St. John's College, Cambridge, and Professor of Latin. Satires X. and XI. 3s. 6d. Satires XII.—XVI. 4s. 6d.

LIVY—HANNIBAL'S FIRST CAMPAIGN IN ITALY, Books XXI. and XXII. Edited by the Rev. W. W. CAPES, Reader in Ancient History at Oxford. With 3 Maps. 5s.

MARTIAL—SELECT EPIGRAMS. Edited by Rev. H. M. STEPHENSON, M.A., Head-Master of St. Peter's School, York. 6s.

OVID—FASTI. Edited by G. H. HALLAM, M.A., Fellow of St. John's College, Cambridge, and Assistant-Master at Harrow. With Maps 5s.

OVID—HEROIDUM EPISTULÆ XIII. Edited by E. S. SHUCKBURGH, M.A. 4s. 6d.

PLAUTUS—MILES GLORIOSUS. Edited by R. V. TYRRELL, M.A., Fellow and Professor of Greek in Trinity College, Dublin. 5s.

PLINY'S LETTERS—Book III. Edited by Professor JOHN E. B. MAYOR. With Life of Pliny, by G. H. RENDALL, M.A. Fcap. 8vo. 5s.

PROPERTIUS—SELECT POEMS. Edited by J. P. POSTGATE, M.A., Fellow of Trinity College, Cambridge. 6s.

SALLUST—CATILINE and JUGURTHA. Edited by C. MERIVALE, B.D. New edition, carefully revised and enlarged. 4s. 6d. Or separately 2s. 6d. each.

TACITUS—AGRICOLA and GERMANIA. Edited by A. J. CHURCH, M.A., and W. J. BRODRIBB, M.A. Translators of Tacitus. New edition. 3s. 6d. Or separately 2s. each.

THE ANNALS, Book VI. By the same Editors. 2s. 6d.

TERENCE—HAUTON TIMORUMENOS. Edited by E. S. SHUCKBURGH, M.A., Assistant-Master at Eton College. 3s. With Translation, 4s. 6d.

PHORMIO. Edited by Rev. JOHN BOND, M.A., and A. S. WALPOLE, B.A. 4s. 6d.

THUCYDIDES—THE SICILIAN EXPEDITION, Books VI. and VII. Edited by the Rev. PERCIVAL FROST, M.A., Late Fellow of St. John's College, Cambridge. New edition, revised and enlarged, with Map. 5s.

XENOPHON—HELLENICA, Books I. and II. Edited by H. HAILSTONE, B.A., late Scholar of Peterhouse, Cambridge. With Map. 4s. 6d.

CYROPÆDIA, Books VII. and VIII. Edited by ALFRED GOODWIN, M.A., Professor of Greek in University College, London. 5s.

MEMORABILIA SOCRATIS. Edited by A. R. CLUER, B.A. Balliol College, Oxford. 6s.

THE ANABASIS—Books I. to IV. Edited with Notes by Professors W. W. GOODWIN and J. W. WHITE. Adapted to Goodwin's Greek Grammar. With a Map. Fcap. 8vo. 5s.

The following are in preparation :—

ÆSCHINES—IN CTESIPHONTEM. Edited by Rev. T. GWATKIN, M.A., late Fellow of St. John's College, Cambridge. *[In the press.]*

CICERO—PRO P. SESTIO. Edited by Rev. H. A. HOLDEN, M.A., LL.D., Head-Master of Ipswich School, late Fellow and Assistant Tutor of Trinity College, Cambridge, Editor of Aristophanes, &c.

DEMOSTHENES—FIRST PHILIPPIC. Edited by Rev. T. GWATKIN, M.A., late Fellow of St. John's College, Cambridge.

EURIPIDES—SELECT PLAYS, by various Editors.

ALCESTIS. Edited by J. E. C. WELLDON, B.A., Fellow and Lecturer of King's College, Cambridge.

BACCHAE. Edited by E. S. SHUCKBURGH, M.A., Assistant-Master at Eton College.

MEDEA. Edited by A. W. VERRALL, M.A., Fellow and Lecturer of Trinity College, Cambridge.

HERODOTUS—THE INVASION OF GREECE BY XERXES
Books VII. and VIII. Edited by THOMAS CASE, M.A., formerly Fellow of Brasenose College, Oxford.

HOMER'S ODYSSEY—Books XXI.—XXIV. Edited by S. G. HAMILTON, B.A., Fellow of Hertford College, Oxford.

HORACE—THE ODES. Edited by T. E. PAGE, M.A., Master at Charterhouse and late Fellow of St. John's College, Cambridge.

THE SATIRES. Edited by ARTHUR PALMER, M.A., Fellow and Professor of Latin in Trinity College, Dublin.

THE EPISTLES AND ARS POETICA. Edited by Professor A. S. WILKINS, M.A.

LIVY—Books XXIII. and XXIV. Edited by Rev. W. W. CAPES, M.A.

Books II. and III. Edited by Rev. H. M. STEPHENSON, M.A., Head-Master of St. Peter's School, York.

THE SAMNITE WARS as narrated in the First Decade of Livy. Edited by Rev. T. H. STOKOE, D.D., Lincoln College, Oxford, Head-Master of King's College School, London.

LYSIAS—SELECT ORATIONS. Edited by E. S. SHUCKBURGH, M.A., Assistant-Master at Eton College. [*In the press.*]

PLATO.—MENO. Edited by E. S. THOMPSON, M.A., Fellow of Christ's College, Cambridge.

APOLOGY AND CRITO. Edited by F. J. H. JENKINSON M.A., Fellow of Trinity College, Cambridge.

THE REPUBLIC. Books I.—V. Edited by T. H. WARREN, M.A., Fellow of Magdalen College, Oxford.

PLUTARCH—LIFE OF THEMISTOCLES. Edited by Rev. H. A. HOLDEN, M.A., LL.D., Editor of "Aristophanes," late Fellow and Assistant Tutor of Trinity College, Cambridge, &c. *[In the press.]*

SOPHOCLES—ANTIGONE. Edited by Rev. JOHN BOND, M.A., and A. S. WALPOLE, M.A.

SUETONIUS—LIVES OF THE ROMAN EMPERORS. Selected and Edited by H. F. G. BRAMWELL, B.A., Junior Student of Christ Church, Oxford.

TACITUS—THE HISTORY. Books I. and II. Edited by C. E. GRAVES, M.A.

THUCYDIDES—Books I. and II. Edited by H. BROADBENT, M.A., Fellow of Exeter College, Oxford, and Assistant-Master at Eton College.

Books IV. and V. Edited by C. E. GRAVES, M.A., Classical Lecturer, and late Fellow of St. John's College, Cambridge.

VIRGIL—ÆNEID, II. and III. The Narrative of Æneas. Edited by E. W. HOWSON, B.A., Fellow of King's College, Cambridge.

Other volumes will follow.

CLASSICAL.

ÆSCHYLUS—THE EUMENIDES. The Greek Text, with Introduction, English Notes, and Verse Translation. By BERNARD DRAKE, M.A., late Fellow of King's College, Cambridge. 8vo. 5s.

THE ORESTEIAN TRILOGY. Edited, with Introduction and Notes, by A. O. PRICKARD, M.A., Fellow and Tutor of New College, Oxford. 8vo. *[In preparation.]*

ARATUS—THE SKIES AND WEATHER-FORÉCASTS OF ARATUS. Translated with Notes by E. POSTE, M.A., Oriel College, Oxford. Crown 8vo. 3s. 6d.

ARISTOTLE—AN INTRODUCTION TO ARISTOTLE'S RHETORIC. With Analysis, Notes, and Appendices. By E. M. COPE, Fellow and Tutor of Trinity College, Cambridge. 8vo. 14s.

ARISTOTLE *Continued—*

ARISTOTLE ON FALLACIES; OR, THE SOPHISTICAL ELENCHI. With Translation and Notes by E. POSTE, M.A. Fellow of Oriel College, Oxford. 8vo. 8s. 6d.

THE METAPHYSICS. BOOK I. Translated by a Cambridge Graduate. 8vo. 5s. [*Book II. in preparation.*]

THE POLITICS. Edited, after SUSEMIHL, by R. D. HICKS, M.A., Fellow of Trinity College, Cambridge. 8vo.

[*In preparation.*]

THE POLITICS. Translated by J. E. C. WELLDON, B.A., Fellow of King's College, Cambridge. 8vo. [*In preparation.*]

ARISTOPHANES—THE BIRDS. Translated into English Verse, with Introduction, Notes, and Appendices, by B. H. KENNEDY, D.D., Regius Professor of Greek in the University of Cambridge. Crown 8vo. 6s. Help-Notes to the same, for the use of Students. 1s. 6d.

ARNOLD—A HANDBOOK OF LATIN EPIGRAPHY— By W. T. ARNOLD, B.A. [*In preparation.*]

THE ROMAN SYSTEM OF PROVINCIAL ADMINISTRATION TO THE ACCESSION OF CONSTANTINE THE GREAT. By the Same Author. Crown 8vo. 6s.

"Ought to prove a valuable handbook to the Student of Roman History."—GUARDIAN.

BELCHER—SHORT EXERCISES IN LATIN PROSE COMPOSITION AND EXAMINATION PAPERS IN LATIN GRAMMAR, to which is prefixed a Chapter on Analysis of Sentences. By the Rev. H. BELCHER, M.A., Assistant Master in King's College School, London. New Edition. 18mo. 1s. 6d.

Key to the above (for Teachers only). 2s. 6d.

SHORT EXERCISES IN LATIN PROSE COMPOSITION. PART II., On the Syntax of Sentences, with an Appendix including, **EXERCISES IN LATIN IDIOMS,** &c. 18mo. 2s.

BLACKIE—GREEK AND ENGLISH DIALOGUES FOR USE IN SCHOOLS AND COLLEGES. By JOHN STUART BLACKIE, Professor of Greek in the University of Edinburgh. New Edition. Fcap. 8vo. 2s. 6d.

CICERO—*THE ACADEMICA*. The Text revised and explained by JAMES REID, M.A., Fellow of Cains College, Cambridge. New Edition. With Translation. 8vo. [In the press.]

THE ACADEMICS. Translated by JAMES S. REID, M.A. 8vo. 5s. 6d.

SELECT LETTERS.—After the Edition of ALBERT WATSON, M.A. Translated by G. E. JEANS, M.A., Fellow of Hertford College, Oxford, and Assistant-Master at Haileybury. 8vo. 10s. 6d.

CLASSICAL WRITERS. Edited by J. R. GREEN, M.A. Fcap. 8vo. 1s. 6d. each.

A Series of small volumes upon some of the principal classical writers, whose works form subjects of study in our Schools.

EURIPIDES. By Professor J. P. MAHAFFY. [Ready.]

LIVY. By Rev. W. W. CAPES, M.A. [Ready.]

SOPHOCLES. By Prof. LEWIS CAMPBELL. [Ready.]

VERGIL. By Professor H. NETTLESHIP. [Ready.]

DEMOSTHENES. By S. H. BUTCHER, M.A.

CICERO. By Professor A. S. WILKINS.

TACITUS. By Messrs. CHURCH & BRODRIBB. } In preparation.

HERODOTUS. By JAMES BRYCE, M.A.

ELLIS—*PRACTICAL HINTS ON THE QUANTITATIVE PRONUNCIATION OF LATIN*, for the use of Classical Teachers and Linguists. By A. J. ELLIS, B.A., F.R.S. Extra fcap. 8vo. 4s. 6d.

ENGLAND—*EXERCISES ON LATIN SYNTAX AND IDIOM, ARRANGED WITH REFERENCE TO ROBY'S SCHOOL LATIN GRAMMAR*. By E. B. ENGLAND, M.A., Assistant Lecturer at the Owens College, Manchester. Crown 8vo. 2s. 6d.—Key, 2s. 6d.

EURIPIDES—*MEDEA*. Edited, with Introduction and Notes, by A. W. VERRALL, M.A., Fellow and Lecturer of Trinity College, Cambridge. 8vo. 7s. 6d.

GEDDES—*THE PROBLEM OF THE HOMERIC POEMS* By W. D. GEDDES, Professor of Greek in the University of Aberdeen. 8vo. 14s.

GLADSTONE—Works by the Rt. Hon. W. E. GLADSTONE, M.P.
JUVENTUS MUNDI; or, Gods and Men of the Heroic
 Age. Second Edition. Crown 8vo. 10s. 6d.

THE TIME AND PLACE OF HOMER. Crown 8vo.
 6s. 6d.

A PRIMER OF HOMER. 18mo. 1s.

GOODWIN—Works by W. W. GOODWIN, Professor of Greek in
 Harvard University, U.S.A.

*SYNTAX OF THE MOODS AND TENSES OF THE
 GREEK VERB.* New Edition, revised. Crown 8vo.
 6s. 6d.

AN ELEMENTARY GREEK GRAMMAR. New Edition,
 revised. Crown 8vo. 6s.

"It is the best Greek Grammar of its size in the English language."—
Athenæum.

A GREEK GRAMMAR FOR SCHOOLS. [In the press.

GOODWIN—*A TEXT-BOOK OF GREEK PHILOSOPHY*,
 based on RITTER and PRELLER'S "Historia Philosophiæ
 Græcæ et Romanæ." By ALFRED GOODWIN, M.A. Fellow
 of Balliol College, Oxford, and Professor of Greek in
 University College, London. 8vo. [In preparation.

GREENWOOD—*THE ELEMENTS OF GREEK GRAM-
 MAR*, including Accidence, Irregular Verbs, and Principles of
 Derivation and Composition; adapted to the System of Crude
 Forms. By J. G. GREENWOOD, Principal of Owens College,
 Manchester. New Edition. Crown 8vo. 5s. 6d.

HERODOTUS, Books I.—III.—*THE EMPIRES OF THE
 EAST.* Edited, with Notes and Introductions, by A. H.
 SAYCE, M.A., Fellow and Tutor of Queen's College, Oxford,
 and Deputy-Professor of Comparative Philology. 8vo.

[In preparation.

HODGSON—*MYTHOLOGY FOR LATIN VERSIFICA-
 TION.* A brief Sketch of the Fables of the Ancients,
 prepared to be rendered into Latin Verse for Schools. By
 F. HODGSON, B.D., late Provost of Eton. New Edition,
 revised by F. C. HODGSON, M.A. 18mo. 3s.

HOMER—THE ODYSSEY. Done into English by S. H. BUTCHER, M.A., Fellow of University College, Oxford, and ANDREW LANG, M.A., late Fellow of Merton College, Oxford. Second Edition, revised and corrected, with new Introduction, additional Notes and Illustrations. Crown 8vo. 10s. 6d.

THE ILIAD. Edited, with Introduction and Notes, by WALTER LEAF, M.A., Fellow of Trinity College, Cambridge, and the late J. H. PRATT, M.A. 8vo. [*In preparation.*]

THE ILIAD. Translated into English Prose. By ANDREW LANG, M.A., WALTER LEAF, and ERNEST MYERS, M.A., Crown 8vo. [*In preparation.*]

HOMERIC DICTIONARY. For Use in Schools and Colleges. Translated from the German of Dr. G. AUTENREITH, with Additions and Corrections by R. P. KEEP, Ph.D. With numerous Illustrations. Crown 8vo. 6s.

HORACE—THE WORKS OF HORACE, rendered into English Prose, with Introductions, Running Analysis, and Notes, by J. LONSDALE, M.A., and S. LEE, M.A. Globe 8vo. 3s. 6d.

THE ODES OF HORACE IN A METRICAL PARAPHRASE. By R. M. HOVENDEN. Extra fcap. 8vo. 4s.

HORACE'S LIFE AND CHARACTER. An Epitome of his Satires and Epistles. By R. M. HOVENDEN. Extra fcap. 8vo. 4s. 6d.

WORD FOR WORD FROM HORACE. The Odes literally Versified. By W. T. THORNTON, C.B. Crown 8vo. 7s. 6d.

JACKSON—FIRST STEPS TO GREEK PROSE COMPOSITION. By BLOMFIELD JACKSON, M.A. Assistant-Master in King's College School, London. New Edition revised and enlarged. 18mo. 1s. 6d.

KEY TO FIRST STEPS. 18mo. 3s. 6d.

SECOND STEPS TO GREEK PROSE COMPOSITION, with Miscellaneous Idioms, Aids to Accentuation, and Examination Papers in Greek Scholarship. 18mo. 2s. 6d.

* * A Key to Second Steps, for the use of Teachers only, is in preparation.

JACKSON—*A MANUAL OF GREEK PHILOSOPHY.* By HENRY JACKSON, M.A., Fellow and Prælector in Ancient Philosophy, Trinity College, Cambridge. [*In preparation.*]

JEBB—Works by R. C. JEBB, M.A., Professor of Greek in the University of Glasgow.

THE ATTIC ORATORS FROM ANTIPHON TO ISÆOS. 2 vols. 8vo. 25s.

SELECTIONS FROM THE ATTIC ORATORS, ANTIPHON, ANDOKIDES, LYSIAS, ISOKRATES, AND ISÆOS. Edited, with Notes. Being a companion volume to the preceding work. 8vo. 12s. 6d.

THE CHARACTERS OF THEOPHRASTUS. Translated from a revised Text, with Introduction and Notes. Extra fcap. 8vo. 6s. 6d.

A PRIMER OF GREEK LITERATURE. 18mo. 1s.

A HISTORY OF GREEK LITERATURE. Crown 8vo.

[*In preparation.*]

JUVENAL—*THIRTEEN SATIRES OF JUVENAL.* With a Commentary. By JOHN E. B. MAYOR, M.A., Kennedy Professor of Latin at Cambridge. Vol. I. Second Edition, enlarged. Crown 8vo. 7s. 6d. Vol. II. Crown 8vo. 10s. 6d.

"For really ripe scholarship, extensive acquaintance with Latin literature, and familiar knowledge of continental criticism, ancient and modern, it is unsurpassed among English editions."—PROF. CONINGTON IN "EDINBURGH REVIEW."

"MR. MAYOR'S work is beyond the reach of common literary compliment. It is not only a commentary on Juvenal, but a mine of the most valuable and interesting information on the history, social condition, manners, and beliefs of the Roman world during the period of the early Empire."—PROF. NETTLESHIP IN THE "ACADEMY."

"Scarcely any valuable contribution that has been hitherto made to the interpretation of Juvenal will be sought in vain in this commentary. . . . This excellent work meets the long felt want of a commentary to Juvenal on a level with the demands of modern science."—PROF. FRIEDLÄNDER OF KÖNIGSBERG IN "JAHRESBERICHT FÜR ALTERTHUMSWISSENSCHAFT."

KIEPERT—*MANUAL OF ANCIENT GEOGRAPHY.* Translated from the German of Dr. HEINRICH KIEPERT. Crown 8vo. 5s.

"DR. KIEPERT actually succeeds, brief as his manual necessarily is, in making ancient geography interesting, connecting it, as he is able to give, from his extensive and scholarly knowledge, with the natural features of the various countries, the movements and modern conditions. The arrangement is methodical, and the treatment clear and well defined; the connexion between the old world and the new being always kept in sight by comparison of ancient and modern names. . . . Altogether the English Edition of the 'Manual' will form an indispensable companion to Kiepert's 'Atlas' now used in many of our leading schools."—THE TIMES.

- KYNASTON**—*EXERCISES IN THE COMPOSITION OF GREEK IAMBIC VERSE* by Translations from English Dramatists. By Rev. H. KYNASTON, M.A., Principal of Cheltenham College. With Introduction, Vocabulary, &c. Extra fcap. 8vo. 4s. 6d.
- KEY TO THE SAME* (for Teachers only). Extra fcap. 8vo. 4s. 6d.
- EXEMPLARIA CHELTONIENSIA* : sive quae discipulis suis Carmina identidem Latine reddenda proposuit ipse reddidit ex cathedra dictavit HERBERT KYNASTON, M.A., Principal of Cheltenham College. Extra fcap. 8vo. 5s.
- LIVY**, Books **XXI.**—**XXV.** Translated by A. J. CHURCH, M.A., and W. J. BRODRIBB, M.A. [*In preparation.*]
- LLOYD**—*THE AGE OF PERICLES.* A History of the Politics and Arts of Greece from the Persian to the Peloponnesian War. By WILLIAM WATKISS LLOYD. 2 vols. 8vo. 21s.
- MACMILLAN**—*FIRST LATIN GRAMMAR.* By M. C. MACMILLAN, M.A., late Scholar of Christ's College, Cambridge, Assistant Master in St. Paul's School. 18mo. 1s. 6d.
- MAHAFFY**—Works by J. P. MAHAFFY, M.A., Professor of Ancient History in Trinity College, Dublin.
- SOCIAL LIFE IN GREECE* ; from Homer to Menander. Fourth Edition, revised and enlarged. Crown 8vo. 9s.
- RAMBLES AND STUDIES IN GREECE.* With Illustrations. Second Edition. With Map. Crown 8vo. 10s. 6d.
- A PRIMER OF GREEK ANTIQUITIES.* With Illustrations. 18mo. 1s.
- EURIPIDES.* 18mo. 1s. 6d.
- MARSHALL** — *A TABLE OF IRREGULAR GREEK VERBS*, classified according to the arrangement of Curtius Greek Grammar. By J. M. MARSHALL, M.A., one of the Masters in Clifton College. 8vo. cloth. New Edition. 1s.
- MARTIAL**—*SELECT EPIGRAMS FROM MARTIAL FOR ENGLISH READERS.* Translated by W. T. WEBB, M.A., Professor of History and Political Economy, Presidency College, Calcutta. Extra fcap. 8vo. 4s. 6d.
- BOOKS I. AND II. OF THE EPIGRAMS.* Edited, with Introduction and Notes, by Professor J. E. B. MAYOR, M.A. 8vo. [*In the press.*]

MAYOR (JOHN E. B.)—FIRST GREEK READER. Edited after KARL HALM, with Corrections and large Additions by Professor JOHN E. B. MAYOR, M.A., Fellow of St. John's College, Cambridge. New Edition, revised. Fcap. 8vo. 4s. 6d.

BIBLIOGRAPHICAL CLUE TO LATIN LITERATURE. Edited after HÜBNER, with large Additions by Professor JOHN E. B. MAYOR. Crown 8vo. 10s. 6d.

MAYOR (JOSEPH B.)—GREEK FOR BEGINNERS. By the Rev. J. B. MAYOR, M.A., Professor of Classical Literature in King's College, London. Part I., with Vocabulary, 1s. 6d. Parts II. and III., with Vocabulary and Index, 3s. 6d. complete in one Vol. New Edition. Fcap. 8vo. cloth. 4s. 6d.

NIXON—PARALLEL EXTRACTS arranged for translation into English and Latin, with Notes on Idioms. By J. E. NIXON, M.A., Fellow and Classical Lecturer, King's College, Cambridge. Part I.—Historical and Epistolary. New Edition, revised and enlarged. Crown 8vo. 3s. 6d.

PEILE (JOHN, M.A.)—AN INTRODUCTION TO GREEK AND LATIN ETYMOLOGY. By JOHN PEILE, M.A., Fellow and Tutor of Christ's College, Cambridge, formerly Teacher of Sanskrit in the University of Cambridge. Third and Revised Edition. Crown 8vo. 10s. 6d.

A PRIMER OF PHILOLOGY. By the same Author. 18mo. 1s.

PHRYNICHUS—RUTHERFORD—THE NEW PHRYNICHUS; being a Revised Text of the Ecloga of the Grammarian Phrynichus. With Introduction and Commentary by W. GUNION RUTHERFORD, M.A., of Balliol College, Oxford, Assistant Classical Master in St. Paul's School. 8vo. 18s.

PINDAR—THE EXTANT ODES OF PINDAR. Translated into English, with an Introduction and short Notes, by ERNEST MYERS, M.A., Fellow of Wadham College, Oxford. Crown 8vo. 5s.

PLATO—THE REPUBLIC OF PLATO. Translated into English, with an Analysis and Notes, by J. LL. DAVIES, M.A., and D. J. VAUGHAN, M.A. New Edition, with Vignette Portraits of Plato and Socrates, engraved by JEENS from an Antique Gem. 18mo. 4s. 6d.

PLATO *Continued*—

PHILEBUS. Edited, with Introduction and Notes, by HENRY JACKSON, M.A., Fellow of Trinity College, Cambridge. 8vo. [*In preparation.*]

THE TRIAL AND DEATH OF SOCRATES. Being the Euthyphro, Apology, Crito, and Phaedo of Plato. Translated by F. J. CHURCH. Crown 8vo. 4s. 6d.

PHÆDO.—Edited by R. D. ARCHER-HIND, M.A., Fellow of Trinity College, Cambridge. 8vo. [*In preparation.*]

PLAUTUS—*THE MOSTELLARIA OF PLAUTUS*. With Notes, Prolegomena, and Excursus. By WILLIAM RAMSAY, M.A., formerly Professor of Humanity in the University of Glasgow. Edited by Professor GEORGE G. RAMSAY, M.A., of the University of Glasgow. 8vo. 14s.

POSTGATE AND VINCE—*A DICTIONARY OF LATIN ETYMOLOGY*. By J. P. POSTGATE, M.A., and C. A. VINCE, M.A. [*In preparation.*]

POTTS (A. W., M.A.)—Works by ALEXANDER W. POTTS, M.A., LL.D., late Fellow of St. John's College, Cambridge; Head Master of the Fettes College, Edinburgh.

HINTS TOWARDS LATIN PROSE COMPOSITION. New Edition. Extra fcap. 8vo. 3s.

PASSAGES FOR TRANSLATION INTO LATIN PROSE. Edited with Notes and References to the above. Extra fcap. 8vo. 2s.

LATIN VERSIONS OF PASSAGES FOR TRANSLATION INTO LATIN PROSE. For Teachers only. 2s. 6d.

EXERCISES IN LATIN PROSE. With Introduction, Notes, &c., for the Middle Forms of Schools. Extra fcap. 8vo. [*In preparation.*]

ROBY—*A GRAMMAR OF THE LATIN LANGUAGE*, from Plautus to Suetonius. By H. J. ROBY, M.A., late Fellow of St. John's College, Cambridge. In Two Parts. Third Edition. Part I. containing:—Book I. Sounds. Book II. Inflexions. Book III. Word-formation. Appendices. Crown 8vo. 8s. 6d. Part II.—Syntax, Prepositions, &c. Crown 8vo. 10s. 6d.

"Marked by the clear and practised insight of a master in his art. A book that would do honour to any country."—*ATHENÆUM*.

SCHOOL LATIN GRAMMAR. By the same Author, Crown 8vo. 5s.

RUSH—SYNTHETIC LATIN DELECTUS. A First Latin Construing Book arranged on the Principles of Grammatical Analysis. With Notes and Vocabulary. By E. RUSH, B.A. With Preface by the Rev. W. F. MOULTON, M.A., D.D. Extra fcap. 8vo. 2s.

RUST—FIRST STEPS TO LATIN PROSE COMPOSITION. By the Rev. G. RUST, M.A. of Pembroke College, Oxford, Master of the Lower School, King's College, London. New Edition. 18mo. 1s. 6d.

RUTHERFORD—A FIRST GREEK GRAMMAR. By W. G. RUTHERFORD, M.A., Assistant Master in St. Paul's School, London. New Edition, enlarged. Extra fcap. 8vo. 1s. 6d.

SEELEY—A PRIMER OF LATIN LITERATURE. By Prof. J. R. SEELEY. *[In preparation.]*

SIMPSON—PROGRESSIVE EXERCISES IN LATIN PROSE COMPOSITION. Founded on Passages selected from Cicero, Livy, &c. By F. P. SIMPSON, B.A., of Balliol College, Oxford. *[In preparation.]*

TACITUS—COMPLETE WORKS TRANSLATED. By A. J. CHURCH, M.A., and W. J. BRODRIBB, M.A.
THE HISTORY. With Notes and a Map. New Edition. Crown 8vo. 6s.
THE ANNALS. With Notes and Maps. New Edition. Crown 8vo. 7s. 6d.
THE AGRICOLA AND GERMANY, WITH THE DIALOGUE ON ORATORY. With Maps and Notes. New and Revised Edition. Crown 8vo. 4s. 6d.

THEOCRITUS, BION and MOSCHUS. Rendered into English Prose with Introductory Essay by ANDREW LANG, M.A. Crown 8vo. 6s.

THEOPHRASTUS—THE CHARACTERS OF THEOPHRASTUS. An English Translation from a Revised Text. With Introduction and Notes. By R. C. JEBB, M.A., Professor of Greek in the University of Glasgow. Extra fcap. 8vo. 6s. 6d.

THRING—Works by the Rev. E. THRING, M.A., Head-Master of Uppingham School.

A LATIN GRADUAL. A First Latin Construing Book for Beginners. New Edition, enlarged, with Coloured Sentence Maps. Fcap. 8vo. 2s. 6d.

A MANUAL OF MOOD CONSTRUCTIONS. Fcap. 8vo. 1s. 6d.

A CONSTRUING BOOK. Fcap. 8vo. 2s. 6d.

VIRGIL—*THE WORKS OF VIRGIL RENDERED INTO ENGLISH PROSE*, with Notes, Introductions, Running Analysis, and an Index, by JAMES LONSDALE, M.A., and SAMUEL LEE, M.A. New Edition. Globe 8vo. 3s. 6d.

WHITE—*FIRST LESSONS IN GREEK.* Adapted to Goodwin's Greek Grammar, and designed as an introduction to the Anabasis of Xenophon. By JOHN WILLIAMS WHITE, Ph.D., Assistant-Prof. of Greek in Harvard University. Crown 8vo. 4s. 6d.

WILKINS—*A PRIMER OF ROMAN ANTIQUITIES.* By A. S. WILKINS, M.A., Professor of Latin in the Owens College, Manchester. With Illustrations. 18mo. 1s.

WRIGHT—Works by J. WRIGHT, M.A., late Head Master of Sutton Coldfield School.

HELLENICA; OR, A HISTORY OF GREECE IN GREEK, as related by Diodorus and Thucydides; being a First Greek Reading Book, with explanatory Notes, Critical and Historical. New Edition with a Vocabulary. Fcap. 8vo. 3s. 6d.

A HELP TO LATIN GRAMMAR; or, The Form and Use of Words in Latin, with Progressive Exercises. Crown 8vo. 4s. 6d.

THE SEVEN KINGS OF ROME. An Easy Narrative, abridged from the First Book of Livy by the omission of Difficult Passages; being a First Latin Reading Book, with Grammatical Notes and Vocabulary. New and revised edition. Fcap. 8vo. 3s. 6d.

FIRST LATIN STEPS; OR, AN INTRODUCTION BY A SERIES OF EXAMPLES TO THE STUDY OF THE LATIN LANGUAGE. Crown 8vo. 5s.

WRIGHT *Continued*—

ATTIC PRIMER. Arranged for the Use of Beginners. Extra fcap. 8vo. 4s. 6d.

A COMPLETE LATIN COURSE, comprising Rules with Examples, Exercises, both Latin and English, on each Rule, and Vocabularies. Crown 8vo. 4s. 6d.

MATHEMATICS.

AIRY—Works by Sir G. B. AIRY, K.C.B., Astronomer Royal :—

ELEMENTARY TREATISE ON PARTIAL DIFFERENTIAL EQUATIONS. Designed for the Use of Students in the Universities. With Diagrams. Second Edition. Crown 8vo. 5s. 6d.

ON THE ALGEBRAICAL AND NUMERICAL THEORY OF ERRORS OF OBSERVATIONS AND THE COMBINATION OF OBSERVATIONS. Second Edition, revised. Crown 8vo. 6s. 6d.

UNDULATORY THEORY OF OPTICS. Designed for the Use of Students in the University. New Edition. Crown 8vo. 6s. 6d.

ON SOUND AND ATMOSPHERIC VIBRATIONS. With the Mathematical Elements of Music. Designed for the Use of Students in the University. Second Edition, Revised and Enlarged. Crown 8vo. 9s.

A TREATISE OF MAGNETISM. Designed for the Use of Students in the University. Crown 8vo. 9s. 6d.

AIRY (OSMUND)—*A TREATISE ON GEOMETRICAL OPTICS.* Adapted for the use of the Higher Classes in Schools. By OSMUND AIRY, B.A., one of the Mathematical Masters in Wellington College. Extra fcap. 8vo. 3s. 6d.

BAYMA—*THE ELEMENTS OF MOLECULAR MECHANICS.* By JOSEPH BAYMA, S.J., Professor of Philosophy, Stonyhurst College. Demy 8vo. 10s. 6d.

BEASLEY—*AN ELEMENTARY TREATISE ON PLANE TRIGONOMETRY.* With Examples. By R. D. BEASLEY, M.A., Head Master of Grantham Grammar School. Fifth Edition, revised and enlarged. Crown 8vo. 3s. 6d.

BLACKBURN (HUGH)—*ELEMENTS OF PLANE TRIGONOMETRY*, for the use of the Junior Class in Mathematics in the University of Glasgow. By HUGH BLACKBURN, M.A., Professor of Mathematics in the University of Glasgow. Globe 8vo. 1s. 6d.

BOOLE—Works by G. BOOLE, D.C.L., F.R.S., late Professor of Mathematics in the Queen's University, Ireland.

A TREATISE ON DIFFERENTIAL EQUATIONS. Third and Revised Edition. Edited by I. TODHUNTER. Crown 8vo. 14s.

A TREATISE ON DIFFERENTIAL EQUATIONS. Supplementary Volume. Edited by I. TODHUNTER. Crown 8vo. 8s. 6d.

THE CALCULUS OF FINITE DIFFERENCES. Crown 8vo. 10s. 6d. Third Edition, revised by J. F. MOULTON.

BROOK-SMITH (J.)—*ARITHMETIC IN THEORY AND PRACTICE.* By J. BROOK-SMITH, M.A., LL.B., St. John's College, Cambridge; Barrister-at-Law; one of the Masters of Cheltenham College. New Edition, revised. Crown 8vo. 4s. 6d.

CAMBRIDGE SENATE-HOUSE PROBLEMS and RIDERS WITH SOLUTIONS:—

1875—*PROBLEMS AND RIDERS.* By A. G. GREENHILL, M.A. Crown 8vo. 8s. 6d.

1878—*SOLUTIONS OF SENATE-HOUSE PROBLEMS.* By the Mathematical Moderators and Examiners. Edited by J. W. L. GLAISHER, M.A., Fellow of Trinity College, Cambridge. 12s.

CANDLER—*HELP TO ARITHMETIC.* Designed for the use of Schools. By H. CANDLER, M.A., Mathematical Master of Uppingham School. Extra fcap. 8vo 2s. 6d.

CHEYNE—*AN ELEMENTARY TREATISE ON THE PLANETARY THEORY.* By C. H. H. CHEYNE, M.A., F.R.A.S. With a Collection of Problems. Second Edition. Crown 8vo. 6s. 6d.

CHRISTIE—*A COLLECTION OF ELEMENTARY TEST-QUESTIONS IN PURE AND MIXED MATHEMATICS*; with Answers and Appendices on Synthetic Division, and on the Solution of Numerical Equations by Horner's Method. By JAMES R. CHRISTIE, F.R.S., Royal Military Academy, Woolwich. Crown 8vo. 8s. 6d.

CLIFFORD—*THE ELEMENTS OF DYNAMIC*. An Introduction to the Study of Motion and Rest in Solid and Fluid Bodies. By W. K. CLIFFORD, F.R.S., Professor of Applied Mathematics and Mechanics at University College, London. Part I.—KINEMATIC. Crown 8vo. 7s. 6d.

CUMMING—*AN INTRODUCTION TO THE THEORY OF ELECTRICITY*. By LINNÆUS CUMMING, M.A., one of the Masters of Rugby School. With Illustrations. Crown 8vo. 8s. 6d.

CUTHBERTSON—*EUCLIDIAN GEOMETRY*. By FRANCIS CUTHBERTSON, M.A., LL.D., Head Mathematical Master of the City of London School. Extra fcap. 8vo. 4s. 6d.

DALTON—Works by the Rev. T. DALTON, M.A., Assistant Master of Eton College.

RULES AND EXAMPLES IN ARITHMETIC. New Edition. 18mo. 2s. 6d. [*Answers to the Examples are appended.*]

RULES AND EXAMPLES IN ALGEBRA. Part I. New Edition. 18mo. 2s. Part II. 18mo. 2s. 6d.

DAY—*PROPERTIES OF CONIC SECTIONS PROVED GEOMETRICALLY*. PART I., THE ELLIPSE, with Problems. By the Rev. H. G. DAY, M.A. Crown 8vo. 3s. 6d.

DREW—*GEOMETRICAL TREATISE ON CONIC SECTIONS*. By W. H. DREW, M.A., St. John's College, Cambridge. New Edition, enlarged. Crown 8vo. 5s.

SOLUTIONS TO THE PROBLEMS IN DREW'S CONIC SECTIONS. Crown 8vo. 4s. 6d.

DYER—*EXERCISES IN ANALYTICAL GEOMETRY*. Compiled and arranged by J. M. DYER, M.A., Senior Mathematical Master in the Classical Department of Cheltenham College. With Illustrations. Crown 8vo. 4s. 6d.

EDGAR (J. H.) and PRITCHARD (G. S.)—*NOTE-BOOK ON PRACTICAL SOLID OR DESCRIPTIVE GEOMETRY.* Containing Problems with help for Solutions. By J. H. EDGAR, M.A., Lecturer on Mechanical Drawing at the Royal School of Mines, and G. S. PRITCHARD. Fourth Edition, revised and enlarged. By ARTHUR MEEZE. Globe 8vo. 4s. 6d.

FERRERS—Works by the Rev. N. M. FERRERS, M.A., Fellow and Master of Gonville and Caius College, Cambridge.

AN ELEMENTARY TREATISE ON TRILINEAR CO-ORDINATES, the Method of Reciprocal Polars, and the Theory of Projectors. New Edition, revised. Crown 8vo. 6s. 6d.

AN ELEMENTARY TREATISE ON SPHERICAL HARMONICS, AND SUBJECTS CONNECTED WITH THEM. Crown 8vo. 7s. 6d.

FROST—Works by PERCIVAL FROST, M.A., formerly Fellow of St. John's College, Cambridge; Mathematical Lecturer of King's College.

AN ELEMENTARY TREATISE ON CURVE TRACING. By PERCIVAL FROST, M.A. 8vo. 12s.

SOLID GEOMETRY. A New Edition, revised and enlarged of the Treatise by FROST and WOLSTENHOLME. In 2 Vols. Vol. I. 8vo. 16s.

GODFRAY—Works by HUGH GODFRAY, M.A., Mathematical Lecturer at Pembroke College, Cambridge.

A TREATISE ON ASTRONOMY, for the Use of Colleges and Schools. New Edition. 8vo. 12s. 6d.

AN ELEMENTARY TREATISE ON THE LUNAR THEORY, with a Brief Sketch of the Problem up to the time of Newton. Second Edition, revised. Crown 8vo. 5s. 6d.

HEMMING—*AN ELEMENTARY TREATISE ON THE DIFFERENTIAL AND INTEGRAL CALCULUS*, for the Use of Colleges and Schools. By G. W. HEMMING, M.A., Fellow of St. John's College, Cambridge. Second Edition, with Corrections and Additions. 8vo. 9s.

- JACKSON — GEOMETRICAL CONIC SECTIONS.** An Elementary Treatise in which the Conic Sections are defined as the Plane Sections of a Cone, and treated by the Method of Projection. By J. STUART JACKSON, M.A., late Fellow of Gonville and Caius College, Cambridge. Crown 8vo. 4s. 6d.
- JELLET (JOHN H.)—A TREATISE ON THE THEORY OF FRICTION.** By JOHN H. JELLET, B.D., Senior Fellow of Trinity College, Dublin; President of the Royal Irish Academy. 8vo. 8s. 6d.
- JONES and CHEYNE—ALGEBRAICAL EXERCISES.** Progressively Arranged. By the Rev. C. A. JONES, M.A., and C. H. CHEYNE, M.A., F.R.A.S., Mathematical Masters of Westminster School. New Edition. 18mo. 2s. 6d.
- KELLAND and TAIT—INTRODUCTION TO QUATERNIONS,** with numerous examples. By P. KELLAND, M.A., F.R.S.; and P. G. TAIT, M.A., Professors in the department of Mathematics in the University of Edinburgh. Crown 8vo. 7s. 6d.
- KITCHENER—A GEOMETRICAL NOTE-BOOK,** containing Easy Problems in Geometrical Drawing preparatory to the Study of Geometry. For the use of Schools. By F. E. KITCHENER, M.A., Mathematical Master at Rugby. New Edition. 4to. 2s.
- LOCK—ELEMENTARY TRIGONOMETRY.** By Rev. J. B. LOCK, M.A., Fellow of Caius College, Cambridge; and Assistant Master at Eton. Globe 8vo. [In the press.]
- MAULT—NATURAL GEOMETRY:** an Introduction to the Logical Study of Mathematics. For Schools and Technical Classes. With Explanatory Models, based upon the Tachymetrical Works of Ed. Lagout. By A. MAULT. 18mo. 1s. Models to Illustrate the above, in Box, 12s. 6d.
- MERRIMAN — ELEMENTS OF THE METHOD OF LEAST SQUARES.** By MANSFIELD MERRIMAN, Ph.D. Professor of Civic and Mechanical Engineering, Lehigh University, Bethlehem, Penn. Crown 8vo. 7s. 6d.
- MILLAR—ELEMENTS OF DESCRIPTIVE GEOMETRY.** By J. B. MILLAR, C.E., Assistant Lecturer in Engineering in Owens College, Manchester. Crown 8vo. 6s.

MORGAN—*A COLLECTION OF PROBLEMS AND EXAMPLES IN MATHEMATICS.* With Answers. By H. A. Morgan, M.A., Sadlerian and Mathematical Lecturer of Jesus College, Cambridge. Crown 8vo. 6s. 6d.

MUIR—*DETERMINANTS.* By THOS. MUIR. Crown 8vo. [In preparation.]

NEWTON'S PRINCIPIA. Edited by Prof. Sir W. THOMSON and Professor BLACKBURN. 4to. cloth. 31s. 6d.
THE FIRST THREE SECTIONS OF NEWTON'S PRINCIPIA, With Notes and Illustrations. Also a collection of Problems, principally intended as Examples of Newton's Methods. By PERCIVAL FROST, M.A. Third Edition. 8vo. 12s.

PARKINSON—Works by S. PARKINSON, D.D., F.R.S., Tutor and Prælector of St. John's College, Cambridge.

AN ELEMENTARY TREATISE ON MECHANICS. For the Use of the Junior Classes at the University and the Higher Classes in Schools. With a Collection of Examples. Sixth Edition, revised. Crown 8vo. cloth. 9s. 6d.

A TREATISE ON OPTICS. New Edition, revised and enlarged. Crown 8vo. cloth. 10s. 6d.

PEDLEY—*EXERCISES IN ARITHMETIC* for the Use of Schools. Containing more than 7,000 original Examples. By S. PEDLEY, late of Tamworth Grammar School. Crown 8vo. 5s.

PHEAR—*ELEMENTARY HYDROSTATICS.* With Numerous Examples. By J. B. PHEAR, M.A., Fellow and late Assistant Tutor of Clare College, Cambridge. New Edition. Crown 8vo. cloth. 5s. 6d.

PIRIE—*LESSONS ON RIGID DYNAMICS.* By the Rev. G. PIRIE, M.A., late Fellow and Tutor of Queen's College, Cambridge; Professor of Mathematics in the University of Aberdeen. Crown 8vo. 6s.

PUCKLE—*AN ELEMENTARY TREATISE ON CONIC SECTIONS AND ALGEBRAIC GEOMETRY.* With Numerous Examples and Hints for their Solution; especially designed for the Use of Beginners. By G. H. PUCKLE, M.A. New Edition, revised and enlarged. Crown 8vo. 7s. 6d.

RAWLINSON—*ELEMENTARY STATICS*, by the Rev. GEORGE RAWLINSON, M.A. Edited by the Rev. EDWARD STURGES, M.A. Crown 8vo. 4s. 6d.

RAYLEIGH—*THE THEORY OF SOUND*. By LORD RAYLEIGH, M.A., F.R.S., formerly Fellow of Trinity College, Cambridge. 8vo. Vol. I. 12s. 6d. Vol. II. 12s. 6d.
[Vol. III. in the press.]

REYNOLDS—*MODERN METHODS IN ELEMENTARY GEOMETRY*. By E. M. REYNOLDS, M.A., Mathematical Master in Clifton College. Crown 8vo. 3s. 6d.

ROUTH—Works by EDWARD JOHN ROUTH, M.A., F.R.S., late Fellow and Assistant Tutor of St. Peter's College, Cambridge; Examiner in the University of London.

AN ELEMENTARY TREATISE ON THE DYNAMICS OF THE SYSTEM OF RIGID BODIES. With numerous Examples. Third and enlarged Edition. 8vo. 21s.

STABILITY OF A GIVEN STATE OF MOTION, PARTICULARLY STEADY MOTION. Adams' Prize Essay for 1877. 8vo. 8s. 6d.

SMITH—Works by the Rev. BARNARD SMITH, M.A., Rector of Glaston, Rutland, late Fellow and Senior Bursar of St. Peter's College, Cambridge.

ARITHMETIC AND ALGEBRA, in their Principles and Application; with numerous systematically arranged Examples taken from the Cambridge Examination Papers, with especial reference to the Ordinary Examination for the B.A. Degree. New Edition, carefully revised. Crown 8vo. 10s. 6d.

ARITHMETIC FOR SCHOOLS. New Edition. Crown 8vo. 4s. 6d.

A KEY TO THE ARITHMETIC FOR SCHOOLS. New Edition. Crown 8vo. 8s. 6d.

EXERCISES IN ARITHMETIC. Crown 8vo. limp cloth. 2s. With Answers. 2s. 6d.

Answers separately. 6d.

SCHOOL CLASS-BOOK OF ARITHMETIC. 18mo. cloth. 3s.

Or sold separately, in Three Parts. 1s. each.

SMITH Continued—

KEYS TO SCHOOL CLASS-BOOK OF ARITHMETIC
Parts I., II., and III., 2s. 6d. each.

*SHILLING BOOK OF ARITHMETIC FOR NATIONAL
AND ELEMENTARY SCHOOLS.* 18mo. cloth. Or
separately, Part I. 2d. ; Part II. 3d. ; Part III. 7d. Answers.
6d.

THE SAME, with Answers complete. 18mo, cloth. 1s. 6d.
KEY TO SHILLING BOOK OF ARITHMETIC.
18mo. 4s. 6d.

EXAMINATION PAPERS IN ARITHMETIC. 18mo.
1s. 6d. The same, with Answers, 18mo. 2s. Answers, 6d.

*KEY TO EXAMINATION PAPERS IN ARITH-
METIC.* 18mo. 4s. 6d.

*THE METRIC SYSTEM OF ARITHMETIC, ITS
PRINCIPLES AND APPLICATIONS*, with numerous
Examples, written expressly for Standard V. in National
Schools. New Edition. 18mo. cloth, sewed. 3d.

A CHART OF THE METRIC SYSTEM, on a Sheet,
size 42 in. by 34 in. on Roller, mounted and varnished, price
3s. 6d. New Edition.

Also a Small Chart on a Card, price 1d.

EASY LESSONS IN ARITHMETIC, combining Exercises
in Reading, Writing, Spelling, and Dictation. Part I. for
Standard I. in National Schools. Crown 8vo. 9d.

EXAMINATION CARDS IN ARITHMETIC. (Dedi-
cated to Lord Sandon.) With Answers and Hints.

Standards I. and II. in box, 1s. Standards III., IV. and V.,
in boxes, 1s. each. Standard VI. in Two Parts, in boxes,
1s. each.

A and B papers, of nearly the same difficulty, are given so as to
prevent copying, and the Colours of the A and B papers differ in
each Standard, and from those of every other Standard, so that a
master or mistress can see at a glance whether the children have the
proper papers.

SNOWBALL—*THE ELEMENTS OF PLANE AND SPHERICAL TRIGONOMETRY*; with the Construction and Use of Tables of Logarithms. By J. C. SNOWBALL, M.A. New Edition. Crown 8vo. 7s. 6d.

SYLLABUS OF PLANE GEOMETRY (corresponding to Euclid, Books I.—VI.). Prepared by the Association for the Improvement of Geometrical Teaching. New Edition. Crown 8vo. 1s.

TAIT and STEELE—*A TREATISE ON DYNAMICS OF A PARTICLE*. With numerous Examples. By Professor TAIT and Mr. STEELE. Fourth Edition, revised. Crown 8vo. 12s.

TEBAY—*ELEMENTARY MENSURATION FOR SCHOOLS*. With numerous Examples. By SEPTIMUS TEBAY, B.A., Head Master of Queen Elizabeth's Grammar School, Rivington. Extra fcap. 8vo. 3s. 6d.

TODHUNTER—Works by I. TODHUNTER, M.A., F.R.S., of St. John's College, Cambridge.

"Mr. Todhunter is chiefly known to students of Mathematics as the author of a series of admirable mathematical text-books, which possess the rare qualities of being clear in style and absolutely free from mistakes, typographical or other."—SATURDAY REVIEW.

THE ELEMENTS OF EUCLID. For the Use of Colleges and Schools. New Edition. 18mo 3s. 6d.

KEY TO EXERCISES IN EUCLID. Crown 8vo. 6s. 6d.

MENSURATION FOR BEGINNERS. With numerous Examples. New Edition. 18mo. 2s. 6d.

ALGEBRA FOR BEGINNERS. With numerous Examples. New Edition. 18mo. 2s. 6d.

KEY TO ALGEBRA FOR BEGINNERS. Crown 8vo. 6s. 6d.

TRIGONOMETRY FOR BEGINNERS. With numerous Examples. New Edition. 18mo. 2s. 6d.

KEY TO TRIGONOMETRY FOR BEGINNERS. Crown 8vo. 8s. 6d.

TODHUNTER *Continued*—

MECHANICS FOR BEGINNERS. With numerous Examples. New Edition. 18mo. 4s. 6d.

KEY TO MECHANICS FOR BEGINNERS. Crown 8vo. 6s. 6d.

ALGEBRA. For the Use of Colleges and Schools. New Edition. Crown 8vo. 7s. 6d.

KEY TO ALGEBRA FOR THE USE OF COLLEGES AND SCHOOLS. Crown 8vo. 10s. 6d.

AN ELEMENTARY TREATISE ON THE THEORY OF EQUATIONS. New Edition, revised. Crown 8vo. 7s. 6d.

PLANE TRIGONOMETRY. For Schools and Colleges. New Edition. Crown 8vo. 5s.

KEY TO PLANE TRIGONOMETRY. Crown 8vo. 10s. 6d.

A TREATISE ON SPHERICAL TRIGONOMETRY. New Edition, enlarged. Crown 8vo. 4s. 6d.

PLANE CO-ORDINATE GEOMETRY, as applied to the Straight Line and the Conic Sections. With numerous Examples. New Edition, revised and enlarged. Crown 8vo. 7s. 6d.

A TREATISE ON THE DIFFERENTIAL CALCULUS. With numerous Examples. New Edition. Crown 8vo. 10s. 6d.

A TREATISE ON THE INTEGRAL CALCULUS AND ITS APPLICATIONS. With numerous Examples. New Edition, revised and enlarged. Crown 8vo. 10s. 6d.

EXAMPLES OF ANALYTICAL GEOMETRY OF THREE DIMENSIONS. New Edition, revised. Crown 8vo. 4s.

A TREATISE ON ANALYTICAL STATICS. With numerous Examples. New Edition, revised and enlarged. Crown 8vo. 10s. 6d.

TODHUNTER *Continued*—

A HISTORY OF THE MATHEMATICAL THEORY OF PROBABILITY, from the time of Pascal to that of Laplace. 8vo. 18s.

RESEARCHES IN THE CALCULUS OF VARIATIONS, principally on the Theory of Discontinuous Solutions: an Essay to which the Adams Prize was awarded in the University of Cambridge in 1871. 8vo. 6s.

A HISTORY OF THE MATHEMATICAL THEORIES OF ATTRACTION, AND THE FIGURE OF THE EARTH, from the time of Newton to that of Laplace. 2 vols. 8vo. 24s.

AN ELEMENTARY TREATISE ON LAPLACE'S, LAME'S, AND BESSEL'S FUNCTIONS. Crown 8vo. 10s. 6d.

WILSON (J. M.)—*ELEMENTARY GEOMETRY*. Books I. to V. Containing the Subjects of Euclid's first Six Books. Following the Syllabus of the Geometrical Association. By J. M. WILSON, M.A., Head Master of Clifton College. New Edition. Extra fcap. 8vo. 4s. 6d.

SOLID GEOMETRY AND CONIC SECTIONS. With Appendices on Transversals and Harmonic Division. For the Use of Schools. By J. M. WILSON, M.A. New Edition. Extra fcap. 8vo. 3s. 6d.

WILSON—*GRADUATED EXERCISES IN PLANE TRIGONOMETRY*. Compiled and arranged by J. WILSON, M.A., and S. R. WILSON, B.A. Crown 8vo. 4s. 6d.

"The exercises seem beautifully graduated and adapted to lead a student on most gently and pleasantly"—E. J. ROUTH, F.R.S., St. Peter's College, Cambridge.

WILSON (W. P.)—*A TREATISE ON DYNAMICS*. By W. P. WILSON, M.A., Fellow of St. John's College, Cambridge, and Professor of Mathematics in Queen's College, Belfast. 8vo. 9s. 6d.

WOLSTENHOLME—*MATHEMATICAL PROBLEMS*, on Subjects included in the First and Second Divisions of the Schedule of Subjects for the Cambridge Mathematical Tripos Examination. Devised and arranged by **JOSEPH WOLSTENHOLME**, late Fellow of Christ's College, sometime Fellow of St. John's College, and Professor of Mathematics in the Royal Indian Engineering College. New Ed. greatly enlarged. 8vo. 18s.

SCIENCE.

SCIENCE PRIMERS FOR ELEMENTARY SCHOOLS.

Under the joint Editorship of Professors **HUXLEY**, **ROSCOE**, and **BALFOUR STEWART**.

"These Primers are extremely simple and attractive, and thoroughly answer their purpose of just leading the young beginner up to the threshold of the long avenues in the Palace of Nature which these titles suggest."
—**GUARDIAN**.

"They are wonderfully clear and lucid in their instruction, simple in style, and admirable in plan."
—**EDUCATIONAL TIMES**.

INTRODUCTORY—By **T. H. HUXLEY**, F.R.S., Professor of Natural History in the Royal School of Mines. 18mo. 1s.

CHEMISTRY—By **H. E. ROSCOE**, F.R.S., Professor of Chemistry in the Victoria University the Owens College, Manchester. With numerous Illustrations. 18mo. 1s. New Edition. With Questions.

"A very model of perspicacity and accuracy."
—**CHEMIST AND DRUGGIST**.

PHYSICS—By **BALFOUR STEWART**, F.R.S., Professor of Natural Philosophy in the Victoria University the Owens College, Manchester. With numerous Illustrations. 18mo. 1s. New Edition. With Questions.

PHYSICAL GEOGRAPHY—By **ARCHIBALD GEIKIE**, F.R.S., Murchison Professor of Geology and Mineralogy at Edinburgh. With numerous Illustrations. New Edition, with Questions. 18mo. 1s.

"Everyone of his lessons is marked by simplicity, clearness, and correctness."
—**ATHENÆUM**.

GEOLOGY—By Professor **GEIKIE**, F.R.S. With numerous Illustrations. New Edition. 18mo. cloth. 1s.

"It is hardly possible for the dullest child to misunderstand the meaning of a classification of stones after Professor Geikie's explanation."
—**SCHOOL BOARD CHRONICLE**.

SCIENCE PRIMERS *Continued*—

PHYSIOLOGY—By MICHAEL FOSTER, M.D., F.R.S. With numerous Illustrations. New Edition. 18mo. 1s.

"The book seems to us to leave nothing to be desired as an elementary text-book."—ACADEMY.

ASTRONOMY—By J. NORMAN LOCKYER, F.R.S. With numerous Illustrations. New Edition. 18mo. 1s.

"This is altogether one of the most likely attempts we have ever seen to bring astronomy down to the capacity of the young child."—SCHOOL BOARD CHRONICLE.

BOTANY—By Sir J. D. HOOKER, K.C.S.I., C.B., F.R.S. With numerous Illustrations. New Edition. 18mo. 1s.

"To teachers the Primer will be of inestimable value, and not only because of the simplicity of the language and the clearness with which the subject matter is treated, but also on account of its coming from the highest authority, and so furnishing positive information as to the most suitable methods of teaching the science of botany."—NATURE.

LOGIC—By Professor STANLEY JEVONS, LL.D., M.A., F.R.S. New Edition. 18mo. 1s.

"It appears to us admirably adapted to serve both as an introduction to scientific reasoning, and as a guide to sound judgment and reasoning in the ordinary affairs of life."—ACADEMY.

POLITICAL ECONOMY—By Professor STANLEY JEVONS, LL.D., M.A., F.R.S. 18mo. 1s.

"Unquestionably in every respect an admirable primer."—SCHOOL BOARD CHRONICLE.

In preparation:—

ZOOLOGY. By Professor HUXLEY. &c. &c.

ELEMENTARY CLASS-BOOKS.

ASTRONOMY, by the Astronomer Royal.

POPULAR ASTRONOMY. With Illustrations. By Sir G. B. AIRY, K.C.B., Astronomer Royal. New Edition. 18mo. 4s. 6d.

ASTRONOMY.

ELEMENTARY LESSONS IN ASTRONOMY. With Coloured Diagram of the Spectra of the Sun, Stars, and Nebulae, and numerous Illustrations. By J. NORMAN LOCKYER, F.R.S. New Edition. Fcap. 8vo. 5s. 6d.

"Full, clear, sound, and worthy of attention, not only as a popular exposition, but as a scientific 'Index.'"—ATHENÆUM.

ELEMENTARY CLASS-BOOKS *Continued—*

QUESTIONS ON LOCKYER'S ELEMENTARY LESSONS IN ASTRONOMY. For the Use of Schools. By JOHN FORBES-ROBERTSON. 18mo. cloth limp. 1s. 6d.

PHYSIOLOGY.

LESSONS IN ELEMENTARY PHYSIOLOGY. With numerous Illustrations. By T. H. HUXLEY, F.R.S., Professor of Natural History in the Royal School of Mines. New Edition. Fcap. 8vo. 4s. 6d.

"Pure gold throughout."—GUARDIAN.

"Unquestionably the clearest and most complete elementary treatise on this subject that we possess in any language."—WESTMINSTER REVIEW

QUESTIONS ON HUXLEY'S PHYSIOLOGY FOR SCHOOLS. By T. ALCOCK, M.D. 18mo. 1s. 6d.

BOTANY.

LESSONS IN ELEMENTARY BOTANY. By D. OLIVER, F.R.S., F.L.S., Professor of Botany in University College, London. With nearly Two Hundred Illustrations. New Edition. Fcap. 8vo. 4s. 6d.

CHEMISTRY.

LESSONS IN ELEMENTARY CHEMISTRY, IN-ORGANIC AND ORGANIC. By HENRY E. ROSCOE, F.R.S., Professor of Chemistry in the Victoria University the Owens College, Manchester. With numerous Illustrations and Chromo-Litho of the Solar Spectrum, and of the Alkalies and Alkaline Earths. New Edition. Fcap. 8vo. 4s. 6d.

"As a standard general text-book it deserves to take a leading place."—SPECTATOR.

"We unhesitatingly pronounce it the best of all our elementary treatises on Chemistry."—MEDICAL TIMES.

A SERIES OF CHEMICAL PROBLEMS, prepared with Special Reference to the above, by T. E. Thorpe, Ph.D., Professor of Chemistry in the Yorkshire College of Science, Leeds, Adapted for the preparation of Students for the Government, Science, and Society of Arts Examinations. With a Preface by Professor ROSCOE. New Edition, with Key. 18mo. 2s.

POLITICAL ECONOMY.

POLITICAL ECONOMY FOR BEGINNERS. By MILLICENT G. FAWCETT. New Edition. 18mo. 2s. 6d.

"Clear, compact, and comprehensive."—DAILY NEWS

"The relations of capital and labour have never been more simply or more clearly expounded."—CONTEMPORARY REVIEW.

ELEMENTARY CLASS-BOOKS *Continued—*

LOGIC.

ELEMENTARY LESSONS IN LOGIC; Deductive and Inductive, with copious Questions and Examples, and a Vocabulary of Logical Terms. By W. STANLEY JEVONS, LL.D., M.A., F.R.S. New Edition. Fcap. 8vo. 3s. 6d.

"Nothing can be better for a school-book."—*GUARDIAN*.

"A manual alike simple, interesting, and scientific."—*ATHENÆUM*.

PHYSICS.

LESSONS IN ELEMENTARY PHYSICS. By BALFOUR STEWART, F.R.S., Professor of Natural Philosophy in the Victoria University the Owens College, Manchester. With numerous Illustrations and Chromolitho of the Spectra of the Sun, Stars, and Nebulæ. New Edition. Fcap. 8vo. 4s. 6d.

"The beau-ideal of a scientific text-book, clear, accurate, and thorough."
—*EDUCATIONAL TIMES*.

QUESTIONS ON BALFOUR STEWART'S ELEMENTARY LESSONS IN PHYSICS. By Prof. THOMAS H. CORE, Owens College, Manchester. Fcap. 8vo. 2s.

PRACTICAL CHEMISTRY.

THE OWENS COLLEGE JUNIOR COURSE OF PRACTICAL CHEMISTRY. By FRANCIS JONES, Chemical Master in the Grammar School, Manchester. With Preface by Professor ROSCOE, and Illustrations. New Edition. 18mo. 2s. 6d.

CHEMISTRY.

QUESTIONS ON CHEMISTRY. A Series of Problems and Exercises in Inorganic and Organic Chemistry. By FRANCIS JONES, F.R.S.E., F.C.S., Chemical Master in the Grammar School, Manchester. Fcap. 8vo. 3s.

ANATOMY.

LESSONS IN ELEMENTARY ANATOMY. By ST. GEORGE MIVART, F.R.S., Lecturer in Comparative Anatomy at St. Mary's Hospital. With upwards of 400 Illustrations. Fcap. 8vo. 6s. 6d.

"It may be questioned whether any other work on anatomy contains in like compass so proportionately great a mass of information."—*LANCET*.

"The work is excellent, and should be in the hands of every student of human anatomy."—*MEDICAL TIMES*.

ELEMENTARY CLASS-BOOKS *Continued—***STEAM.**

AN ELEMENTARY TREATISE. By JOHN PERRY, C.E., Whitworth Scholar, Fellow of the Chemical Society, Lecturer in Physics at Clifton College. With numerous Woodcuts and Numerical Examples and Exercises. 18mo. 4s. 6d.

"The young engineer and those seeking for a comprehensive knowledge of the use, power, and economy of steam, could not have a more useful work, as it is very intelligible, well arranged, and practical throughout."—IRONMONGER.

PHYSICAL GEOGRAPHY.

ELEMENTARY LESSONS IN PHYSICAL GEOGRAPHY. By A. GEIKIE, F.R.S., Murchison Professor of Geology, &c., Edinburgh. With numerous Illustrations. Fcap. 8vo. 4s. 6d.

QUESTIONS ON THE SAME. 1s. 6d.

GEOGRAPHY.

CLASS-BOOK OF GEOGRAPHY. By C. B. CLARKE, M.A., F.L.S., F.G.S. Fcap. 8vo. New Edition, with Eighteen Coloured Maps. 3s.

NATURAL PHILOSOPHY.

NATURAL PHILOSOPHY FOR BEGINNERS. By I. TODHUNTER, M.A., F.R.S. Part I. The Properties of Solid and Fluid Bodies. 18mo. 3s. 6d.

Part II. Sound, Light, and Heat. 18mo. 3s. 6d.

MORAL PHILOSOPHY.

AN ELEMENTARY TREATISE. By Prof. E. CAIRD, of Glasgow University. [*In preparation.*]

ELECTRICITY AND MAGNETISM.

ELEMENTARY LESSONS IN ELECTRICITY AND MAGNETISM. By Prof. SYLVANUS THOMPSON, of University College, Bristol. With Illustrations. [*In the press.*]

SOUND.

AN ELEMENTARY TREATISE. By W. H. STONE, M.B. With Illustrations. 18mo. 3s. 6d.

PSYCHOLOGY.

ELEMENTARY LESSONS IN PSYCHOLOGY. By G. CROOM ROBERTSON, Professor of Mental Philosophy, &c., University College, London. [*In preparation.*]

ELEMENTARY CLASS BOOKS *Continued—*

AGRICULTURE — ELEMENTS OF AGRICULTURAL SCIENCE. By H. TANNER, F.C.S., Professor of Agricultural Science, University College, Aberystwith. Fcap. 8vo.

[In the press.]

ECONOMICS — THE ECONOMICS OF INDUSTRY. By A. MARSHALL, M.A., Principal of University College, Bristol, and MARY P. MARSHALL, late Lecturer at Newnham Hall, Cambridge. Extra fcap. 8vo. 2s. 6d.

"The book is of sterling value, and will be of great use to students and teachers."—*ATHENÆUM*.

Others in Preparation.

MANUALS FOR STUDENTS.

Crown 8vo.

COSSA — GUIDE TO THE STUDY OF POLITICAL ECONOMY. By Dr. LUIGI COSSA, Professor in the University of Pavia. Translated from the Second Italian Edition. With a Preface by W. STANLEY JEVONS, F.R.S. Crown 8vo. 4s. 6d.

DYER AND VINES — THE STRUCTURE OF PLANTS. By Professor THISELTON DYER, F.R.S., assisted by SYDNEY VINES, B.Sc., Fellow and Lecturer of Christ's College, Cambridge. With numerous Illustrations. *[In preparation.]*

FAWCETT — A MANUAL OF POLITICAL ECONOMY. By Right Hon. HENRY FAWCETT, M.P. New Edition, revised and enlarged. Crown 8vo. 12s.

FLEISCHER — A SYSTEM OF VOLUMETRIC ANALYSIS. Translated, with Notes and Additions, from the second German Edition, by M. M. PATTISON MUIR, F.R.S.E. With Illustrations. Crown 8vo. 7s. 6d.

FLOWER (W. H.) — AN INTRODUCTION TO THE OSTEOLOGY OF THE MAMMALIA. Being the substance of the Course of Lectures delivered at the Royal College of Surgeons of England in 1870. By Professor W. H. FLOWER, F.R.S., F.R.C.S. With numerous Illustrations. New Edition, enlarged. Crown 8vo. 10s. 6d.

MANUALS FOR STUDENTS *Continued--*

FOSTER and LANGLEY—*A COURSE OF ELEMENTARY PRACTICAL PHYSIOLOGY*. By MICHAEL FOSTER, M.D., F.R.S., and J. N. LANGLEY, B.A. Fourth Edition. Crown 8vo. 6s.

HOOKE—*THE STUDENT'S FLORA OF THE BRITISH ISLANDS*. By Sir J. D. HOOKE, K.C.S.I., C.B., F.R.S., M.D., D.C.L. New Edition, revised. Globe 8vo. 10s. 6d.

HUXLEY—*PHYSIOGRAPHY*. An Introduction to the Study of Nature. By Professor HUXLEY, F.R.S. With numerous Illustrations, and Coloured Plates. Third and Cheaper Edition. Crown 8vo. 6s.

HUXLEY and MARTIN—*A COURSE OF PRACTICAL INSTRUCTION IN ELEMENTARY BIOLOGY*. By Professor HUXLEY, F.R.S., assisted by H. N. MARTIN, M.B., D.Sc. New Edition, revised. Crown 8vo. 6s.

JEVONS—*THE PRINCIPLES OF SCIENCE*. A Treatise on Logic and Scientific Method. By Professor W. STANLEY JEVONS, LL.D., M.A., F.R.S. New and Revised Edition. Crown 8vo. 12s. 6d.

STUDIES IN DEDUCTIVE LOGIC. By Professor W. STANLEY JEVONS, LL.D., M.A., F.R.S. Crown 8vo. 6s.

KENNEDY — *MECHANICS OF MACHINERY*. By A. B. W. KENNEDY, M. Inst. C.E., Professor of Engineering and Mechanical Technology in University College, London. With Illustrations. Crown 8vo. [In the press.]

KIEPERT—*A MANUAL OF ANCIENT GEOGRAPHY*. From the German of Dr. H. KIEPERT. Crown 8vo. 5s.

OLIVER (Professor)—*FIRST BOOK OF INDIAN BOTANY*. By Professor DANIEL OLIVER, F.R.S., F.L.S., Keeper of the Herbarium and Library of the Royal Gardens, Kew. With numerous Illustrations. Extra fcap. 8vo. 6s. 6d.

PARKER—*A COURSE OF INSTRUCTION IN ZOOTOMY (VERTEBRATA)*. By T. JEFFREY PARKER, B.Sc. Lond., Professor of Biology in the University of Otago. With Illustrations. Crown 8vo. [In the press.]

MANUALS FOR STUDENTS *Continued—*

PARKER and BETTANY—THE MORPHOLOGY OF THE SKULL. By Professor PARKER and G. T. BETTANY. Illustrated. Crown 8vo. 10s. 6d.

SMITH, ADAM—THE WEALTH OF NATIONS. By ADAM SMITH. Edited with Notes, &c., for the Use of Students, by W. STANLEY JEVONS, LL.D., M.A., F.R.S. Crown 8vo.

TAIT—AN ELEMENTARY TREATISE ON HEAT. By Professor TAIT, F.R.S.E. Illustrated. [*In the press.*]

THOMSON—ZOOLOGY. By Sir C. WYVILLE THOMSON, F.R.S. Illustrated. [*In the press.*]

TYLOR—ANTHROPOLOGY. An Introduction to the Study of Man and Civilisation. By E. B. TYLOR, D.C.L., F.R.S. With numerous Illustrations. Crown 8vo. 7s. 6d.

Other volumes of these Manuals will follow.

SCIENTIFIC TEXT-BOOKS.

BALFOUR—A TREATISE ON COMPARATIVE EMBRYOLOGY. By F. M. BALFOUR, M.A., F.R.S., Fellow and Lecturer of Trinity College, Cambridge. With Illustrations. In 2 vols. 8vo. 18s. each.

BALL (R. S., A.M.)—EXPERIMENTAL MECHANICS. A Course of Lectures delivered at the Royal College of Science for Ireland. By R. S. BALL, A.M., Professor of Applied Mathematics and Mechanics in the Royal College of Science for Ireland. Cheaper Issue. Royal 8vo. 10s. 6d.

BRUNTON—A TREATISE ON MATERIA MEDICA. By T. LAUDER BRUNTON, M.D., F.R.S. 8vo.

[*In preparation.*]

CLAUSIUS—MECHANICAL THEORY OF HEAT. By R. CLAUSIUS. Translated by WALTER R. BROWNE, M.A., late Fellow of Trinity College, Cambridge. Crown 8vo. 10s. 6d.

COTTERILL—A TREATISE ON APPLIED MECHANICS. By JAMES COTTERILL, M.A., F.R.S., Professor of Applied Mechanics at the Royal Naval College, Greenwich. With Illustrations. 8vo. [*In preparation.*]

SCIENTIFIC TEXT-BOOKS *Continued—*

DANIELL—*A TREATISE ON PHYSICS FOR MEDICAL STUDENTS.* By ALFRED DANIELL. With Illustrations. 8vo. [In preparation.]

FOSTER—*A TEXT-BOOK OF PHYSIOLOGY.* By MICHAEL FOSTER, M.D., F.R.S. With Illustrations. Third Edition, revised. 8vo. 21s.

GAMGEE—*A TEXT-BOOK OF THE PHYSIOLOGICAL CHEMISTRY OF THE ANIMAL BODY.* Including an account of the chemical changes occurring in Disease. By A. GAMGEE, M.D., F.R.S., Professor of Physiology in the Victoria University and Owens College, Manchester. 2 Vols. 8vo. With Illustrations. Vol. I. 18s.

[Vol. II. in the press.]

GEGENBAUR—*ELEMENTS OF COMPARATIVE ANATOMY.* By Professor CARL GEGENBAUR. A Translation by F. JEFFREY BELL, B.A. Revised with Preface by Professor E. RAY LANKESTER, F.R.S. With numerous Illustrations. 8vo. 21s.

GEIKIE—*TEXT-BOOK OF GEOLOGY.* By ARCHIBALD GEIKIE, F.R.S., Professor of Geology in the University of Edinburgh. With numerous Illustrations. 8vo. [In the press.]

GRAY—*STRUCTURAL BOTANY, OR ORGANOGRAPHY ON THE BASIS OF MORPHOLOGY.* To which are added the principles of Taxonomy and Phytography, and a Glossary of Botanical Terms. By Professor ASA GRAY, LL.D. 8vo. 10s. 6d.

NEWCOMB—*POPULAR ASTRONOMY.* By S. NEWCOMB, LL.D., Professor U.S. Naval Observatory. With 112 Illustrations and 5 Maps of the Stars. 8vo. 18s.

"It is unlike anything else of its kind, and will be of more use in circulating a knowledge of astronomy than nine-tenths of the books which have appeared on the subject of late years."—*Saturday Review.*

REULEAUX — *THE KINEMATICS OF MACHINERY.* Outlines of a Theory of Machines. By Professor F. REULEAUX. Translated and Edited by Professor A. B. W. KENNEDY, C.E. With 450 Illustrations. Medium 8vo. 21s.

SCIENTIFIC TEXT-BOOKS.—*Continued.*

ROSCOE and SCHORLEMMER—*INORGANIC CHEMISTRY*. A Complete Treatise on Inorganic Chemistry. By Professor H. E. ROSCOE, F.R.S., and Professor C. SCHORLEMMER, F.R.S. With numerous Illustrations. Medium 8vo. Vol. I.—The Non-Metallic Elements. 21s. Vol. II. Part I.—Metals. 18s. Vol. II. Part II.—Metals. 18s.

Vol. III.—*ORGANIC CHEMISTRY*. Part. I.—*THE CHEMISTRY OF THE HYDROCARBONS*; and their Derivatives or *ORGANIC CHEMISTRY*. By Profs. ROSCOE and SCHORLEMMER. With numerous Illustrations. Medium 8vo. 21s.

SCHORLEMMER—*A MANUAL OF THE CHEMISTRY OF THE CARBON COMPOUNDS, OR ORGANIC CHEMISTRY*. By C. SCHORLEMMER, F.R.S., Professor of Chemistry, the Victoria University, the Owens College, Manchester. With Illustrations. 8vo. 14s.

THORPE and RÜCKER—*A TREATISE ON CHEMICAL PHYSICS*. By Professor THORPE, F.R.S., and Professor RÜCKER, of the Yorkshire College of Science. Illustrated. 8vo. [In preparation.]

NATURE SERIES.

THE SPECTROSCOPE AND ITS APPLICATIONS. By J. NORMAN LOCKYER, F.R.S. With Coloured Plate and numerous Illustrations. Second Edition. Crown 8vo. 3s. 6d.

THE ORIGIN AND METAMORPHOSES OF INSECTS. By Sir JOHN LUBBOCK, M.P., F.R.S., D.C.L. With numerous Illustrations. Second Edition. Crown 8vo. 3s. 6d.

THE TRANSIT OF VENUS. By G. FORBES, M.A., Professor of Natural Philosophy in the Andersonian University, Glasgow. Illustrated. Crown 8vo. 3s. 6d.

THE COMMON FROG. By ST. GEORGE MIVART, F.R.S., Lecturer in Comparative Anatomy at St. Mary's Hospital. With numerous Illustrations. Crown 8vo. 3s. 6d.

POLARISATION OF LIGHT. By W. SPOTTISWOODE, P.R.S., With many Illustrations. Second Edition. Crown 8vo. 3s. 6d.

ON BRITISH WILD FLOWERS CONSIDERED IN RELATION TO INSECTS. By Sir JOHN LUBBOCK, M.P., F.R.S. With numerous Illustrations. Second Edition. Crown 8vo. 4s. 6d.

NATURE SERIES *Continued—***THE SCIENCE OF WEIGHING AND MEASURING, AND THE STANDARDS OF MEASURE AND WEIGHT.**

By H. W. CHISHOLM, Warden of the Standards. With numerous Illustrations. Crown 8vo. 4s. 6d.

HOW TO DRAW A STRAIGHT LINE: a Lecture on Linkages. By A. B. KEMPE. With Illustrations. Crown 8vo. 1s. 6d.

LIGHT: a Series of Simple, Entertaining, and Inexpensive Experiments in the Phenomena of Light, for the Use of Students of every age. By A. M. MAYER and C. BARNARD. Crown 8vo, with numerous Illustrations. 2s. 6d.

SOUND. a Series of Simple, Entertaining, and Inexpensive Experiments in the Phenomena of Sound, for the use of Students of every age. By A. M. MAYER, Professor of Physics in the Stevens Institute of Technology, &c. With numerous Illustrations. Crown 8vo. 3s. 6d.

SEEING AND THINKING. By Professor W. K. CLIFFORD, F.R.S. With Diagrams. Crown 8vo. 3s. 6d.

DEGENERATION. By Prof. E. RAY LANKESTER, F.R.S. With Illustrations. Crown 8vo. 2s. 6d.

FASHION IN DEFORMITY, as Illustrated in the Customs of Barbarous and Civilised Races. By Prof. FLOWER. With Illustrations. Crown 8vo. 2s. 6d.

Other volumes to follow.

EASY LESSONS IN SCIENCE.

Edited by Prof. W. F. BARRETT. Extra fcap. 8vo.

HEAT. By Miss C. A. MARTINRAU. Illustrated. 2s. 6d.

LIGHT. By Mrs. AWDRY. Illustrated. 2s. 6d.

ELECTRICITY. By Prof. W. F. BARRETT. [*In preparation.*]

SCIENCE LECTURES AT SOUTH KENSINGTON.

VOL. I. Containing Lectures by Capt. ABNEY, Prof. STOKES, Prof. KENNEDY, F. G. BRAMWELL, Prof. G. FORBES, H. C. SORBY, J. T. BOTTOMLEY, S. H. VINES, and Prof. CAREY FOSTER. Crown 8vo. 6s.

VOL. II. Containing Lectures by W. SPOTTISWOODE, P.R.S., Prof. FORBES, Prof. FIGOT, Prof. BAERETT, Dr. BURDON-SANDERSON, Dr. LAUDER BRUNTON, F.R.S., Prof. ROSCOE, and others. Crown 8vo. 6s.

MANCHESTER SCIENCE LECTURES FOR THE PEOPLE.

Eighth Series, 1876-7. Crown 8vo. Illustrated. 6d. each.

WHAT THE EARTH IS COMPOSED OF. By Professor ROSCOE, F.R.S.

THE SUCCESSION OF LIFE ON THE EARTH. By Professor WILLIAMSON, F.R.S.

WHY THE EARTH'S CHEMISTRY IS AS IT IS. By J. N. LOCKYER, F.R.S.

Also complete in One Volume. Crown 8vo. cloth. 2s.

ALEXANDER—ELEMENTARY APPLIED MECHANICS; being the simple and more practical Cases of Stress and Strain wrought out individually from first principles by means of Elementary Mathematics. By T. ALEXANDER, C.E., Professor of Civil Engineering in the Imperial College of Engineering, Tokei, Japan. Crown 8vo. 4s. 6d.

BETTANY.—FIRST LESSONS IN PRACTICAL BOTANY. By G. T. BETTANY, M.A., F.L.S., Lecturer in Botany at Guy's Hospital Medical School. 18mo. 1s.

BLANFORD—THE RUDIMENTS OF PHYSICAL GEOGRAPHY FOR THE USE OF INDIAN SCHOOLS; with a Glossary of Technical Terms employed. By H. F. BLANFORD, F.R.S. New Edition, with Illustrations. Globe 8vo. 2s. 6d.

EVERETT—UNITS AND PHYSICAL CONSTANTS. By J. D. EVERETT, F.R.S., Professor of Natural Philosophy, Queen's College, Belfast. Extra fcap. 8vo. 4s. 6d.

GEIKIE.—OUTLINES OF FIELD GEOLOGY. By Prof. GEIKIE, F.R.S. With Illustrations. Extra fcap. 8vo. 3s. 6d.

LANDAUER—BLOWPIPE ANALYSIS. By J. LANDAUER. Authorised English Edition by J. TAYLOR and W. E. KAY, of Owens College, Manchester. Extra fcap. 8vo. 4s. 6d.

MUIR—*PRACTICAL CHEMISTRY FOR MEDICAL STUDENTS*. Specially arranged for the first M.B. Course. By M. M. PATTISON MUIR, F.R.S.E. Fcap. 8vo. 1s. 6d.

M'KENDRICK—*OUTLINES OF PHYSIOLOGY IN ITS RELATIONS TO MAN*. By J. G. M'KENDRICK, M.D., F.R.S.E. With Illustrations. Crown 8vo. 12s. 6d.

MIALL—*STUDIES IN COMPARATIVE ANATOMY*.

No. I.—The Skull of the Crocodile: a Manual for Students. By L. C. MIALL, Professor of Biology in the Yorkshire College and Curator of the Leeds Museum. 8vo. 2s. 6d.

No. II.—Anatomy of the Indian Elephant. By L. C. MIALL and F. GREENWOOD. With Illustrations. 8vo. 5s.

SHANN—*AN ELEMENTARY TREATISE ON HEAT, IN RELATION TO STEAM AND THE STEAM-ENGINE*. By G. SHANN, M.A. With Illustrations. Crown 8vo. 4s. 6d.

TANNER—*FIRST PRINCIPLES OF AGRICULTURE*. By H. TANNER, F.C.S., Professor of Agricultural Science, University College, Aberystwith, &c. 18mo. 1s.

THE PRINCIPLES OF AGRICULTURE: a Series of Reading-Books for use in Elementary Schools. Prepared by Professor TANNER. Extra fcap. 8vo.

I. The Alphabet of the Principles of Agriculture. 6d.

II. Further steps in the Principles of Agriculture. 1s.

[Just ready.]

WRIGHT—*METALS AND THEIR CHIEF INDUSTRIAL APPLICATIONS*. By C. ALDER WRIGHT, D.Sc., &c. Lecturer on Chemistry in St. Mary's Hospital Medical School. Extra fcap. 8vo. 3s. 6d.

HISTORY.

ARNOLD—*THE ROMAN SYSTEM OF PROVINCIAL ADMINISTRATION TO THE ACCESSION OF CONSTANTINE THE GREAT*. By W. T. ARNOLD, B.A. Crown 8vo. 6s.

"Ought to prove a valuable handbook to the student of Roman history."—GUARDIAN.

BEESELY—STORIES FROM THE HISTORY OF ROME.

By Mrs. BEESELY. Fcap. 8vo. 2s. 6d.

"The attempt appears to us in every way successful. The stories are interesting in themselves, and are told with perfect simplicity and good feeling."—DAILY NEWS.

BROOK—FRENCH HISTORY FOR ENGLISH CHILDREN.

By SARAH BROOK. With Coloured Maps. Crown 8vo. 6s.

FREEMAN (EDWARD A.)—OLD-ENGLISH HISTORY.

By EDWARD A. FREEMAN, D.C.L., LL.D., late Fellow of Trinity College, Oxford. With Five Coloured Maps. New Edition. Extra fcap. 8vo. half-bound. 6s.

GREEN—A SHORT HISTORY OF THE ENGLISH PEOPLE. By JOHN RICHARD GREEN, M.A., LL.D. With Coloured Maps, Genealogical Tables, and Chronological Annals. Crown 8vo. 8s. 6d. Seventy-eighth Thousand.

"Stands alone as the one general history of the country, for the sake of which all others, if young and old are wise, will be speedily and surely set aside."—ACADEMY.

READINGS FROM ENGLISH HISTORY. Selected and Edited by JOHN RICHARD GREEN, M.A., LL.D., Honorary Fellow of Jesus College, Oxford. Three Parts. Globe 8vo. 1s. 6d. each. I. Hengist to Cressy. II. Cressy to Cromwell. III. Cromwell to Balaklava.

GUEST—LECTURES ON THE HISTORY OF ENGLAND.

By M. J. GUEST. With Maps. Crown 8vo. 6s.

"It is not too much to assert that this is one of the very best class books of English History for young students ever published."—SCOTSMAN.

HISTORICAL COURSE FOR SCHOOLS—Edited by EDWARD A. FREEMAN, D.C.L., late Fellow of Trinity College, Oxford.

I. GENERAL SKETCH OF EUROPEAN HISTORY.

By EDWARD A. FREEMAN, D.C.L. New Edition, revised and enlarged, with Chronological Table, Maps, and Index. 18mo. cloth. 3s. 6d.

"It supplies the great want of a good foundation for historical teaching. The scheme is an excellent one, and this instalment has been executed in a way that promises much for the volumes that are yet to appear."—EDUCATIONAL TIMES.

II. HISTORY OF ENGLAND. By EDITH THOMPSON. New Edition, revised and enlarged, with Coloured Maps. 18mo. 2s. 6d.

III. HISTORY OF SCOTLAND. By MARGARET MACARTHUR. New Edition. 18mo. 2s.

"An excellent summary, unimpeachable as to facts, and putting them in the clearest and most impartial light attainable."—GUARDIAN.

HISTORICAL COURSE FOR SCHOOLS *Continued—*

IV. HISTORY OF ITALY. By the Rev. W. HUNT, M.A.
18mo. 3s.

"It possesses the same solid merit as its predecessors . . . the same scrupulous care about fidelity in details. . . . It is distinguished, too, by information on art, architecture, and social politics, in which the writer's grasp is seen by the firmness and clearness of his touch"—**EDUCATIONAL TIMES.**

V. HISTORY OF GERMANY. By J. SIME, M.A.
18mo. 3s.

"A remarkably clear and impressive history of Germany. Its great events are wisely kept as central figures, and the smaller events are carefully kept, not only subordinate and subservient, but most skilfully woven into the texture of the historical tapestry presented to the eye."—**STANDARD.**

VI. HISTORY OF AMERICA. By JOHN A. DOYLE.
With Maps. 18mo. 4s. 6d.

"Mr. Doyle has performed his task with admirable care, fulness, and clearness, and for the first time we have for schools an accurate and interesting history of America, from the earliest to the present time."—**STANDARD.**

EUROPEAN COLONIES. By E. J. PAYNE, M.A. With
Maps. 18mo. 4s. 6d.

"We have seldom met with an historian capable of forming a more comprehensive, far-seeing, and unprejudiced estimate of events and peoples, and we can commend this little work as one certain to prove of the highest interest to all thoughtful readers."—**TIMES.**

FRANCE. By CHARLOTTE M. YONGE. With Maps. 18mo.
3s. 6d.

"An admirable text-book for the lecture room."—**ACADEMY.**

GREECE. By EDWARD A. FREEMAN, D.C.L.

[In preparation.]

ROME. By EDWARD A. FREEMAN, D.C.L. *[In the press.]*

HISTORY PRIMERS—Edited by JOHN RICHARD GREEN.

Author of "A Short History of the English People."

ROME. By the Rev. M. CREIGHTON, M.A., late Fellow
and Tutor of Merton College, Oxford. With Eleven Maps.
18mo. 1s.

"The author has been curiously successful in telling in an intelligent way the story of Rome from first to last."—**SCHOOL BOARD CHRONICLE.**

GREECE. By C. A. FYFFE, M.A., Fellow and late Tutor
of University College, Oxford. With Five Maps. 18mo. 1s.

"We give our unqualified praise to this little manual."—**SCHOOL-MASTER.**

EUROPEAN HISTORY. By E. A. FREEMAN, D.C.L.,
LL.D. With Maps. 18mo. 1s.

"The work is always clear, and forms a luminous key to European history."—**SCHOOL BOARD CHRONICLE.**

HISTORY PRIMERS *Continued—*

GREEK ANTIQUITIES. By the Rev. J. P. MAHAFFY, M.A. Illustrated. 18mo 1s.

"All that is necessary for the scholar to know is told so compactly yet so fully, and in a style so interesting, that it is impossible for even the duller boy to look on this little work in the same light as he regards his other school books."—SCHOOLMASTER.

CLASSICAL GEOGRAPHY. By H. F. TOZER, M.A. 18mo. 1s.

"Another valuable aid to the study of the ancient world. . . . It contains an enormous quantity of information packed into a small space, and at the same time communicated in a very readable shape."—JOHN BULL.

GEOGRAPHY. By GEORGE GROVE, D.C.L. With Maps. 18mo. 1s.

"A model of what such a work should be we know of no short treatise better suited to infuse life and spirit into the dull lists of proper names of which our ordinary class-books so often almost exclusively consist."—TIMES.

ROMAN ANTIQUITIES. By Professor WILKINS. Illustrated. 18mo. 1s.

"A little book that throws a blaze of light on Roman History, and is, moreover, intensely interesting."—*School Board Chronicle*.

FRANCE. By CHARLOTTE M. VONGE. 18mo. 1s.

"May be considered a wonderfully successful piece of work. . . . Its general merit as a vigorous and clear sketch, giving in a small space a vivid idea of the history of France, remains undeniable."—SATURDAY REVIEW.

In preparation :—

ENGLAND. By J. R. GREEN, M.A.

LETHBRIDGE—A SHORT MANUAL OF THE HISTORY OF INDIA. With an Account of INDIA AS IT IS. The Soil, Climate, and Productions; the People, their Races, Religions, Public Works, and Industries; the Civil Services, and System of Administration. By ROPER LETHBRIDGE, M.A., C.I.E., Press Commissioner with the Government of India, late Scholar of Exeter College, Oxford, formerly Principal of Kishnaghur College, Bengal, Fellow and sometime Examiner of the Calcutta University. With Maps. Crown 8vo. 5s.

MICHELET—A SUMMARY OF MODERN HISTORY.

Translated from the French of M. MICHELET, and continued to the Present Time, by M. C. M. SIMPSON. Globe 8vo. 4s. 6d.

OTTÉ—SCANDINAVIAN HISTORY. By E. C. OTTÉ. With Maps. Globe 8vo. 6s.

PAULI—PICTURES OF OLD ENGLAND. By Dr. R. PAULI. Translated with the sanction of the Author by E. C. OTTÉ. Cheaper Edition. Crown 8vo. 6s.

- RAMSAY**—*A SCHOOL HISTORY OF ROME*. By G. G. RAMSAY, M.A., Professor of Humanity in the University of Glasgow. With Maps. Crown 8vo. [In preparation.]
- TAIT**—*ANALYSIS OF ENGLISH HISTORY*, based on Green's "Short History of the English People." By C. W. A. TAIT, M.A., Assistant-Master, Clifton College. Crown 8vo. 3s. 6d.
- WHEELER**—*A SHORT HISTORY OF INDIA AND OF THE FRONTIER STATES OF AFGHANISTAN, NEPAUL, AND BURMA*. By J. TALBOYS WHEELER. With Maps. Crown 8vo. 12s.
 "It is the best book of the kind we have ever seen, and we recommend it to a place in every school library."—EDUCATIONAL TIMES.
- YONGE (CHARLOTTE M.)**—*A PARALLEL HISTORY OF FRANCE AND ENGLAND*: consisting of Outlines and Dates. By CHARLOTTE M. YONGE, Author of "The Heir of Redclyffe," &c., &c. Oblong 4to. 3s. 6d.
- CAMEOS FROM ENGLISH HISTORY*. — FROM ROLLO TO EDWARD II. By the Author of "The Heir of Redclyffe." Extra fcap. 8vo. New Edition. 5s.
- A SECOND SERIES OF CAMEOS FROM ENGLISH HISTORY—THE WARS IN FRANCE*. New Edition. Extra fcap. 8vo. 5s.
- A THIRD SERIES OF CAMEOS FROM ENGLISH HISTORY—THE WARS OF THE ROSES*. New Edition. Extra fcap. 8vo. 5s.
- A FOURTH SERIES—REFORMATION TIMES*. Extra Fcap. 8vo. 5s.
- EUROPEAN HISTORY*. Narrated in a Series of Historical Selections from the Best Authorities. Edited and arranged by E. M. SEWELL and C. M. YONGE. First Series, 1003—1154. Third Edition. Crown 8vo. 6s. Second Series, 1088—1228. New Edition. Crown 8vo. 6s.

DIVINITY.

* * For other Works by these Authors, see THEOLOGICAL CATALOGUE.

- ABBOTT (REV. E. A.)**—*BIBLE LESSONS*. By the Rev. E. A. ABBOTT, D.D., Head Master of the City of London School. New Edition. Crown 8vo. 4s. 6d.

"Wise, suggestive, and really profound initiation into religious thought."
 —GUARDIAN.

ARNOLD—*A BIBLE-READING FOR SCHOOLS*—THE GREAT PROPHECY OF ISRAEL'S RESTORATION (Isaiah, Chapters xl.—lxvi.). Arranged and Edited for Young Learners. By MATTHEW ARNOLD, D.C.L., formerly Professor of Poetry in the University of Oxford, and Fellow of Oriel. New Edition. 18mo. cloth. 1s.

ISAIAH XL.—LXVI. With the Shorter Prophecies allied to it. Arranged and Edited, with Notes, by MATTHEW ARNOLD. Crown 8vo. 5s.

CHEETHAM—*A CHURCH HISTORY OF THE FIRST SIX CENTURIES.* By the Ven. ARCHDEACON CHEETHAM. Crown 8vo. *[In the press.]*

CURTEIS—*MANUAL OF THE THIRTY-NINE ARTICLES.* By G. H. CURTEIS, M.A., Principal of the Lichfield Theological College. *[In preparation.]*

GASKOIN—*THE CHILDREN'S TREASURY OF BIBLE STORIES.* By Mrs. HERMAN GASKOIN. Edited with Preface by the Rev. G. F. Maclear, D.D. PART I.—OLD TESTAMENT HISTORY. 18mo 1s. PART II.—NEW TESTAMENT. 18mo. 1s. PART III.—THE APOSTLES : ST. JAMES THE GREAT, ST. PAUL, AND ST. JOHN THE DIVINE. 18mo. 1s.

GOLDEN TREASURY PSALTER—Students' Edition. Being an Edition of "The Psalms Chronologically Arranged, by Four Friends," with briefer Notes. 18mo. 3s. 6d.

GREEK TESTAMENT. Edited, with Introduction and Appendices, by CANON WESTCOTT and Dr. F. J. A. HORT. Two Vols. Crown 8vo. 10s. 6d. each.

Vol. I. The Text.

Vol. II. Introduction and Appendix.

HARDWICK—Works by Archdeacon HARDWICK.

A HISTORY OF THE CHRISTIAN CHURCH. Middle Age. From Gregory the Great to the Excommunication of Luther. Edited by WILLIAM STUBBS, M.A., Regius Professor of Modern History in the University of Oxford. With Four Maps. Fourth Edition. Crown 8vo. 10s. 6d.

A HISTORY OF THE CHRISTIAN CHURCH DURING THE REFORMATION. Fourth Edition. Edited by Professor STUBBS. Crown 8vo. 10s. 6d.

KING—*CHURCH HISTORY OF IRELAND.* By the Rev. ROBERT KING. New Edition. 2 vols. Crown 8vo.

[*In preparation.*]

MACLEAR—Works by the Rev. G. F. MACLEAR, D.D., Warden of St. Augustine's College, Canterbury.

A CLASS-BOOK OF OLD TESTAMENT HISTORY. New Edition, with Four Maps. 18mo. 4s. 6d.

A CLASS-BOOK OF NEW TESTAMENT HISTORY, including the Connection of the Old and New Testament. With Four Maps. New Edition. 18mo. 5s. 6d.

A SHILLING BOOK OF OLD TESTAMENT HISTORY, for National and Elementary Schools. With Map. 18mo. cloth. New Edition.

A SHILLING BOOK OF NEW TESTAMENT HISTORY, for National and Elementary Schools. With Map. 18mo. cloth. New Edition.

These works have been carefully abridged from the author's larger manuals.

CLASS-BOOK OF THE CATECHISM OF THE CHURCH OF ENGLAND. New Ed. 18mo. cloth. 1s. 6d.

A FIRST CLASS-BOOK OF THE CATECHISM OF THE CHURCH OF ENGLAND, with Scripture Proofs, for Junior Classes and Schools. New Edition. 18mo. 6d.

A MANUAL OF INSTRUCTION FOR CONFIRMATION AND FIRST COMMUNION. WITH PRAYERS AND DEVOTIONS. 32mo. cloth extra, red edges. 2s.

MAURICE—*THE LORD'S PRAYER, THE CREED, AND THE COMMANDMENTS.* Manual for Parents and Schoolmasters. To which is added the Order of the Scriptures. By the Rev. F. DENISON MAURICE, M.A. 18mo. cloth, limp. 1s.

PROCTER—*A HISTORY OF THE BOOK OF COMMON PRAYER,* with a Rationale of its Offices. By FRANCIS PROCTER, M.A. Fourteenth Edition, revised and enlarged. Crown 8vo. 10s. 6d.

PROCTER AND MACLEAR—AN ELEMENTARY INTRODUCTION TO THE BOOK OF COMMON PRAYER.

Re-arranged and supplemented by an Explanation of the Morning and Evening Prayer and the Litany. By the Rev. F. PROCTER and the Rev. Dr. MACLEAR. New and Enlarged Edition, containing the Communion Service and the Confirmation and Baptismal Offices. 18mo. 2s. 6d.

PSALMS OF DAVID CHRONOLOGICALLY ARRANGED.

By Four Friends. An Amended Version, with Historical Introduction and Explanatory Notes. Second and Cheaper Edition, with Additions and Corrections. Cr. 8vo. 8s. 6d.

RAMSAY—THE CATECHISER'S MANUAL; or, the Church

Catechism Illustrated and Explained, for the Use of Clergymen, Schoolmasters, and Teachers. By the Rev. ARTHUR RAMSAY, M.A. New Edition. 18mo. 1s. 6d.

SIMPSON—AN EPITOME OF THE HISTORY OF THE CHRISTIAN CHURCH.

By WILLIAM SIMPSON, M.A. New Edition. Fcap. 8vo. 3s. 6d.

TRENCH—By R. C. TRENCH, D.D., Archbishop of Dublin.

LECTURES ON MEDIEVAL CHURCH HISTORY. Being the substance of Lectures delivered at Queen's College, London. Second Edition, revised. 8vo. 12s.

SYNONYMS OF THE NEW TESTAMENT. Ninth Edition, revised. 8vo. 12s.

WESTCOTT—Works by BROOKE FOSS WESTCOTT, D.D., Canon of Peterborough.

A GENERAL SURVEY OF THE HISTORY OF THE CANON OF THE NEW TESTAMENT DURING THE FIRST FOUR CENTURIES. Fourth Edition. With Preface on "Supernatural Religion." Crown 8vo. 10s. 6d.

INTRODUCTION TO THE STUDY OF THE FOUR GOSPELS. Fifth Edition. Crown 8vo. 10s. 6d.

THE BIBLE IN THE CHURCH. A Popular Account of the Collection and Reception of the Holy Scriptures in the Christian Churches. New Edition. 18mo. cloth. 4s. 6d.

WESTCOTT—HORT—THE NEW TESTAMENT IN THE ORIGINAL GREEK. The Text Revised by B. F. WESTCOTT, D.D., Regius Professor of Divinity, Canon of Peterborough, and F. J. A. HORT, D.D., Hulsean Professor of Divinity; Fellow of Emmanuel College, Cambridge; late Fellows of Trinity College, Cambridge. 2 vols. Crown 8vo. 10s. 6d. each. Vol. I. Text.

Vol. II. Introduction and Appendix.

WILSON—THE BIBLE STUDENT'S GUIDE to the more Correct Understanding of the English Translation of the Old Testament, by reference to the original Hebrew. By WILLIAM WILSON, D.D., Canon of Winchester, late Fellow of Queen's College, Oxford. Second Edition, carefully revised. 4to. cloth. 25s.

YONGE (CHARLOTTE M.)—SCRIPTURE READINGS FOR SCHOOLS AND FAMILIES. By CHARLOTTE M. YONGE, Author of "The Heir of Redclyffe." In Five Vols.

FIRST SERIES. GENESIS TO DEUTERONOMY. Extra fcap. 8vo. 1s. 6d. With Comments, 3s. 6d.

SECOND SERIES. From JOSHUA to SOLOMON. Extra fcap. 8vo. 1s. 6d. With Comments, 3s. 6d.

THIRD SERIES. The KINGS and the PROPHETS. Extra fcap. 8vo. 1s. 6d. With Comments, 3s. 6d.

FOURTH SERIES. The GOSPEL TIMES. 1s. 6d. With Comments, extra fcap. 8vo., 3s. 6d.

FIFTH SERIES. APOSTOLIC TIMES. Extra fcap. 8vo. 1s. 6d. With Comments, 3s. 6d.

MODERN LANGUAGES, ART, ETC.

ABBOTT—A SHAKESPEARIAN GRAMMAR. An Attempt to illustrate some of the Differences between Elizabethan and Modern English. By the Rev. E. A. ABBOTT, D.D., Head Master of the City of London School. New Edition. Extra fcap. 8vo. 6s.

ANDERSON—LINEAR PERSPECTIVE, AND MODEL DRAWING. A School and Art Class Manual, with Questions and Exercises for Examination, and Examples of Examination Papers. By LAURENCE ANDERSON. With Illustrations. Royal 8vo. 2s.

BARKER—*FIRST LESSONS IN THE PRINCIPLES OF COOKING.* By LADY BARKER. New Edition. 18mo. 1s.

BOWEN—*FIRST LESSONS IN FRENCH.* By H. COURTHOPE BOWEN, M.A. Extra fcap. 8vo. 1s.

BEAUMARCHAIS—*LE BARBIER DE SEVILLE.* Edited, with Introduction and Notes, by L. P. BLOUET, Assistant Master in St. Paul's School. Fcap. 8vo. 3s. 6d.

BERNERS—*FIRST LESSONS ON HEALTH.* By J. BERNERS. New Edition. 18mo. 1s.

BLAKISTON—*THE TEACHER.* Hints on School Management. A Handbook for Managers, Teachers' Assistants, and Pupil Teachers. By J. R. BLAKISTON, M.A. Crown 8vo. 2s. 6d. (Recommended by the London, Birmingham, and Leicester School Boards.)

"Into a comparatively small book he has crowded a great deal of exceedingly useful and sound advice. It is a plain, common-sense book, full of hints to the teacher on the management of his school and his children.—SCHOOL BOARD CHRONICLE.

BREYMANN—Works by HERMANN BREYMANN, Ph.D., Professor of Philology in the University of Munich.

A FRENCH GRAMMAR BASED ON PHILOLOGICAL PRINCIPLES. Second Edition. Extra fcap. 8vo. 4s. 6d.

FIRST FRENCH EXERCISE BOOK. Extra fcap. 8vo. 4s. 6d.

SECOND FRENCH EXERCISE BOOK. Extra fcap. 8vo. 2s. 6d.

BROOKE—*MILTON.* By STOPFORD BROOKE, M.A. Fcap. 8vo. 1s. 6d. (Green's Classical Writers.)

BUTLER—*HUDIBRAS.* Part I. Edited, with Introduction and Notes, by ALFRED MILNES, B.A. Crown 8vo. 3s. 6d.

CAMBRIDGE UNIVERSITY ALMANACK AND REGISTER FOR 1881, being the Twenty-ninth Year of Publication. Crown 8vo. 3s. 6d.

CALDERWOOD—*HANDBOOK OF MORAL PHILOSOPHY.* By the Rev. HENRY CALDERWOOD, LL.D., Professor of Moral Philosophy, University of Edinburgh. Sixth Edition. Crown 8vo. 6s.

COLLIER—*A PRIMER OF ART.* With Illustrations. By JOHN COLLIER. 18mo. 1s. [Immediately.]

DANTE—*THE PURGATORY OF DANTE*. Edited, with Translation and Notes, by A. J. BUTLER, M.A., late Fellow of Trinity College, Cambridge. Crown 8vo. 12s. 6d.

DELAMOTTE—*A BEGINNER'S DRAWING BOOK*. By P. H. DELAMOTTE, F.S.A. Progressively arranged. New Edition improved. Crown 8vo. 3s. 6d.

FASNACHT—*THE ORGANIC METHOD OF STUDYING LANGUAGES*. By G. EUGÈNE FASNACHT, Author of "Macmillan's Progressive French Course," Editor "Macmillan's Foreign School Classics," &c. Extra fcap. 8vo.

I. French.

[Immediately.]

FAWCETT—*TALES IN POLITICAL ECONOMY*. By MILLICENT GARRETT FAWCETT. Globe 8vo. 3s.

FEARON—*SCHOOL INSPECTION*. By D. R. FEARON, M.A., Assistant Commissioner of Endowed Schools. Third Edition. Crown 8vo. 2s. 6d.

FREDERICK—*HINTS TO HOUSEWIVES ON SEVERAL POINTS, PARTICULARLY ON THE PREPARATION OF ECONOMICAL AND TASTEFUL DISHES*. By Mrs. FREDERICK. Crown 8vo. 2s. 6d.

"This unpretending and useful little volume distinctly supplies a desideratum. . . . The author steadily keeps in view the simple aim of 'making every-day meals at home, particularly the dinner, attractive,' without adding to the ordinary household expenses."—*Saturday Review*.

GLADSTONE—*SPELLING REFORM FROM AN EDUCATIONAL POINT OF VIEW*. By J. H. GLADSTONE, Ph.D., F.R.S., Member of the School Board for London. New Edition. Crown 8vo. 1s. 6d.

GOLDSMITH—*THE TRAVELLER*, or a Prospect of Society; and *THE DESERTED VILLAGE*. By OLIVER GOLDSMITH. With Notes Philological and Explanatory, by J. W. HALES M.A. Crown 8vo. 6d.

GRAND'HOMME—*CUTTING-OUT AND DRESSMAKING*. From the French of Mdlle. E. GRAND'HOMME. With Diagrams. 18mo. 1s.

GREEN—*A SHORT GEOGRAPHY OF THE BRITISH ISLANDS*. By JOHN RICHARD GREEN and ALICE STOPFORD GREEN. With Maps. Fcap. 8vo. 3s. 6d.

The *Times* says:—"The method of the work, so far as real instruction is concerned, is nearly all that could be desired. . . . Its great merit, in addition to its scientific arrangement and the attractive style so familiar to the readers of Green's *Short History* is that the facts are so presented

as to compel the careful student to think for himself. . . . The work may be read with pleasure and profit by anyone ; we trust that it will gradually find its way into the higher forms of our schools. With this text-book as his guide, an intelligent teacher might make geography what it really is—one of the most interesting and widely-instructive studies."

HALES—*LONGER ENGLISH POEMS*, with Notes, Philological and Explanatory, and an Introduction on the Teaching of English. Chiefly for Use in Schools. Edited by J. W. HALES, M.A., Professor of English Literature at King's College, London. New Edition. Extra fcap. 8vo. 4s. 6d.

HOLE—*A GENEALOGICAL STEMMA OF THE KINGS OF ENGLAND AND FRANCE*. By the Rev. C. HOLE. On Sheet. 1s.

JOHNSON'S LIVES OF THE POETS. The Six Chief Lives (Milton, Dryden, Swift, Addison, Pope, Gray), with Macaulay's "Life of Johnson." Edited with Preface by MATTHEW ARNOLD. Crown 8vo. 6s.

LITERATURE PRIMERS—Edited by JOHN RICHARD GREEN, Author of "A Short History of the English People."

ENGLISH GRAMMAR. By the Rev. R. MORRIS, LL.D., sometime President of the Philological Society. 18mo cloth. 1s.

ENGLISH GRAMMAR EXERCISES. By R. MORRIS, LL.D., and H. C. BOWEN, M.A. 18mo. 1s.

THE CHILDREN'S TREASURY OF LYRICAL POETRY. Selected and arranged with Notes by FRANCIS TURNER PALGRAVE. In Two Parts. 18mo. 1s. each.

ENGLISH LITERATURE. By STOPFORD BROOKE, M.A. New Edition. 18mo. 1s.

PHILOLOGY. By J. PEILE, M.A. 18mo. 1s.

GREEK LITERATURE. By Professor JEBB, M.A. 18mo. 1s.

SHAKSPERE. By Professor DOWDEN. 18mo. 1s.

HOMER. By the Right Hon. W. E. GLADSTONE, M.P. 18mo. 1s.

ENGLISH COMPOSITION. By Professor NICHOL. 18mo. 1s.

In preparation :—

LATIN LITERATURE. By Professor SEELEY.

HISTORY OF THE ENGLISH LANGUAGE. By J. A. H. MURRAY, LL.D.

SPECIMENS OF THE ENGLISH LANGUAGE.

To Illustrate the above. By the same Author.

MACMILLAN'S COPY-BOOKS—

Published in two sizes, viz. :—

1. Large Post 4to. Price 4d. each.

2. Post Oblong. Price 2d. each.

1. *INITIATORY EXERCISES & SHORT LETTERS.*

*2. *WORDS CONSISTING OF SHORT LETTERS.*

*3. *LONG LETTERS.* With words containing Long Letters—Figures.

*4. *WORDS CONTAINING LONG LETTERS.*

4a. *PRACTISING AND REVISING COPY-BOOK.* For Nos. 1 to 4.

*5. *CAPITALS AND SHORT HALF-TEXT.* Words beginning with a Capital.

*6. *HALF-TEXT WORDS,* beginning with a Capital—Figures.

*7. *SMALL-HAND AND HALF-TEXT.* With Capitals and Figures.

*8. *SMALL-HAND AND HALF-TEXT.* With Capitals and Figures.

8a. *PRACTISING AND REVISING COPY-BOOK.* For Nos. 5 to 8.

*9. *SMALL-HAND SINGLE HEADLINES*—Figures.

10. *SMALL-HAND SINGLE HEADLINES*—Figures.

*11. *SMALL-HAND DOUBLE HEADLINES*—Figures.

12. *COMMERCIAL AND ARITHMETICAL EXAMPLES, &c.*

12a. *PRACTISING AND REVISING COPY-BOOK.* For Nos. 8 to 12.

* These numbers may be had with Goodman's Patent Sliding Copies. Large Post 4to. Price 6d. each.

MACMILLAN'S COPY-BOOKS *Continued—*

By a simple device the copies, which are printed upon separate slips, are arranged with a movable attachment, by which they are adjusted so as to be directly before the eye of the pupil at all points of his progress. It enables him, also, to keep his own faults concealed, with perfect models constantly in view for imitation. Every experienced teacher knows the advantage of the slip copy, but its practical application has never before been successfully accomplished. This feature is secured exclusively to Macmillan's Copy-books under Goodman's patent.

MACMILLAN'S PROGRESSIVE FRENCH COURSE—By G. EUGÈNE-FASNACHT, Senior Master of Modern Languages, Harpur Foundation Modern School, Bedford.

I.—FIRST YEAR, containing Easy Lessons on the Regular Accidence. Extra fcap. 8vo. 1s.

II.—SECOND YEAR, containing Conversational Lessons on Systematic Accidence and Elementary Syntax. With Philological Illustrations and Etymological Vocabulary. 1s. 6d.

III.—THIRD YEAR, containing a Systematic Syntax, and Lessons in Composition. Extra fcap. 8vo. 2s. 6d.

MACMILLAN'S PROGRESSIVE FRENCH READERS—By G. EUGÈNE-FASNACHT.

I.—FIRST YEAR, containing Tables, Historical Extracts, Letters, Dialogues, Fables, Ballads, Nursery Songs, &c., with Two Vocabularies: (1) in the order of subjects; (2) in alphabetical order. Extra fcap. 8vo. 2s. 6d.

II.—SECOND YEAR, containing Fiction in Prose and Verse, Historical and Descriptive Extracts, Essays, Letters, Dialogues, &c. Extra fcap. 8vo. 2s. 6d.

MACMILLAN'S PROGRESSIVE GERMAN COURSE—By G. EUGÈNE FASNACHT.

Part I.—FIRST YEAR. Easy Lessons and Rules on the Regular Accidence. Extra fcap. 8vo. 1s. 6d.

Part II.—SECOND YEAR. Conversational Lessons in Systematic Accidence and Elementary Syntax. With Philological Illustrations and Etymological Vocabulary. Extra fcap. 8vo. 2s.

MACMILLAN'S FOREIGN SCHOOL CLASSICS. Edited by
G. EUGÈNE FASNACHT. 18mo.

FRENCH.

CORNEILLE—LE CID. Edited by G. E. FASNACHT. 1s.

MOLIÈRE—LES FEMMES SAVANTES. Edited by
G. E. FASNACHT. [*Just Ready.*]

MOLIÈRE—LE MÉDECIN MALGRÉ LUI. By the
same Editor. [*In preparation.*]

MOLIÈRE—L'AVARE. Edited by L. MORIARTY, B.A.,
Assistant-Master at Rossall.

SELECTIONS FROM FRENCH HISTORIANS. Edited
by C. COLBECK, M.A., late Fellow of Trinity College, Cam-
bridge; Assistant-Master at Harrow. [*In preparation.*]

VOLTAIRE—CHARLES XII. Edited by G. E. FASNACHT.
[*In preparation.*]

GERMAN.

GOETHE—GOETZ VON BERLICHINGEN. Edited
by W. G. GUILLEMARD, M.A., Assistant-Master at Harrow,
and H. A. BULL, B.A., Assistant-Master at Wellington.
[*In preparation.*]

*HEINE—SELECTIONS FROM THE PROSE WRIT-
INGS.* Edited by C. COLBECK, M.A. [*In preparation.*]

UHLAND—SELECT BALLADS. Edited by G. E.
FASNACHT. [*In preparation.*]

SELECTIONS FROM GERMAN HISTORIANS. By
the same Editor. Part I.—Ancient History. [*In preparation.*]

* * * Other volumes to follow.

MARTIN — THE POET'S HOUR: Poetry selected and
arranged for Children. By FRANCES MARTIN. Third
Edition. 18mo. 2s. 6d.

SPRING-TIME WITH THE POETS: Poetry selected by
FRANCES MARTIN. Second Edition. 18mo. 3s. 6d.

MASSON (GUSTAVE)—*A COMPENDIOUS DICTIONARY OF THE FRENCH LANGUAGE* (French-English and English-French). Adapted from the Dictionaries of Professor ALFRED ELWALL. Followed by a List of the Principal Diverging Derivations, and preceded by Chronological and Historical Tables. By GUSTAVE MASSON, Assistant-Master and Librarian, Harrow School. Fourth Edition. Crown 8vo. half-bound. 6s.

MOLIÈRE—*LE MALADE IMAGINAIRE*. Edited, with Introduction and Notes, by FRANCIS TARVER, M.A., Assistant-Master at Eton. Fcap. 8vo. 2s. 6d.

MORRIS—Works by the Rev. R. MORRIS, LL.D.

HISTORICAL OUTLINES OF ENGLISH ACCIDENCE, comprising Chapters on the History and Development of the Language, and on Word-formation. New Edition. Extra fcap. 8vo. 6s.

ELEMENTARY LESSONS IN HISTORICAL ENGLISH GRAMMAR, containing Accidence and Word-formation. New Edition. 18mo. 2s. 6d.

PRIMER OF ENGLISH GRAMMAR. 18mo. 1s.

OLIPHANT—*THE OLD AND MIDDLE ENGLISH*. A New Edition of "*THE SOURCES OF STANDARD ENGLISH*," revised and greatly enlarged. By T. L. KINGTON OLIPHANT. Extra fcap. 8vo. 9s.

PALGRAVE—*THE CHILDREN'S TREASURY OF LYRICAL POETRY*. Selected and Arranged with Notes by FRANCIS TURNER PALGRAVE. 18mo. 2s. 6d. Also in Two parts. 18mo. 1s. each.

PLUTARCH—Being a Selection from the Lives which Illustrates Shakespeare. North's Translation. Edited, with Introductions, Notes, Index of Names, and Glossarial Index, by the Rev. W. W. SKEAT, M.A. Crown 8vo. 6s.

PYLODET—NEW GUIDE TO GERMAN CONVERSATION: containing an Alphabetical List of nearly 800 Familiar Words followed by Exercises, Vocabulary of Words in frequent use ; Familiar Phrases and Dialogues ; a Sketch of German Literature, Idiomatic Expressions, &c. By L. PYLODET. 18mo. cloth limp. 2s. 6d.

A SYNOPSIS OF GERMAN GRAMMAR. From the above. 18mo. 6d.

QUEEN'S COLLEGE LONDON. THE CALENDAR, 1879-80, 1880-81, 1881-82. Fcap. 8vo. Each 1s. 6d.

READING BOOKS—Adapted to the English and Scotch Codes. Bound in Cloth.

PRIMER. 18mo. (48 pp.) 2d.

<i>BOOK I.</i>	for Standard I.	18mo.	(96 pp.)	4d.
" II.	" II.	18mo.	(144 pp.)	5d.
" III.	" III.	18mo.	(160 pp.)	6d.
" IV.	" IV.	18mo.	(176 pp.)	8d.
" V.	" V.	18mo.	(380 pp.)	1s.
" VI.	" VI.	Crown 8vo.	(430 pp.)	2s.

Book VI. is fitted for higher Classes, and as an Introduction to English Literature.

"They are far above any others that have appeared both in form and substance. . . . The editor of the present series has rightly seen that reading books must 'aim chiefly at giving to the pupils the power of accurate, and, if possible, apt and skilful expression ; at cultivating in them a good literary taste, and at arousing a desire of further reading. This is done by taking care to select the extracts from true English classics, going up in Standard VI. course to Chaucer, Hooker, and Bacon, as well as Wordsworth, Macaulay, and Froude. . . . This is quite on the right track, and indicates justly the ideal which we ought to set before us."—*GUARDIAN.*

SHAKESPEARE—A SHAKESPEARE MANUAL. By F. G. FLEAY, M.A., late Head Master of Skipton Grammar School. Second Edition. Extra fcap. 8vo. 4s. 6d.

AN ATTEMPT TO DETERMINE THE CHRONOLOGICAL ORDER OF SHAKESPEARE'S PLAYS. By the Rev. H. PAINE STOKES, B.A. Extra fcap. 8vo. 4s. 6d.

THE TEMPEST. With Glossarial and Explanatory Notes. By the Rev. J. M. JEPHSON. New Edition. 18mo. 1s.

SONNENSCHN and MEIKLEJOHN—*THE ENGLISH METHOD OF TEACHING TO READ.* By A. SONNENSCHN and J. M. D. MEIKLEJOHN, M.A. Fcap. 8vo.

COMPRISING :

THE NURSERY BOOK, containing all the Two-Letter Words in the Language. 1d. (Also in Large Type on Sheets for School Walls. 5s.)

THE FIRST COURSE, consisting of Short Vowels with Single Consonants. 6d.

THE SECOND COURSE, with Combinations and Bridges, consisting of Short Vowels with Double Consonants. 6d.

THE THIRD AND FOURTH COURSES, consisting of Long Vowels, and all the Double Vowels in the Language. 6d.

"These are admirable books, because they are constructed on a principle, and that the simplest principle on which it is possible to learn to read English."—SPECTATOR.

STEPHEN—*A DIGEST OF THE LAW OF EVIDENCE.* By Sir JAMES FITZJAMES STEPHEN, a Judge of the High Court of Justice, Queen's Bench Division. Fourth Edition. Crown 8vo. 6s.

"An invaluable text-book to students."—THE TIMES.

TAYLOR—*WORDS AND PLACES*; or, Etymological Illustrations of History, Ethnology, and Geography. By the Rev. ISAAC TAYLOR, M.A. Third and cheaper Edition, revised and compressed. With Maps. Globe 8vo. 6s.

TAYLOR—*A PRIMER OF PIANOFORTE PLAYING.* By FRANKLIN TAYLOR. Edited by GEORGE GROVE. 18mo. 1s.

TEGETMEIER—*HOUSEHOLD MANAGEMENT AND COOKERY*. With an Appendix of Recipes used by the Teachers of the National School of Cookery. By W. B. TEGETMEIER. Compiled at the request of the School Board for London. 18mo. 1s.

"Admirably adapted to the use for which it is designed."—*ATHENÆUM*.

"A seasonable and thoroughly practical manual. . . . It can be consulted readily and the information it contains is given in the simplest language."

—*PALL MALL GAZETTE*.

THE GLOBE READERS. For Standards I.—VI. Edited by A. F. MURISON. With Illustrations. [*Immediately*.

THORNTON—*FIRST LESSONS IN BOOK-KEEPING*. By J. THORNTON. Crown 8vo. 2s. 6d.

The object of this volume is to make the theory of Book-keeping sufficiently plain for even children to understand it.

THRING—Works by EDWARD THRING, M.A., Head Master of Uppingham.

THE ELEMENTS OF GRAMMAR TAUGHT IN ENGLISH. With Questions. Fourth Edition. 18mo. 2s.

TRENCH (ARCHBISHOP)—Works by R. C. TRENCH, D.D., Archbishop of Dublin.

HOUSEHOLD BOOK OF ENGLISH POETRY. Selected and Arranged, with Notes. Third Edition. Extra fcap. 8vo. 5s. 6d.

ON THE STUDY OF WORDS. Seventeenth Edition, revised. Fcap. 8vo. 5s.

ENGLISH, PAST AND PRESENT. Eleventh Edition, revised and improved. Fcap. 8vo. 5s.

A SELECT GLOSSARY OF ENGLISH WORDS, used formerly in Senses Different from their Present. Fifth Edition, revised and enlarged. Fcap. 8vo. 5s.

VAUGHAN (O. M.)—*WORDS FROM THE POETS*. By C. M. VAUGHAN. New Edition. 18mo. cloth. 1s.

VICTORIA UNIVERSITY CALENDAR, with the Calendar of the Owens College, 1880-1881, 1881-1882. Crown 8vo. 3s.

VINCENT and DICKSON—HANDBOOK TO MODERN GREEK. By EDGAR VINCENT, Coldstream Guards, and T. G. DICKSON, M.A. With Preface by Professor J. S. BLACKIE. Extra fcap. 8vo. 5s.

"This is a grammar and conversation book in one, and avoids with great success the tediousness too common in grammars and the silliness too common in conversation books. . . . It will not be Messrs. Vincent and Dickson's fault if their work does not contribute materially to the study of Greek by Englishmen as a living language."—*PALL MALL GAZETTE*.

WARD—THE ENGLISH POETS. Selections, with Critical Introductions by various Writers and a General Introduction by MATTHEW ARNOLD. Edited by T. H. Ward, M.A. 4 Vols. Vol. I. CHAUCER TO DONNE.—Vol. II. BEN JONSON TO DRYDEN.—Vol. III. ADDISON TO BLAKE.—Vol. IV. WORDSWORTH TO SYDNEY DOBELL. Crown 8vo. Each 7s. 6d.

"They fill a gap in English letters, and they should find a place in every school library. It is odds but they will delight the master and be the pastime of the boys. . . . Mr. Ward is a model Editor. . . . English poetry is epitomised; and that so brilliantly and well as to make the book in which the feat is done one of the best publications of its epoch."—*THE TEACHER*.

WHITNEY—Works by WILLIAM D. WHITNEY, Professor of Sanskrit and Instructor in Modern Languages in Yale College.
A COMPENDIOUS GERMAN GRAMMAR. Crown 8vo. 4s. 6d.

A GERMAN READER IN PROSE AND VERSE, with Notes and Vocabulary. Crown 8vo. 5s.

WHITNEY AND EDGREN—A COMPENDIOUS GERMAN AND ENGLISH DICTIONARY, with Notation of Correspondences and Brief Etymologies. By Professor W. D. WHITNEY, assisted by A. H. EDGREN. Crown 8vo. 7s. 6d.

THE GERMAN-ENGLISH PART, separately, 5s.

WRIGHT—THE SCHOOL COOKERY BOOK. Compiled and Edited by C. E. GUTHRIE WRIGHT, Hon. Sec. to the Edinburgh School of Cookery. 18mo. 1s.

Sir T. D. ACLAND, Bart., says of this book :—"I think the 'School Cookery Book' the best cheap manual which I have seen on the subject. I hope teachers will welcome it. But it seems to me likely to be even more useful for domestic purposes in all ranks short of those served by professed cooks. The receipts are numerous and precise, the explanation of principles clear. The chapters on the adaptation of food to varying circumstances, age, climate employment health and on infants' food, seem to me excellent."

YONGE (CHARLOTTE M.)—THE ABRIDGED BOOK OF GOLDEN DEEDS. A Reading Book for Schools and general readers. By the Author of "The Heir of Redclyffe." 18mo. cloth. 1s.

Now publishing, in Crown 8vo, price 2s. 6d. each.

ENGLISH MEN OF LETTERS.

Edited by **JOHN MORLEY.**

"These excellent biographies should be made class-books for schools."—
WESTMINSTER REVIEW.

- JOHNSON.** By LESLIE STEPHEN.
SCOTT. By R. H. HUTTON.
GIBBON. By J. C. MORISON.
SHELLEY. By J. A. SYMONDS.
HUME. By Professor HUXLEY, F.R.S.
GOLDSMITH. By WILLIAM BLACK.
DEFOE. By W. MINTO.
BURNS. By Principal SHAIRP.
SPENSER. By the Very Rev. the DEAN OF ST. PAUL'S.
THACKERAY. By ANTHONY TROLLOPE.
BURKE. By JOHN MORLEY.
MILTON. By MARK PATTISON.
HAWTHORNE. By HENRY JAMES, Junr.
SOUTHEY. By Professor DOWDEN.
CHAUCE. By Professor A. W. WARD.
BUNYAN. By JAMES A. FROUDE.
POPE. By LESLIE STEPHEN.
BYRON. By Professor NICHOL.
COWPER. By GOLDWIN SMITH.
LOCKE. By Professor FOWLER.
WORDSWORTH. By F. W. H. MYERS.
DRYDEN. By G. SAINTSBURY.
LANDOR. By Professor SIDNEY COLVIN.
DE QUINCEY. By Professor MASSON.

IN PREPARATION.

- SWIFT.** By JOHN MORLEY.
ADAM SMITH. By LEONARD H. COURTNEY, M.P.
BENTLEY. By Professor R. C. JEBB.
DICKENS. By Professor A. W. WARD.
BERKELEY. By Professor HUXLEY.
CHARLES LAMB. By Rev. ALFRED AINGER.
STERNE. By H. D. TRAILL.
SIR PHILIP SIDNEY. By J. A. SYMONDS.
MACAULAY. By J. COTTER MORISON.
GRAY. By EDMUND GOSSE.

Other Volumes will follow.

MACMILLAN'S GLOBE LIBRARY.

Price 3s. 6d. per volume, in cloth. Also kept in a variety of calf and morocco bindings, at moderate prices.

"The 'Globe Editions are admirable for their scholarly editing, their typographical excellence, their compendious form, and their cheapness."—SATURDAY REVIEW.

Shakespeare's Complete Works.—Edited by W. G. CLARK, M.A., and W. ALDIS WRIGHT, M.A., Editors of the "Cambridge Shakespeare." With Glossary.

Spenser's Complete Works.—Edited from the Original Editions and Manuscripts, by R. MORRIS, with a Memoir by J. W. HALES, M.A. With Glossary.

Sir Walter Scott's Poetical Works.—Edited, with a Biographical and Critical Memoir, by FRANCIS TURNER PALGRAVE, and copious Notes.

Complete Works of Robert Burns.—Edited from the best Printed and Manuscript authorities, with Glossarial Index, Notes, and a Biographical Memoir by ALEXANDER SMITH.

Robinson Crusoe.—Edited after the Original Editions, with a Biographical Introduction by HENRY KINGSLEY.

Goldsmith's Miscellaneous Works.—Edited, with Biographical Introduction, by Professor MASSON.

Pope's Poetical Works.—Edited, with Notes and Introductory Memoir, by A. W. WARD, M.A., Professor of History in Owens College, Manchester.

Dryden's Poetical Works.—Edited, with a Memoir, Revised Text and Notes, by W. D. CHRISTIE, M.A., of Trinity College, Cambridge.

Cowper's Poetical Works.—Edited, with Notes and Biographical Introduction, by WILLIAM BENHAM, Vicar of Marden.

Morte d'Arthur.—SIR THOMAS MALORY'S BOOK OF KING ARTHUR AND OF HIS NOBLE KNIGHTS OF THE ROUND TABLE.—The original Edition of CAXTON, revised for Modern Use. With an Introduction by Sir EDWARD STRACHEY, Bart.

The Works of Virgil.—Rendered into English Prose, with Introductions, Notes, Running Analysis, and an Index. By JAMES LONSDALE, M.A., and SAMUEL LEE, M.A.

The Works of Horace.—Rendered into English Prose, with Introductions, Running Analysis, Notes, and Index. By JAMES LONSDALE, M.A., and SAMUEL LEE, M.A.

Milton's Poetical Works.—Edited, with Introductions, by Professor MASSON.

MACMILLAN AND CO., LONDON.

LONDON :
R. CLAY, SONS, AND TAYLOR,
BREAD STREET HILL, E.C.

